

CEN/TC 250/SC 7 "Eurocode 7 - Geotechnical design"Secretariat: **NEN**Secretary: **Kraijema Geert Mr****Part 3 integrated FE draft with all agreed CR's incorporated (track changes)**

Document type	Related content	Document date	Expected action
General / Other		2022-08-22	INFO

CEN/TC 250

Date: 2022-08-29

prEN 1997-3:202x

CEN/TC 250

Secretariat: BSI

Eurocode 7 — Geotechnical design — Part 3: Geotechnical structures

*Eurocode 7 - Entwurf, Berechnung und Bemessung in der Geotechnik — Teil 3: Geotechnische**Eurocode 7 - Calcul géotechnique — Partie 3: Constructions géotechniques*

ICS:

Descriptors:

DATE	Version	Comment
2022-06-14	2022.01	CCMC version. Added tables for including CR
2022-07-18	2022.02	Added agreed CRs
2022-08-03	2022.03	Version sent to review group for confirmation
2022-08-25	2022.04	Version updated with comments from review group
2022-08-29	2022.05	F.E. version with implemented agreed CR

In this document the changes that SC7.TG A2 have agreed has been implemented in the Formal Enquiry version of prEN 1997-3.

SC7.TG A2 is a task group with one national representative from each NSB with the mandate to vote on behalf of their mirror group. All changes are based on change requests proposed by the Task groups within SC7. To ensure a correct implementation a review group has checked the implementation. The agreed Change Requests, CR:s, that has been included are listed on next page.

For Clause 1 to 8, all changes are shown (complete track change). The changes in Clause 9 to 12 are presented as a changed version (clean). To see the details of what has been changed. A complete track change version of Clause 9 to 12 is found in the document with all CRs. Clause 9 =CR0146, Clause 10=CR0209, Clause 11=CR0200 and Clause 12= CR0132+CR0133+CR0134.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

CR	Clause and action	Added date	Confirmed (review team)
CR0009	Clause 9.3.4 and 9.6.2.6 Action: Revised based on Ad-Hoc group Steel (TC250)	2022-07-18	2022-08-26
CR0010	Clause 8, 10 and 3 Definition rock bolt and anchor Action: Revised scope and definition	2022-07-18	2022-08-26
CR0011	Clause 7.5.4 Minimum earth pressure Action: Added two notes	2022-07-19	2022-08-26
CR0021	Clause 10 changed the table of content Action: Revision included in CR0209	2022-07-19	2022-08-26
CR0022	Clause 11 Rigid inclusion definition and application Action: Figure and clarifying text	2022-07-19	2022-08-26
CR0026	Clause 8.2.3.2 (4) Uplift for Anchors Action: Revise text on required anchor force	2022-07-19	2022-08-26
CR0027	Clause 7.8.1 (6, 8, 10) Reference to execution standards. Reference to testing standards (6, 7, 8, 10) Action: Change to Requirement (shall) in all clauses	2022-07-19	2022-08-26
CR0028	Clause 8.9 Change the table of content Action: Revised the headings	2022-07-19	2022-08-26
CR0032	Clause 5 Editorial changes Action: Wording revised	2022-07-19	2022-08-26
CR0034	Clause 5 and 6 Bering resistance calculation Action: Reformulating text	2022-07-19	2022-08-26
CR0035	Clause 5.6.2.3 Bearing resistance equation Action: Add revised permission	2022-07-19	2022-08-26
CR0036	Clause 7 and 8 Editorial Action: Wording revised	2022-07-19	2022-08-26
CR0037	All x.8 wording before a list Action: Use should include but is not limited to. Change in 6.8	2022-07-19	2022-08-26
CR0040	Clause 5.5.2.3 Bearing resistance of rock mass Action: Add along discontinuities	2022-07-19	2022-08-26
CR0041	Annex B.7 Spread foundation Action: Revised wording to include rock	2022-07-19	2022-08-26
CR0042	Annex B.7 Spread foundation Action: Added clarifying notes on rock mass modulus	2022-07-19	2022-08-26
CR0043	Annex B.16 Bearing resistance on rock mass Action: Adding a new annex	2022-07-19	2022-08-26
CR0044	Clause 6.5.4 Transversely loaded single piles Action: Replace Transversely with axially	2022-07-19	2022-08-26
CR0046	Clauses x.8 and x.10 Implementation of design Action: Added the changes that were the result of discussion, after the TG A2 decision.	2022-07-19	2022-08-26
CR0047	Annex C.14 Resistance cyclic loading Action: Revise text	2022-07-19	2022-08-26
CR0049	Editorial Action: Revise text	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0053	Clause 3, Annex B.11 and C.9 Secondary compression Action: Change to creep	2022-07-21	2022-08-26
CR0054	Clause 6 and Annex C.1 Wording Pile Action: Add definitions piles	2022-07-21	2022-08-26
CR0057	Clause 8.8.2 and 12.8.2 Supervision	2022-07-21	2022-08-26

	Action: Delete these clauses		
CR0066	Clause 5.9 Testing spread foundation Action: Revised text	2022-07-21	2022-08-26
CR0068	Annex C.13 Action: Revise text on Buckling	2022-08-26	2022-08-26
CR0071	Clause 6.2.7.2 References Action: Revised reference	2022-07-24	2022-08-26
CR0072	Clause C.9 Action Editorial changes in Annex	2022-07-24	2022-08-26
CR0074	Clause 5.5.2.1 and Annex B4 Depth of Prandlt Wedge Action: Clarification of depth of failure zone. Guidance added in Annex B.4	2022-07-25	2022-08-26
CR0075	Annex B.5 Punching failure Action: Revised and clarified formulas. Added simplification as permission	2022-07-25	2022-08-26
CR0079	Clause 6.6.1.1 Bearing resistance calculation Action: Delete line in Table 6.3	2022-07-25	2022-08-26
CR0080	Clause 6.6.1.1 Table 6.4 Action: Revision of Table 6.4. Only have a column on Rock mass	2022-07-25	2022-08-26
CR0081	Clause 8.9.2 Testing of grout Action: Revised the requirement on testing	2022-07-25	2022-08-26
CR0082	Clause 7.6.8 Partial factors retaining structures Action: Only action or effects-of-action. No ref to EN 1997-1, 8.2	2022-07-25	2022-08-26
CR0083	Clause 6.6.1.1 Table 6.4 and Table 6.5 Action: Revised the table with correlation factor. Split in 2	2022-07-25	2022-08-26
CR0084	Clause 6.6.4 2nd order theory Action: Revised wording on Slenderness	2022-07-25	2022-08-26
CR0085	Clause 4.5.4 and 7.6.6 Equation Action: Revised according to CR 0182 and CR0183	2022-07-25	2022-08-26
CR0086	Clause 8.6.1 and 8.7.1 Editorial Action: Revised minor wording and subscript	2022-07-25	2022-08-26
CR0105	Clause 5.5.2.2 Bearing resistance empirical modles Action: split clause	2022-07-25	2022-08-26
CR0106	Clause 5.5.2.3 Bering resistance of rock mass Action since similar to CR0040, no changes.	2022-07-25	2022-08-26
CR0107	Clause 5.5.2.4 Bearing pressures for structural analysis Action Move to new subclause 5.5.6	2022-07-25	2022-08-26
CR0108	Clause 5.6.2.2 Bearing failure and overturning Action: Revised text	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0130	Annex H New annex on thermoactive geostructure Action: Added the revised Annex H	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0131	Clause 7.6.8 Partial factors on retaining structures Action: Modified table, Add permission on transient situation prEN 1997-1, 4.4.1.3	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0132	Clause 12.1 to 12.4 Groundwater control Action: Revised content and text	2022-07-31	2022-08-26
CR0133	Clause 12.5 to 12.7 Groundwater control Action: Revised content and text	2022-0731	2022-08-26
CR0134	Clause 12.8 to 12.10 Groundwater control Action: Revised content and text	2022-07-31	2022-08-26
CR0137	Clause 6 Downdrag Action: Add permission for simplified approach	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0136	Clause x: Partial factors for accidental situation Action: Delete values in brackets add to part 1	2022-08-03	2022-08-26

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

CR0140	Caluse 11.2.7.2 Minimum extent of field testing Action: Revised included in CR0147 and prEN1997-2	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0141	Clause 11.3.2 Improved ground properties Action: Delete text, were included in CR0200	2022-07-31	2022-08-26
CR0146	Clause 9 Reinforced fill Action: Revised content and text	2022-08-01	2022-08-26
CR0147	Clause x.2.7.2 Minimum depth of field investigation Action: systematic change of all clauses	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0148	Clause 6 Scope and link to rigid inclusion Action: Add a note to make link to clause 11	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0149	Clause 5 Scope and link to LTP in clause 11 Action: Add a not to make the link to clause 11	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0152	Multiple Clauses GI identify obstacles execution Action; Delete in part 3, add in part 2	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0154	Clause 8 and 10 - Data from boring during execution Action; Add bullet point	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0155	Effect of subesequent work on representative ground properties Action: Add in prEN 1997-1, 4.3.2.1	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0156	Clause 9.3.2 Durability Action: Delete reference	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0157	Clause 6.3.2 Plain and reinforced concrete Action: Revised content	2022-07-27	2022-08-26
CR0158	Clause 6.3.5 Steel reinforcement Action: Delete sub-clause	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0159	Clause 7.3.4 and 10.3.4 Sprayed concrete Action: Delete sub-clause and rename heading	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0161	Clause 7, 8, 9, 10 other material Action: Use common permisson in all clauses	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0162	Clause 4.3.2 and 7.3.8 Material properties ground improvement Action: Harmonise reference	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0163	Clause 5.4.1 Groundwater Action: Delete unnecessary paragraphs	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0164	Clause x.4.2 Groundwater control systems Action: Ensure reference to clause 12	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0165	Clause 4, 7, 8, 9, 10 Editorial changes Action: revised some of the editorial changes (clause 10, 9 revised)	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0168	Annex B.5 Temporary working platform Action: Add a new statement with reference to EFFC	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0170	Clause 6.6.2 Pile groups and piled rafts Action: Split into two paragraphs	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0171	Clause 6.6.2 Pile groups and piled rafts Action: Split into two paragraphs	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0172	Clause 6.6.3.1 Partial factors Action: Three different tables	2022-08-03	2022-08-26
CR0173	Clause 6.6.3.2 Partial factors piles Action: Revise table	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0176	Clause: 6.5.3.3 Testing Action: Add text to include serviceability limit state	2022-08-02	2022-08-26
CR0178	Clause 6.8.2.2, 6.8.2.3 and 6.8.3 Action: Deleted text covered by execution standard	2022-07-26	2022-08-26

CR0179	Clause 3.2 and 6.9.3 Subscripts editorial Action: Revise so same in definition and main text	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0180	Clause 6.9.5 and 6.9.6 Dynamic impact test Action: Changed rapid load test to dyanmic impatc test	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0182	Clause 7.6.6 Supporting element Action: Revised to two formulas and a general REQ	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0183	Clause 4.5.4 Supporting element Action: Revised to two formulas and a general REQ	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0184	Clause 4.5.2.1 Capillary rise Action: Replace ground suction with porewater suction. Also in part 1.	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0190	Clause 4, 5, 7, 11 Editorial Action: Revised those that were editorial, and not technical	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0191	Clause 4.5.2.2 Stability in rock Action: Revised bullet points	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0192	Annex A Calculation model Rock mass stability Action: Delete reference that is wrong	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0193	Clause 5.5.2.2 Editorial Action: Change to planar	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0194	Clause 7.5.2 rock mass retaining structures Action: Clarifying earth pressure	2022-07-26	2022-08-26
CR0195	Clause 7.5.4 Earth pressure coefficients Action: Delete the word normal and replace k	2022-08-26	2022-08-26
CR0200	Clause 11 Ground Improvement Action: Revised content ad text	2022-08-01	2022-08-26
CR0209	Clause 10 Reinforced Ground structures Action: Revised content and text	2022-08-02	2022-08-26

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Contents

Page

European foreword.....	10
0 Introduction	11
1 Scope	14
1.1 Scope of prEN 1997-3.....	14
1.2 Assumptions.....	14
2 Normative references	14
3 Terms, definitions, and symbols.....	15
3.1 Terms and definitions	15
3.2 Symbols and abbreviations	29
4 Slopes, cuttings, and embankments	44
4.1 Scope and field of application.....	44
4.2 Basis of design	44
4.3 Materials.....	47
4.4 Groundwater.....	48
4.5 Geotechnical analysis	49
4.6 Ultimate limit states.....	52
4.7 Serviceability limit states.....	53
4.8 Implementation of design	54
4.9 Testing.....	55
4.10 Reporting	55
5 Spread foundations	55
5.1 Scope and field of application.....	55
5.2 Basis of design	55
5.3 Materials.....	61
5.4 Groundwater.....	61
5.5 Geotechnical analysis	62
5.6 Ultimate limit states.....	71
5.7 Serviceability limit states.....	77
5.8 Implementation of design	79
5.9 Testing.....	79
5.10 Reporting	80
6 Piled foundations	80
6.1 Scope and field of application.....	80
6.2 Basis of design	80
6.3 Materials.....	85
6.4 Groundwater.....	86
6.5 Geotechnical analysis	87
6.6 Ultimate limit states.....	97
6.7 Serviceability limit states.....	111
6.8 Implementation of design	112
6.9 Testing.....	113
6.10 Reporting	116
7 Retaining structures	117
7.1 Scope and field of application.....	117

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

7.2	Basis of design	117
7.3	Materials	120
7.4	Groundwater	121
7.5	Geotechnical analysis.....	122
7.6	Ultimate limit states	127
7.7	Serviceability limit states	133
7.8	Implementation of design.....	133
7.9	Testing.....	135
7.10	Reporting.....	135
8	Anchors	135
8.1	Scope and field of application	135
8.2	Basis of design	136
8.3	Materials	139
8.4	Groundwater	140
8.5	Geotechnical analysis.....	140
8.6	Ultimate limit states	140
8.7	Serviceability limit states	143
8.8	Implementation of design.....	145
8.9	Testing.....	146
8.10	Reporting.....	148
9	Reinforced fill structures.....	149
9.1	Scope and field of application	149
9.2	Basis of design	150
9.3	Materials	154
9.4	Groundwater	162
9.5	Geotechnical analysis.....	162
9.6	Ultimate limit states	170
9.7	Serviceability limit states	176
9.8	Implementation of design.....	176
9.9	Testing.....	177
9.10	Reporting.....	178
10	Ground reinforcing elements	179
10.1	Scope and field of application	179
10.2	Basis of design	179
10.3	Materials	183
10.4	Groundwater	187
10.5	Rock bolts and rock anchors	188
10.6	Soil Nails.....	210
10.7	Wire mesh	215
10.8	Sprayed concrete	218
10.9	Facing element.....	220
10.10	Reporting.....	221
11	Ground improvement.....	221
11.1	Scope and field of application	221
11.2	Basis of design	222
11.3	Materials	229
11.4	Groundwater	232
11.5	Geotechnical analysis.....	233
11.6	Ultimate limit states	237
11.7	Serviceability limit states	241
11.8	Implementation of design.....	241

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

11.9	Testing.....	242
11.10	Reporting	244
12	Groundwater control	245
12.1	Scope and field of application.....	245
12.2	Basis of design	247
12.3	Material.....	249
12.4	Groundwater.....	250
12.5	Reduction of hydraulic conductivity	250
12.6	Dewatering and infiltration.....	254
12.7	Impermeable barriers.....	255
12.8	Implementation of design	256
12.9	Testing.....	262
12.10	Reporting	262
Annex A (informative)	Slopes, cuttings, and embankments.....	264
A.1	Use of this Informative Annex	264
A.2	Scope and field of application.....	264
A.3	Calculation models for analysing the stability of soil and fill	264
A.4	Calculation models for analysing the stability of rock mass	266
Annex B (informative)	Spread foundations.....	268
B.1	Use of this Informative Annex	268
B.2	Scope and field of application.....	268
B.3	Checklists	268
B.4	Calculation model for bearing resistance using soil parameters	269
B.5	Calculation model for bearing resistance on ground underlain by a weaker layer	272
B.6	Calculation model for bearing resistance from pressuremeter test results	275
B.7	Calculation model for settlement evaluation based on adjusted elasticity method	277
B.8	Calculation model for settlement evaluation based on stress-strain method	278
B.9	Calculation model for settlements without drainage	278
B.10	Calculation model for settlements caused by consolidation.....	278
B.11	Calculation model for time-settlement behaviour.....	279
B.12	Calculation model for settlement evaluation using pressuremeter test results.....	279
B.13	Calculation model for settlement evaluation using cone penetration test results ..	280
B.14	Relative stiffness of a spread foundation and subgrade modulus.....	281
B.15	Linear elastic spring stiffnesses of surface foundation	282
Annex C (informative)	Piled foundations.....	285
C.1	Use of this Informative Annex	285
C.2	Scope and field of application.....	285
C.3	Examples of pile types	285
C.4	Pile shaft resistance based on ground parameters.	287
C.5	Pile base resistance based on ground parameters	288
C.6	Axial pile resistance based on CPT profiles.....	289
C.7	Axial pile resistance from PMT profiles.....	293
C.8	Axial pile resistance based on empirical tables.....	295
C.9	Downdrag due to vertical ground movements.....	297
C.10	Pile groups subject to axial tension	300
C.11	Calculation model for single pile settlement using load transfer functions.....	301
C.12	Calculation model for single pile lateral displacement using load transfer functions	301
C.13	Buckling and second order effects.....	307
C.14	Cyclic effects.....	313
Annex D (informative)	Retaining structures.....	315

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

D.1	Use of this Informative Annex.....	315
D.2	Scope and field of application	315
D.3	Calculation model to determine limit values of earth pressures on vertical walls	315
D.4	Calculation model to determine at-rest values of earth pressure	319
D.5	Earth pressures due to compaction	320
D.6	Earth pressures caused by cyclic thermal movement for integral bridges.....	322
D.7	Basal heave	322
D.8	Limit equilibrium models.....	325
D.9	Beam-on-spring models	325
D.10	Calculation model to determine intermediate values of earth pressure	326
D.11	Numerical continuum models.....	327
D.12	Vertical wall stability	328
D.13	Determination of the anchor length to prevent interaction between anchors and retaining structures.....	329
Annex E (informative)	Anchors	331
E.1	Use of this Informative Annex.....	331
E.2	Scope and field of application	331
E.3	Example for anchor design models	331
E.4	Layout of anchors	331
Annex F (informative)	Reinforced fill structures.....	335
F.1	Use of this Informative Annex.....	335
F.2	Scope and field of application	335
F.3	Calculation models for reinforced fill structures.....	335
F.4	Calculation models for reinforced embankment bases.....	342
F.5	Calculation models for load transfer platform over rigid inclusions	345
F.6	Calculation models for embankments over voids	347
F.7	Veneer reinforcement.....	349
F.8	Durability, reduction factor for tensile strength.....	351
F.9	Typical grades of steel used for soil reinforcement elements	352
Annex G (informative)	Ground improvement	354
G.1	Use of this Informative Annex.....	354
G.2	Scope and field of application	354
G.3	Examples of ground improvement techniques.....	354
G.4	Use of stress envelope to determine acceptable limit states.....	358
Bibliography		366

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

European foreword

This document (prEN 1997-3:2022) has been prepared by Technical Committee CEN/TC 250 “Structural Eurocodes”, the secretariat of which is held by BSI. CEN/TC 250 is responsible for all Structural Eurocodes and has been assigned responsibility for structural and geotechnical design matters by CEN.

This document is currently submitted to the CEN Enquiry.

This document will partially supersede EN 1997-1:2004.

The first generation of EN Eurocodes was published between 2002 and 2007. This document forms part of the second generation of the Eurocodes, which have been prepared under Mandate M/515 issued to CEN by the European Commission and the European Free Trade Association.

The Eurocodes have been drafted to be used in conjunction with relevant execution, material, product and test standards, and to identify requirements for execution, materials, products and testing that are relied upon by the Eurocodes.

The Eurocodes recognise the responsibility of each Member State and have safeguarded their right to determine values related to regulatory safety matters at national level through the use of National Annexes.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)**0 Introduction****0.1 Introduction to the Eurocodes**

The Structural Eurocodes comprise the following standards generally consisting of a number of Parts:

- *EN 1990 Eurocode: Basis of structural and geotechnical design*
- *EN 1991 Eurocode 1: Actions on structures*
- *EN 1992 Eurocode 2: Design of concrete structures*
- *EN 1993 Eurocode 3: Design of steel structures*
- *EN 1994 Eurocode 4: Design of composite steel and concrete structures*
- *EN 1995 Eurocode 5: Design of timber structures*
- *EN 1996 Eurocode 6: Design of masonry structures*
- *EN 1997 Eurocode 7: Geotechnical design*
- *EN 1998 Eurocode 8: Design of structures for earthquake resistance*
- *EN 1999 Eurocode 9: Design of aluminium structures*
- New parts are under development, e.g. Eurocode for design of structural glass.

The Eurocodes are intended for use by designers, clients, manufacturers, constructors, relevant authorities (in exercising their duties in accordance with national or international regulations), educators, software developers, and committees drafting standards for related product, testing and execution standards.

NOTE Some aspects of design are most appropriately specified by relevant authorities or, where not specified, can be agreed on a project-specific basis between relevant parties such as designers and clients. The Eurocodes identify such aspects making explicit reference to relevant authorities and relevant parties.

0.2 Introduction to EN 1997 Eurocode 7

EN 1997 consists of a number of parts:

- *EN 1997-1, Geotechnical design — Part 1: General rules*
- *EN 1997-2, Geotechnical design — Part 2: Ground properties*
- *EN 1997-3, Geotechnical design — Part 3: Geotechnical structures*

EN 1997 standards establish additional principles and requirements to those given in EN 1990 for the safety, serviceability, robustness, and durability of geotechnical structures.

Design and verification in EN 1997 (all parts) are based on the partial factor method or other reliability-based methods, prescriptive rules, testing, or the observational method.

0.3 Introduction to prEN 1997-3

This document establishes principles and requirements for the design and verification of the following of geotechnical structures, including temporary geotechnical structures: slopes, cuttings, embankments, shallow foundation, piled foundation and retaining structures.

This document establishes principles and requirements for the design and verification of supporting elements: anchors, reinforcing element in reinforced fill structures, soil nails, rock bolts and facing.

This document establishes principles and requirements for the design and verification of groundwater control including reduction of hydraulic conductivity, dewatering and infiltration, and the use of impermeable barriers

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**0.4 Verbal forms used in the Eurocodes**

The verb “shall” expresses a requirement strictly to be followed and from which no deviation is permitted in order to comply with the Eurocodes.

The verb “should” expresses a highly recommended choice or course of action. Subject to national regulation and/or any relevant contractual provisions, alternative approaches could be used/adopted where technically justified.

The verb “may” expresses a course of action permissible within the limits of the Eurocodes.

The verb “can” expresses possibility and capability; it is used for statements of fact and clarification of concepts.

0.5 National Annex for prEN 1997-3

National choice is allowed in this standard where explicitly stated within notes. National choice includes the selection of values for Nationally Determined Parameters (NDPs).

The national standard implementing prEN 1997-3:2022 can have a National Annex containing all national choices to be used for the design of buildings and civil engineering works to be constructed in the relevant country.

When no national choice is given, the default choice given in this standard is to be used.

When no national choice is made and no default is given in this standard, the choice can be specified by a relevant authority or, where not specified, agreed for a specific project by appropriate parties.

National choice is allowed in prEN 1997-3:2022 through notes to the following:

Table 4.1 (NDP)	Table 4.2 (NDP)	Table 5.1 (NDP)	Table 5.2 (NDP)
Table 5.3 (NDP)	Table 6.1 (NDP)	Table 6.2 (NDP)	Table 6.3 (NDP)
Table 6.4 (NDP)	Table 6.5 (NDP)	Table 6.6 (NDP)	Table 6.7 (NDP)
Formula (6.18)	Table 7.1 (NDP)	Table 8.1 (NDP)	Table 8.2 (NDP)
Table 8.3 (NDP)	Table 9.1 (NDP)	Table 9.2 (NDP)	Table 9.3 (NDP)
Table 10.1 (NDP)	Table 10.2 (NDP)	Table 10.3 (NDP)	Table 10.4 (NDP)
Table 10.5 (NDP)	Table 11.1 (NDP)	Table 11.2 (NDP)	Table 11.3 (NDP)
Table 11.4 (NDP)	Table 11.5 (NDP)	Table 12.1 (NDP)	A.1(1) NOTE 1
G.1(1) NOTE 1			

National choice is allowed in prEN 1997-3:2022 on the application of the following informative annexes.

Annex A	Annex B	Annex C	Annex D
Annex E	Annex F	Annex G	

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

The National Annex can contain, directly or by reference, non-contradictory complementary information for ease of implementation, provided it does not alter any provisions of the Eurocodes.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**1 Scope****1.1 Scope of prEN 1997-3**

(1) This document provides specific rules to be applied for design and verification of geotechnical structures.

1.2 Assumptions

(1) This document is intended to be used in conjunction with prEN 1990:2021, which establishes principles and requirements for the safety, serviceability, robustness, and durability of structures, including geotechnical structures, and other construction works.

(2) This document is intended to be used in conjunction with prEN 1997-1:2022, which provides general rules for design and verification of geotechnical structures.

(3) This document is intended to be used in conjunction with prEN 1997-2:2022, which gives provisions rules for determining ground properties from ground investigation.

(4) This document is intended to be used in conjunction with the other Eurocodes for the design of geotechnical structures, including temporary geotechnical structures.

2 Normative references

The following documents are referred to in the text in such a way that some or all of their content constitutes requirements of this document. For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

NOTE See the Bibliography for a list of other documents cited that are not normative references, including those referenced as recommendations (i.e. in 'should' clauses), permissions ('may' clauses), possibilities ('can' clauses), and in notes.

EN 1537, *Execution of special geotechnical works — Ground anchors*

prEN 1990:2021, *Eurocode — Basis of structural and geotechnical design*

prEN 1992 (all parts), *Eurocode 2 — Design of concrete structures*

prEN 1993 (all parts), *Eurocode 3 — Design of steel structures*

prEN 1993-1-1:2022, *Eurocode 3 — Design of steel structures — Part 1-1: General rules and rules for buildings*

EN 1993-5:2007, *Eurocode 3 — Design of steel structures — Part 5: Piling*

prEN 1994 (all parts), *Eurocode 4 — Design of composite steel and concrete structures*

prEN 1995 (all parts), *Eurocode 5 — Design of timber structures*

prEN 1996 (all parts), *Eurocode 6 — Design of masonry structures*

prEN 1997-1:2022, *Eurocode 7 — Geotechnical design — Part 1: General rules*

prEN 1997-2:2022, *Eurocode 7 — Geotechnical design — Part 2: Ground properties*

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

EN 10025 (all parts), *Hot rolled products of structural steel*

EN 10080, *Steel for the reinforcement of concrete — Weldable reinforcing steel — General*

EN 10244-2:2009, *Steel wire and wire products — Non-ferrous metallic coatings on steel wire — Part 2: Zinc or zinc alloy coatings*

EN 10245-2, *Steel wire and wire products — Organic coatings on steel wire — Part 2: PVC finished wire*

EN 10245-3, *Steel wire and wire products — Organic coatings on steel wire — Part 3: PE coated wire*

EN 10245-4, *Steel wire and wire products — Organic coatings on steel wire — Part 4: Polyester coated wire*

EN 10245-5, *Steel wire and wire products — Organic coatings on steel wire — Part 5: Polyamide coated wire*

EN 13738, *Geotextiles and geotextile-related products — Determination of pullout resistance in soil*

EN 14475:2006, *Execution of special geotechnical works — Reinforced fill*

EN 14488-4, *Testing sprayed concrete — Part 4: Bond strength of cores by direct tension*

EN 14488-5, *Testing sprayed concrete — Part 5: Determination of energy absorption capacity of fibre reinforced slab specimens*

EN 14490, *Execution of special geotechnical works — Soil nailing*

EN ISO 1461, *Hot dip galvanized coatings on fabricated iron and steel articles — Specifications and test methods (ISO 1461)*

EN ISO 12957-1, *Geosynthetics — Determination of friction characteristics — Part 1: Direct shear test (ISO 12957-1)*

EN ISO 12957-2, *Geosynthetics — Determination of friction characteristics — Part 2: Inclined plane test (ISO 12957-2)*

EN ISO 10319, *Geosynthetics — Wide-width tensile test (ISO 10319)*

EN ISO 22477-5, *Geotechnical investigation and testing — Testing of geotechnical structures — Part 5: Testing of grouted anchors (ISO 22477-5)*

3 Terms, definitions, and symbols

3.1 Terms and definitions

For purposes of this document, the following terms and definitions apply.

3.1.1 Common terms used in prEN 1997-3

3.1.1.1

foundation

construction for transmitting forces to the supporting ground

[SOURCE: ISO 6707-1:2020]

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**3.1.1.2****deep foundation**

foundation consisting of a pile or caisson that transfers loads below the surface stratum to a deeper stratum or series of strata at a range of depths

3.1.1.3**caisson**

hollow construction with substantial impervious walls that comprises one or more cells and is sunk into the ground or water to form the permanent shell of a deep foundation

[SOURCE: ISO 6707-1:2020]

3.1.1.4**frost heave**

swelling of soil due to formation of ice within it

[SOURCE: ISO 6707-1:2020]

3.1.1.5**ground heave**

upward movement of the ground caused by either failure in the ground or by deformations due to stress relief, creep, or swelling

3.1.1.6**~~secondary compression~~ creep**

~~slow deformation of soil and rock mass because of prolonged pressure and stress; synonym for 'creep' in fine soils~~
increase in strain with time under constant effective stress

[SOURCE: Amended from ISO 6707-1:2020]

SC7 NOTE [#1]:

CR 0053

Deleted secondary
compression and added
creep

3.1.1.7**competent rock**

rock with sufficient strength and stiffness to withstand applied actions without failure or any significant permanent movement

3.1.2 Terms relating to slopes, cuttings, and embankments**3.1.2.1****earth-structure**

civil engineering structure, made of fill material or as a result of excavation

3.1.2.2**cut**

void that results from excavation of the ground

3.1.2.3**cutting**

earth-structure created by excavation of the ground

3.1.2.4**cut slope**

slope that results from excavation

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)**3.1.2.5****embankment**

earth-structure formed by the placement of fill

3.1.2.6**embankment slope**

slope that results from the placement of fill

3.1.2.7**earthworks**

civil engineering process that modifies the geometry of ground surface, by creating stable and durable earth-structures

3.1.2.8**excavation**

result of removing material from the ground

3.1.2.9**levee**

embankment for preventing flooding

3.1.2.10**load transfer platform**

layer of coarse fill constructed with or without reinforcing element used to spread the load from an overlying structure such as a spread foundation, raft or embankment to improved ground or piles

3.1.3 Terms relating to spread foundations**3.1.3.1****spread foundation**

foundation that transmits forces to the ground mainly by compression on its base

3.1.3.2**footing**

stepped construction that spreads the load at the foot of a wall or column

[SOURCE: ISO 6707-1:2020]

3.1.3.3**pad foundation**

spread foundation with usually rectangular or circular footprint

3.1.3.4**strip foundation**

long, narrow, usually horizontal foundation

[SOURCE: ISO 6707-1:2020]

3.1.3.5**raft foundation**

spread foundation in the form of a continuous structural concrete slab that extends over the whole base of a structure

[SOURCE: ISO 6707-1:2020]

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**3.1.3.6****adjusted elasticity method**

method to evaluate the settlement of a spread foundation assuming the ground beneath the foundation is homogeneous and linear elastic

3.1.4 Terms relating to piled foundations**3.1.4.1****pile**

slender structural member, substantially underground, intended to transmit forces into load-bearing strata below the surface of the ground

[SOURCE: ISO 6707-1:2020]

3.1.4.2**bored cast-in-place pile**

bored pile formed by continuous or discontinuous earthwork methods where the hole is subsequently filled with concrete

[SOURCE: ISO 6707-1:2020]

3.1.4.3**displacement pile**

pile which is installed in the ground without excavation of material from the ground, except for limiting heave, vibration, removal of obstructions, or to assist penetration

[SOURCE: ISO 6707-1:2020]

3.1.4.4**full displacement pile**

displacement pile that displaces a volume of ground equal to its gross (enclosed) volume

3.1.4.5**partial displacement pile**

displacement pile that displaces a volume of ground much smaller than its gross (enclosed) volume

3.1.4.46**driven pile**

displacement pile forced into the ground by hammering, vibration or static pressure

[SOURCE: modified from ISO 6707-1:2020]

3.1.4.57**end bearing pile**

pile that transmits forces to the ground mainly by compression on its base

Note 1 to entry: The term 'mainly' implies at least 70 % to 80 % of the compression force applied to the pile is transmitted to the ground via its base.

[SOURCE: ISO 6707-1:2020]

SC7 NOTE [#2]: CR 0054
Added definitions and
revised the numbering of
the following definitions.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)**3.1.4.68****friction pile**

pile transmitting forces to the ground mainly by friction between the surface of the pile and the adjacent ground

Note 1 to entry: The term 'mainly' implies at least 70 % to 80 % of the compression or tension force applied to the pile is transmitted to the ground by friction between the pile shaft and the ground.

[SOURCE: ISO 6707-1:2020]

3.1.4.79**replacement pile**

pile installed in the ground after excavation of material

3.1.4.810**tension pile**

vertical or inclined pile used to transfer axial tension force by friction between the surface of the pile and the adjacent ground

3.1.4.911**pile cap**

construction at the head of one or more piles that transmits forces from a structure to one or several piles

[SOURCE: ISO 6707-1:2020]

3.1.4.1012**piled foundation**

foundation that incorporates one or more piles

[SOURCE: ISO 6707-1:2020]

3.1.4.1113**pile group**

foundation that incorporates piles arranged in a grid

3.1.4.1214**piled raft**

combined foundation that incorporates a ground bearing raft foundation and a pile group

3.1.4.1315**ground model method**

calculation method to determine the pile axial resistance based on a Geotechnical Design Model comprising various strata with assigned ground parameters that can be ascribed to either the whole or part of the project site area

3.1.4.1416**model pile method**

calculation method to determine the pile axial resistance based on a single profile of field tests with assigned ground parameters relevant just to the local profile and not to the whole project site area

3.1.4.1517**downdrag (negative shaft friction)**

situation where the ground surrounding a pile settles more than the pile shaft sufficient to induce a downward drag force that potentially results in drag settlement

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**3.1.4.1618****drag force**

additional axial force acting on a pile due to downdrag

3.1.4.1719**drag settlement**

additional settlement of a pile due to downdrag

3.1.4.1820**neutral plane**

depth at which there is no relative movement between the pile and the surrounding ground

3.1.4.1921**pile heave**

upward movement of the ground surrounding a pile that can result in a heave force developing on the pile shaft, tension within the pile shaft, and upward movement of part or all of the pile

3.1.4.2022**trial pile**

pile that will not form part of the foundation, installed before the commencement of the piling works, and used to investigate the appropriateness of the chosen type of pile and method of execution and to confirm its design, dimensions, and resistance

3.1.4.2123**working pile**

pile that will form part of the foundation of the structure

3.1.4.2224**test pile**

trial pile or working pile to which loads are applied to determine the load-displacement behaviour of the pile and the surrounding ground at the time of construction

3.1.4.2325**ultimate control test**

load test carried out on a test pile to determine its resistance at the ultimate limit state

3.1.4.2426**serviceability control test**

load test carried out on a test pile to determine its load-displacement behaviour and resistance at the serviceability limit state

3.1.4.2527**inspection test**

test used to verify acceptance of a working pile

Note 1 to entry: Pile inspection tests include non-destructive integrity tests (to confirm the as-built condition, length, and cross-sectional area of the pile shaft) and concrete or grout tests (such as cube or cylinder strength tests to confirm that the pile materials comply with acceptance criteria).

3.1.4.2628**integrity test**

test carried out on an installed pile for the verification of soundness of materials and of the pile geometry

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

3.1.4.2729**pile load**

axial compressive, tensile, or transverse load (or force) applied to the head of the pile

3.1.4.2830**pile test proof load**

maximum proposed test load which includes imposed actions from the superstructure or the ground

3.1.4.2931**temporary support load**

load representing the temporary axial or transverse support from the ground to a pile under load test resulting from particular conditions of the test such as variations in groundwater, pile head level or pile head restraint that may reverse, reduce or change under service conditions

3.1.4.3032**static load test**

load test in which a single pile is subject to a series of static loads in order to define its load-displacement behaviour

[SOURCE: adapted from EN ISO 22477-1:2018]

3.1.4.3133**dynamic load**

axial compressive impact load (or force) applied to the head of a pile by a driving hammer or drop mass

[SOURCE: EN ISO 22477-4:2018, 3.1.5]

3.1.4.3234**dynamic load test**

test where a pile is subjected to chosen axial dynamic load at the pile head to allow the determination of its compressive resistance

[SOURCE: EN ISO 22477-4:2018, 3.1.7]

3.1.4.3335**dynamic impact test**

pile test with measurement of strain, acceleration and displacement versus time during the impact event

Note 1 to entry: Dynamic impact tests are often referred to as dynamic load tests

[SOURCE: EN ISO 22477-4:2018, 3.1.8]

3.1.4.3436**rapid load test**

pile load test where a pile is subjected to chosen axial rapid load at the pile head for the analysis of its capacity (compression resistance)

[SOURCE: EN ISO 22477-10:2016, 3.1.8]

3.1.4.3537**bi-directional load test**

static load test using an embedded jack where a section of the pile is used as reaction to load another section

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Note 1 to entry: It is possible to install one or more levels of jacks in the pile shaft

3.1.4.3638**ultimate resistance of a pile**

corresponding state in which the piled foundation displaces significantly with negligible increase of resistance

3.1.4.3739**driving formulae**

formula that relates impact hammer energy and number of blows for a unit distance or permanent set for a single blow to pile compressive resistance

[SOURCE: EN ISO 22477-4:2018, 3.1.9]

3.1.4.3840**wave equation analysis**

analysis of a dynamically loaded pile by a mathematical model that can represent the dynamic behaviour of the pile by the progression of stress waves in the pile and the resulting response of the ground

[SOURCE: EN ISO 22477-4:2018, 3.1.10]

3.1.4.3941**closed form solution**

mathematical analysis of the dynamic load test data based on closed form wave analysis equations to derive a mobilised load

3.1.4.4042**signal matching**

numerical analysis to evaluate the shaft and base resistance of the test pile by modelling the pile and ground with assumed parameters to closely match the measured signals of pile head strain, displacement and acceleration obtained during a dynamic load test

[SOURCE: EN ISO 22477-4:2018, 3.1.11]

3.1.4.4143**re-driving**

process of re-initiating movement of a driven pile carried out some time after pile installation, used to check or determine any change in pile set or resistance

3.1.4.4244**pile set**

permanent pile settlement after one hammer impact blow during driving

3.1.4.4345**pile set-up**

time-dependent increase in pile resistance

3.1.5 Terms relating to retaining structures**3.1.5.1****retaining structure**

structure that provides lateral support to the ground or that resists pressure from a mass of other material

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)**3.1.5.2****gravity wall**

retaining structure of stone or plain or reinforced concrete having a base footing with or without a heel, ledge or buttress

Note 1 to entry: The weight of the wall itself, sometimes including stabilizing masses of soil, rock or backfill, plays a dominant role in the support of the retained material.

3.1.5.3**embedded wall**

relatively thin retaining structure of steel, reinforced concrete, or timber that is supported by anchors, struts or passive earth pressure

Note 1 to entry: The bending stiffness of such walls plays a significant role in the support of the retained material while the role of the weight of the wall is insignificant.

Note 2 to entry: This definition includes structures that do not reach below the final excavation level, even if they cannot formally be considered as embedded.

3.1.5.4**composite retaining structure**

retaining structure composed of elements of gravity and embedded walls

Note 1 to entry: A large variety of such structures exists and examples include double sheet pile wall cofferdams, gabion walls, crib walls, earth structures reinforced by grouting.

Note 2 to entry: Earth structures reinforced by tendons, geotextiles, and structures with multiple rows of soil nails are considered as soil reinforcement (see 3.1.7).

3.1.5.5**combined wall**

embedded wall composed of primary and secondary steel elements, placed in the ground before excavation begins

3.1.6 Terms relating to anchors**3.1.6.1****anchor**

structural element capable of transmitting an applied tensile load from the anchor head through a free anchor length to a resisting element and finally into the ground

3.1.6.2**grouted anchor**

anchor that uses a bonded length formed of cement grout, resin or similar material to transmit the tensile force to the ground

Note 1 to entry: A 'grouted anchor' in prEN 1997-3:2022 is termed a 'ground anchor' in EN 1537.

3.1.6.3**permanent anchor**

anchor with a design service life which is in excess of two years

3.1.6.4**temporary anchor**

anchor with a design service life of two years or less

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**3.1.6.5****tendon**

part of an anchor that is capable of transmitting the tensile load from the anchor head to the resisting element in the ground

3.1.6.6**fixed anchor length**

designed length of an anchor over which the load is transmitted to the surrounding ground through a resisting element

3.1.6.7**free anchor length**

distance between the proximal end of the fixed anchor length and the tendon anchorage point at the anchor head

3.1.6.8**tendon bond length**

(for grouted anchors only) length of the tendon that is bonded directly to the grout and capable of transmitting the applied tensile load

3.1.6.9**tendon free length**

length of the tendon between the anchorage point at the anchor head and the proximal end of the tendon bond length

3.1.6.10**apparent tendon free length**

(for grouted anchors only) length of tendon which is estimated to be fully decoupled from the surrounding grout and is determined from the load-elastic displacement data following testing

3.1.6.11**investigation test**

load test to establish the geotechnical ultimate load resistance of an anchor at the interface of the resisting element and the ground and to determine the characteristics of the anchor in the working load range

[SOURCE: EN ISO 22477-5:2018, 3.1.6]

3.1.6.12**suitability test**

load test to confirm that a particular anchor design will be adequate in particular ground conditions

[SOURCE: EN ISO 22477-5:2018, 3.1.9]

3.1.6.13**acceptance test**

load test to confirm that an individual anchor conforms with its acceptance criteria

[SOURCE: EN ISO 22477-5:2018, 3.1.1]

3.1.6.14**lock-off load**

load with which pre-stressable anchors are fixed to realise an active force to limit deformation

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)**3.1.6.15****test method 1**

test in which the anchor is loaded stepwise by one or more load cycles increasing from the datum load to the proof load

[SOURCE: EN ISO 22477-5:2018, Test Method 1]

3.1.6.16**test method 2**

test in which the anchor is loaded stepwise by load cycles increasing from a datum load to the proof load

Note 1 to entry: At each load step the load loss in the anchor is measured during a fixed time period.

[SOURCE: EN ISO 22477-5:2018, Test Method 2]

3.1.6.17**test method 3**

test in which the anchor is loaded in incremental steps from a datum load to a maximum load

Note 1 to entry: The displacement of the tendon end is measured under maintained load at each loading step.

[SOURCE: EN ISO 22477-5:2018, Test Method 3]

3.1.7 Terms relating to reinforced fill structures**3.1.7.1****reinforced fill structures**

engineered fill incorporating discrete layers of soil reinforcement, generally placed horizontally, which are arranged between successive layers of fill during construction

3.1.7.2**soil nailed structures**

~~engineered cut-faced or existing structures incorporating layers of soil reinforcements which are installed into the ground, usually at a sub-horizontal angle, and that mobilise resistance with the soil along their entire length~~

~~Note 1 to entry: — They are typically arranged in rows. For cut-faced applications the rows are usually placed between successive passes of soil excavation in front of one face of the structure.~~

SC7 NOTE [#3]:
CR 0209 Delete
definition, new in 3.1.8

3.1.7.3**basal reinforcement to embankments**

fill structures incorporating at their base level at least one layer of soil reinforcements, commonly used for fills founded on weak or soft soils and fills founded on inclusion networks, or for fills overbridging voids

3.1.7.4**soil veneer reinforcement**

use of soil reinforcement to prevent the sliding of the cover soil layer over a landfill lining or cover system, or any other low friction interface

3.1.7.5**tie back wedge method**

method of analysis of reinforced soil structures that follows basic design principles currently employed for classical or anchored retaining walls

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**3.1.7.65****coherent gravity method**

method of analysis of reinforced soil structures based on the monitored behaviour of a large number of structures using inextensible reinforcements, corroborated by theoretical analysis

3.1.7.76**isochronous creep curves**

load/strain creep curves plotted at fixed times (0,1 h, 1 h, 10 h, etc.)

Note 1 to entry: The load at which there is a specified difference in strain for a specified time interval can then be defined. The procedure how to generate the isochronous creep curves is given in ISO TR 20432.

3.1.7.87**equivalent constant in-soil temperature**

temperature that causes, during one year, the same rate of reinforcing element degradation as the actual in-soil temperature variation at the location of the reinforcing element

3.1.8 Terms relating to reinforced ground ~~reinforcing element structures~~**3.1.8.1****rock bolt**

rock reinforcing element for stabilizing rock excavations and slopes, transferring load from the unstable exterior to the confined interior of the rock mass as well as doweling against shear through discontinuities

SC7 NOTE [#4]:
CR 0010 Anchors and Rock bolts
Revised definition

3.1.8.2**rock anchor**

~~rock reinforcing element capable of imposing a pre-tensile load via the anchor from the unstable exterior to the confined interior of the rock mass to enhance the shear capacity of potential slip surfaces inside the rock mass~~

SC7 NOTE [#5]:
CR 0010 Anchors and Rock bolts
Delete definition of rock anchors

Note 1 to entry: ~~A rock anchor differs from a “regular” anchor, that it is not transmitting external loads into the ground from e.g. retaining walls, but to impose internal pretension load to stabilize the rock itself. Many of the anchor characteristics may be the same or similar, such as an anchor head, grouting, anchor length.~~

3.1.8.32**soil nails**

~~reinforcing element installed into the ground, that mobilises resistance with the soil along its entire length, working mainly in tension, but with shearing/bending forces as a possible but negligible secondary effect, soil reinforcing element to treat unstable natural soil slopes or as a construction technique that allows the safe over-steepening of soil slopes~~

SC7 NOTE [#6]:
CR 0010 Anchors and Rock bolts
Title made singular

SC7 NOTE [#7]:
CR 0200

Note to entry: Soil nails are usually driven or bored into the ground

3.1.8.3**soil nailed structures**

~~cuttings, slopes or existing structures reinforced with soil nails, which are installed into the ground, usually at a sub-horizontal angle, and that mobilise resistance with the ground along their entire length~~

Note 1 to entry: ~~Soil nails are typically arranged in rows. For cut-faced applications the rows are usually installed sequentially in a top-down sequence as the face of the structure is progressively excavated~~

Note 2 to entry: ~~Soil nail spacing should be close enough to ensure the structure works as a monolith~~

Note 3 to entry: ~~Soil nailed structures usually incorporate a facing and a drainage system~~

SC7 NOTE [#8]:
CR 0209

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)**3.1.8.4****sprayed concrete**

concrete that is conveyed through a hose and pneumatically sprayed at high velocity onto a surface

3.1.8.5**wire mesh**

arrangement of bidirectional interlocking metal wires with spaced, small openings between

3.1.8.6**facing element**

modular precast panel embedding the connections for soil reinforcements covering to the exposed face of a reinforced fill structure which retains the fill between layers of reinforcement and protects the fill against erosion

[SOURCE: EN 14475]

SC7 NOTE [#9]:
CR 0209

3.1.8.7**rock supported structure**

cutting or existing rock reinforced or supported with anchors, rock bolts and/or facing combined, which are installed into the rock mass and onto the rock surface

SC7 NOTE [#10]:
CR 0209

3.1.9 Terms relating to ground improvement**3.1.9.1****ground improvement**

modification of the ground or its hydraulic conductivity in order to bring the effects of actions within ultimate and serviceability requirements

Note 1 to entry: Ground improvement can be achieved by reducing or increasing hydraulic conductivity, binding or densifying the ground, filling voids, or creating inclusions in the ground.

3.1.9.2**ground improvement zone**

volume of ground within which ground improvement is installed and results in modified ground properties

3.1.9.3**inclusion**

elements installed in the ground with defined geometry and material properties sufficiently different from the surrounding ground as to modify the distribution of load, stress and groundwater flow within the ground improvement zone

3.1.9.4**rigid inclusion**

inclusions with higher stiffness and a measurable unconfined compressive strength

3.1.9.5**discrete ground improvement**

ground improvement zone comprising inclusions created in the ground with properties differing from the surrounding ground

3.1.9.6**diffused ground improvement**

ground improvement where the ground improvement zone is be modelled with a single set of parameters

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**3.1.9.7****structural connection**

mechanical connection between the ground improvement and the structure, capable of transferring compressive, tensile, shear, and bending actions directly

3.1.9.8**contact**

physical contact between the ground improvement and the structure, capable of transferring only compressive and limited shear loads

Note 1 to entry: The transferable shear load typically depends on the size of the compressive load and the activated friction.

3.1.9.9**load distribution**

subdivision of the total load into the share transferred by the inclusion and the share transferred by the soil

Note 1 to entry: The load distribution is determined by calculation and is an integral part of the design of discrete ground improvement.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)**3.2 Symbols and abbreviations**

The symbols in prEN 1997-1:2022 and the following apply to this document.

3.2.1 Latin upper-case letters

A	plan area of the foundation base; and
A	loss of metal (incl. zinc) per face over the first year (in reinforcement elements)
A'	effective foundation area ($= B' \times L'$)
A_0	initial cross-sectional area of steel reinforcement
$A_{0,con}$	initial cross-sectional area of steel reinforcement at a connection
A_b, A_s	cross sectional area of the pile base and shaft, respectively
$A'_{gs,d}$	design value of the effective adhesion between the ground and geosynthetic reinforcement (also covers apparent adhesion caused by interlocking mechanism)
A_r	reduced cross-sectional area of steel reinforcement, taking account of the maximum anticipated loss of steel during the design service life of the structure ($A_r = A_0 - A_r$)
$A_{r,con}$	reduced cross-sectional area of steel reinforcement at a connection, taking account of the maximum anticipated loss of steel along the design service life of the structure ($A_{r,con} = A_{0,con} - A_{r,con}$)
A_{red}	plan area of the foundation base not including any area where there is no positive contact pressure between the foundation and the underlying ground
A_{ru}	reduced cross-sectional area of the reinforcing element at ultimate resistance, allowing for the effects of potential corrosion
A_{ry}	reduced cross-sectional area of the reinforcing element at yield, allowing for the effects of potential corrosion.
$A'_{sn,d}$	design value of the effective adhesion between the ground and a soil nail
$A'_{st,d}$	design value of the effective adhesion between the ground and steel reinforcement
B	foundation width (shorter dimension on plan); and
B	breadth of the reinforcing element
B'	effective foundation width
B_b, B_s	base and shaft width (for square piles), respectively
$B_{b,eq}$	equivalent pile base size equal to B_b (for square piles), D_b (for circular piles) or p (for other shaped piles)
B_{gi}	smaller plan dimension of a rectangle circumscribing the ground improvement zone, limited to the depth of the zone of influence (in ground improvement)

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

$B_{s,eq}$	equivalent pile shaft size equal to B_s (for square piles) or D_s (for circular piles)
C	Subgrade reaction modulus
C_a	Cohesive resistance along the slip surface of an active wedge
C_p	Cohesive resistance along the slip surface of a passive wedge
D	bar diameter
D	embedment depth
D_{add}	representative vertical or transverse temporary support force
D_b	base diameter (for circular piles) in pile foundations
D_{ds}	Diameter of depression at the surface
D_{rep}	representative drag force due to moving ground in pile foundations
D_d	design drag force due to moving ground in pile foundations
D_s	shaft diameter (for circular piles) in pile foundations
D_{supp}	representative vertical or transverse temporary support force
D_y	diameter of the void
$E_d I$	Flexural stiffness of the pile, design value
E_i	initial tangent modulus in at-rest conditions
E_{ur}	unloading-reloading modulus
$F_{ad,SLS}$	design value of the maximum anchor force, including the effect of lock off load, and sufficient to prevent a serviceability limit state in the supported structure
$F_{ak,SLS}$	characteristic value of the maximum anchor force, including the effect of lock-off load, sufficient to prevent a serviceability limit state in the supported structure
$F_{d,SLS}$	design value of an action to prevent a SLS
$F_{d,ULS}$	Design value of an action to prevent an ULS
F_{ax}	axial action applied to the pile
$F_{cd,SLS}$	design axial compression applied to the pile at the serviceability limit state, including potential down drag forces
$F_{d,group}$	design action applied to the pile group or piled raft
F_{td}	design axial tension applied to the pile
$F_{tr,d}$	design transverse force applied to the pile including an allowance for any potential

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

	transverse force due to moving ground
H	Maximum height of the embankment
e	height (depth) of the excavation
H_s	height of material above the geosynthetic layer
H_v	height above the void
I	second moment of area (geometric moment of inertia)
K	earth pressure coefficient averaging the pressure around the whole circumference, $K = (1 + K_0)/2$
K_0	at-rest earth pressure coefficient
K_a	active pressure coefficient
K_a, K_{aq}, K_{ac}	normal active earth pressure coefficients
$K_{ac,u}$	normal active earth pressure coefficients for undrained conditions
K_M	consequence factor applied to material properties
K_p, K_{pq}, K_{pc}	normal passive earth pressure coefficients
$K_{pc,u}$	normal passive earth pressure coefficients for undrained conditions
K_s	relative stiffness between the foundation and the ground
K_u	corrosion heterogeneity factor for ultimate (in reinforcement elements)
K_y	corrosion heterogeneity factor for yield (in reinforcement elements)
L	foundation length
L'	effective foundation length
L_{bd}	Buckling length, design value
L_{dd}	depth of the neutral plane corresponding to the point where the pile settlement equals the ground settlement
L_{ds}	total length of the reinforcing element along which direct shear stresses are mobilized
L_{int}	mobilized interface length
L_j	Length of the j^{th} layer of reinforcement
L_n	nail length

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

L_{po}	total length of the reinforcing element beyond the failure surface (or line of maximum tension) where pull-out stresses are mobilized (for reinforcement elements)
L_{ps}	total length of the length of the reinforcing element beyond the failure surface (or line of maximum tension) where punching shear stresses are mobilized
$M1, M2,$	independent sets of partial factors on material
N	component of the total action acting normal to the foundation base
N_a	component of the total action acting normal to the slip surface of an active wedge
N_c	non-dimensional bearing resistance factor
N_{cu}	non-dimensional bearing resistance factor for undrained conditions
N_d	design value of N
N'_d	design value of the effective action acting normal to the foundation base
N_{rep}	representative value of N
N_p	component of the total action acting normal to the slip surface of a passive wedge
N_q	non-dimensional bearing resistance factor for the influence of the overburden pressure
N_s	shape factor depending on the length and the width of the excavation
N_γ	non-dimensional bearing resistance factor for the influence of the ground's weight density
N_{yu}	non-dimensional bearing resistance factor for the influence of the ground's weight density, for undrained conditions
P	percentage of test results passing the required characteristic value (in ground improvement); and
P	length of the perimeter of the reinforcing element
P_c	critical creep load determined in Test Method 3
P_o	lock-off load
P_p	proof load
$R_{ad,SLS}$	design value of an anchor's geotechnical resistance at the serviceability limit state
$R_{ad,ULS}$	design value of an anchor's geotechnical resistance at the ultimate limit state
$R_{ak,SLS}$	characteristic value of an anchor's geotechnical resistance at the serviceability limit state
$R_{ak,ULS}$	characteristic value of an anchor's geotechnical resistance at the ultimate limit state
R_{am}	measured value of an anchor's geotechnical resistance

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

$R_{am,SLS}$	measured value of an anchor's geotechnical resistance at the serviceability limit state
$R_{am,ULS}$	measured value of an anchor's geotechnical resistance at the ultimate limit state
$R_{am,S}$	measured value of an anchor's geotechnical resistance complying with its serviceability limit state criterion SLS
$R_{am,U}$	measured value of an anchor's geotechnical resistance complying with its ultimate limit state criterion ULS
$(R_{am,ULS})_{min}$	minimum value of $R_{am,ULS}$ in a number of tests
$(R_{am,SLS})_{min}$	minimum value of $R_{am,SLS}$ in a number of tests
R_b, R_s, R_{st}	resistance of pile base, shaft, and shaft in tension, respectively
$R_{b,rep}$	pile's representative base resistance in axial compression
$(R_{calc})_{mean}$	mean calculated pile resistance for a set of profiles of field test results
$(R_{calc})_{min}$	minimum calculated pile resistance for a set of profiles of field test results
R_c, R_t, R_{tr}	pile resistance to compression, tension, and transverse actions, respectively
$R_{c,rep}$	pile's representative total resistance in axial compression
$R_{d,group}$	design resistance of the pile group or piled raft
$R_{d,gs,int}$	design tensile strength of the interface with the geosynthetic reinforcing element
$R_{d,st,int}$	design tensile strength of the interface with a steel reinforcing element
$R_{d,sn,int}$	design tensile strength of the interface with a soil nail element
R_g	resistance of the ground supporting the load transfer platform in the net area between the columns mobilized at a settlement that is compatible with the settlement of the ground improvement system
$R_{k,com}$	characteristic resistance to direct shear of the reinforcing element
$R_{k,ds}$	characteristic tensile resistance of the connection (of the reinforcing element)
$R_{m,sn,pul}$	measured pull-out force
R_{pd}	design value of the resisting force caused by earth pressure on the foundation side
R_{Nd}	design bearing resistance normal to the base of a spread foundation
$R_{rep,po}$	representative pull-out resistance of the reinforcing element
$R_{rep,raft}$	representative ultimate vertical compressive resistance of the raft
$R_{ri,i}$	resistance of a rigid inclusion i , depending on its position within the group

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

$R_{s,rep}$	pile's representative shaft resistance (in axial compression)
$R_{sys,rep}$	representative value of the total resistance of the ground improvement system with rigid inclusions
R_{td}	design value of pile's design axial tensile resistance; and
R_{td}	design value of the tensile resistance of the structural elements of an anchor
$(R_{test})_{mean}$	mean calculated pile resistance measured in a set of load tests
$(R_{test})_{min}$	minimum calculated pile resistance measured in a set of load tests
$R_{tr,d}$	pile's design transverse resistance
$R_{t,rep}$	pile's representative axial tensile resistance
$R_{t,rep,el}$	representative tensile resistance of the reinforcing element
$R_{x,d}$	design resistance of a pile (where x = b, c, s, st, t, or tr, as above)
$R_{x,m}$	measured resistance of a pile (where x = b, c, s, st, t, or tr, as above)
$R_{x,rep}$	representative resistance of a pile (where x = b, c, s, st, t, or tr, as above)
S_t	sensitivity of fine soil
S_v	vertical spacing of the reinforcements
T	component of the total action acting transverse (parallel) to the foundation base; and
T	age of the structure (in reinforcement elements) in years
T_d	design value of T;
$T_{i,j}$	is the tensile force per meter width due to any horizontal loads
$T_{gs,k}$	characteristic tensile strength of geosynthetic reinforcement
T_k	characteristic tensile strength of the reinforcing element
$T_{k,cr}$	characteristic tensile strength of the reinforcing element allowing for creep and limiting elongation
$T_{p,j}$	tensile force per metre width due to the vertical loads of self-weight and surcharge
T_{rep}	representative value of T
$T_{s,j}$	is the tensile force per metre width due to any strip loading
T_{ven}	tensile force to hold the veneer system on the slope without water
V_{norm}	coefficient of variation based on a normal distribution of strength values

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

W	wedge load
W_a	wedge load of an active wedge
W_p	wedge load of a passive wedge
W_s	surcharge load
W_T	vertical uniformly distributed (wedge) load on the reinforcement
W_v	resultant vertical load excluding external strip loads on the layer of reinforcement

3.2.2 Latin lower-case letters

a	adhesion between layers or of ground to a construction
a_d	design value of the geometrical property
a_{nom}	nominal value of the geometrical property
b	base width of the embankment; and
b	width of the strip element (in reinforcement elements)
b_o, b_q, b	factors accounting for base inclination
b_{cu}	factor accounting for base inclination, undrained
b_{gs}	width of reinforcement per unit width ($b_{gs} = 1$ for continuous sheets)
b_{st}	width of strip reinforcement per unit width ($b_{st} = 1$ for grids)
$c_{min,dur}$	minimum concrete cover required for environmental conditions
c_u	soil undrained shear strength
$c_{u,d}$	design undrained shear strength of the soft foundation soil (in reinforcing elements)
$c_{u,rep}$	representative undrained shear strength of the soft foundation soil (in reinforcing elements)
d_o, d_q, d	factors accounting for the depth of foundation embedment
d_{min}	minimum depth of field investigation
d_s	rock discontinuity spacing between a pair of immediately adjacent discontinuities
d_{cu}	factor accounting for depth, undrained
e	eccentricity of the applied or resultant action

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

e_{0d}	maximum transversal deformation of the initial curvature over the buckling length, design value
e_B	eccentricity of the applied load in the direction of B
e_d	design eccentricity of the resultant action
e_j	eccentricity of the resultant vertical load at the level of the j^{th} layer of reinforcement
e_L	eccentricity of the applied load in the direction of L
e_z	initial zinc thickness of coating (for steel reinforcement elements)
f_{ds}	direct shear factor determined from direct shear tests or comparable experience (for reinforcing elements)
$f_{m,d}$	design value of the unconfined compressive strength of the improved ground
f_s	reduction factor to allow for extrapolation uncertainty for given design service life
f_{uk}	characteristic ultimate tensile strength of steel reinforcement
f_{yk}	characteristic yield strength of steel reinforcement
g_G, g_{Q_r} g	factors accounting for ground inclination
h	maximum depth or maximum height of a cutting, excavation or embankment
i	load inclination factor; and
i	numbering of strata with i from 1 to n
i_G, i_{Q_r}, i	factors accounting for load inclination
i_{cu}	load inclination factor, undrained
j	index number of layers or strata with j from 1 to n
k	subgrade modulus; and
k	horizontal subgrade reaction coefficient
k_{a-j} k_{aej}, k_{ae}	inclined active earth pressure coefficients
$k_{ae,u}$	inclined active earth pressure coefficients for undrained conditions
k_{p-j} k_{pej}, k_{pe}	inclined passive earth pressure coefficients
$k_{pe,u}$	inclined passive earth pressure coefficients for undrained conditions
k_{cu}	reduction factor on c_u

SC7 NOTE [#11]:
CR 0195 All Earth pressure with upper case. The formulas and wording revised in clause 7 and Annex D to be consistent.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

$k_n\{P\}$	acceptance value for the sample distribution in terms of P
k_{po}	pull-out factor determined in laboratory pull-out tests in representative conditions, from comparable experience, or from field tests (for reinforcement elements)
k_{sn}	soil nail (reinforcement element) pull-out factor determined from field pull-out tests or from comparable experience
$k_{\tan\varphi}$	reduction factor on $\tan\varphi$
k	constant depending on the roughness of the ground structure interface and local disturbance during installation: $k_s = a/c$
m	exponent in bearing resistance formulae for the load inclination factor i
m_y	mean of the measured values of $\log(q_{u,field})$ (in ground improvement)
n	number of rigid inclusions; and
n	exponent (factor covering reduction in corrosion rate in time for reinforcement elements)
p	pile perimeter
p_0	total at-rest earth pressure
p'_0	effective at-rest earth pressure
p_a	component of the total active earth pressure normal to the retaining wall face
p'_a	component of the effective active earth pressure normal to the retaining wall face
$p_{a,min}$	minimum value of p_a to the retaining wall face
p_{fd}	design value of the ultimate transversal ground resistance pressure
p_{group}	smaller dimension of a rectangle circumscribing a group of piles
$p_{max,d}$	presumed maximum design bearing pressure
p_p	component of the total passive earth pressure normal to the retaining wall face
p'_p	component of the effective passive earth pressure normal to the retaining wall face
p_{ps}	resistance to punching through the ground or fill (of a reinforcing element)
p_{re}	perimeter of the reinforcing element
p_{sn}	representative perimeter of the failure surface enclosing the soil nail per unit length, where pull-out resistance is mobilized
q	overburden or vertical surcharge pressure at given level
q'	effective overburden pressure at the level of the foundation base

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

q_o	overburden pressure applied to the ground outside the foundation
q_a	vertical surcharge applied at the ground surface (on the active side of the retaining wall)
q_b	end bearing or base stress
$q_{m,sn,pul}$	measured interface unit strength
q_p	permanent vertical surcharge applied at formation level (on the passive side of the retaining wall)
q_s	surface load
$q_{s,i}$	shaft friction in the various strata i
q_{sk}	characteristic skin friction along the soil nail (reinforcement element)
$q_{u,field}$	unconfined compressive strength measured in unconfined compressive tests on field samples
$q_{uk,imp}$	characteristic value of the unconfined compressive strength of the improved ground
$q_{u,rep}$	representative value of the unconfined compressive strength of the improved ground
s_0	settlement caused by undrained shear
s_1	settlement caused by consolidation
s_2	settlement caused by creep
s_c, s_q, s_γ	factors accounting for the shape of the foundation base
s_{cu}	factor accounting for shape, undrained
s_{ground}	ground strata settlement profile (at any particular time)
s_p	centre to centre spacing of the inclusions
s_{pile}	pile settlement with depth
s_y	standard deviation of the measured values of $\log(q_{u,field})$ (in ground improvement)
t	time in days (since t_0)
t_0	time / date of installation or construction
u	groundwater pressure at a point in the ground
u_a	groundwater pressure acting at depth z on the active side of the retaining wall
w_s	surcharge of the geosynthetic layer
x	distance along the length of the reinforcing element

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

y	transversal deflection of the pile
y_f	relative deformation between the pile and the supporting soil where p_f is obtained
z	depth below ground surface
z_a	depth of zone of influence; and
z_a	depth at the active side of the retaining wall
z_c	depth of the foundation soil when the depth is limited and c_u is constant throughout
$z_{e,e}$	equivalent embedment depth
z_{emb}	embedment depth of the foundation
z_f	foundation depth (thickness)
z_p	depth at the passive side of the retaining wall
z_w	groundwater level at a depth
z_{zoi}	depth of zone of influence

3.2.3 Greek upper-case letters

Δa	deviation in a geometrical property
ΔA_r	maximum anticipated loss of steel area during the design service life of the structure
ΔB	is a width deviation
ΔC_{dev}	allowance in design for deviation of the concrete cover
Δe	loss of thickness caused by corrosion in the ground

3.2.4 Greek lower-case letters

α	angle of inclination of the foundation base to the horizontal; and
α	angle of inclination of the surcharge
α_1	limit value of the creep rate in Test Method 1
α_3	limit value of the creep rate in Test Method 3
α_{ds}	is a soil/reinforcement interaction coefficient for undrained conditions (for reinforcing elements)
α_{SLS}	creep rate defining the geotechnical resistance of an anchor at the serviceability limit state (determined from the displacement per log cycle of time at constant anchor load as defined in EN ISO 22477-5)

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

α_{ULS}	creep rate defining the geotechnical resistance of an anchor at the ultimate limit state (determined from the displacement per log cycle of time at constant anchor load as defined in EN ISO 22477-5)
β	inclination of the ground surface
γ	unit weight density of the ground
γ_a	average weight density of the ground (on active side of the retaining wall) above depth z_a
a_{SLS}	partial factor on an anchor's geotechnical resistance at the serviceability limit state
$a_{\text{SLS,test}}$	partial factor on the anchor resistance at the serviceability limit state in acceptance tests
a_{ULS}	partial factor on an anchor's geotechnical resistance at the ultimate limit state
γ'_d	design effective weight density of the ground below the foundation level
γ_E	partial factor on effect-of-actions
γ_F	partial factor on actions
$\gamma_{F,\text{drag}}$	partial factor on a drag force due to moving ground in pile foundations
F_{SLS}	partial factor on the anchor force at the serviceability limit state
γ_{gs}	partial material factor for geosynthetic reinforcement
$\gamma_{\text{gs,int}}$	partial resistance factor on interface strength of geosynthetic reinforcement
$\gamma_{\text{gs,d}}$	design value of the effective angle of shearing resistance between the ground and geosynthetic reinforcement
γ_M	partial material factor, applied to ground properties
γ_{M0}, γ_{M2}	partial factors for steel (in reinforcing elements) whose values are specified in prEN 1993-1-1
$\gamma_{M,\text{gs}}$	partial factor for geosynthetic reinforcing elements
$\gamma_{M,\text{pwm}}$	partial factor for polymer steel woven wire mesh reinforcing elements
γ_p	average weight density of the ground (on passive side of the retaining wall) above depth z_p
γ_R	partial resistance factor, applied to ground resistance
γ_{Rb}, γ_{Rs}	resistance factors in pile foundations
γ_{Rc}	resistance factor for an individual pile axial compressive resistance
γ_{Rst}	resistance factor
γ_{Rd}	partial factor associated with the uncertainty of the resistance model / model factor in pile

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

	foundations; and
γ_{Rd}	model factor accounting for additional uncertainty owing to extrapolation of measured strengths to the design service life (of reinforcing elements)
$\gamma_{Rd,0}$, $\gamma_{Rd,2}$	model factors that take account of the degree to which the strength of the steel reinforcing element is mobilized in a reinforced ground structure
$\gamma_{Rd,sys}$	model factor on overall system resistance
γ_{Re}	passive earth resistance factor (on retaining walls)
γ_{Rst}	resistance factor
$\gamma_{Rd,group}$	model factor for the pile group or piled raft
$\gamma_{R,group}$	resistance factor for the pile group axial compressive resistance
γ_{Rh}	partial factor for sliding resistance
γ_{RN}	partial factor for bearing resistance
$\gamma_{R,ds}$	partial factor to direct shear of the reinforcing element
$\gamma_{R,po}$	partial factor for pull-out resistance of the reinforcing element
$\gamma_{R,raft}$	resistance factor for the raft
γ_{Rst}	partial factor of shaft resistance in pile foundations
R_{sys}	partial resistance factor for the rigid inclusion system
γ_{RT}	partial factor for sliding resistance
γ_{Rtr}	partial factor of transversal resistance in pile foundations
SLS	partial factor for pile shaft resistance in the serviceability limit state
$\gamma_{tan\ cv}$	partial factor on the coefficient of internal friction of the ground under constant-volume conditions
$\gamma_{tan\ res}$	partial factor on the coefficient of friction of the ground along a residual slip surface
	ground/structure interface friction angle; and
δ	angle of inclination of the earth pressure
d	design value of
δ_{ep}	angle of inclination of the earth pressure
rep	representative value of

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

ε_l	limiting strain in the reinforcement
ε_r	reinforcement strain
η_c	conversion factor accounting for long term effects (in ground improvement)
η_{ch}	conversion factor accounting for the adverse effects of chemical and biological degradation of the element at the design temperature
η_{con}	conversion factor accounting for the reduction of resistance (of a reinforcing element) due to the connection
η_{cov}	conversion factor allowing for the relationship between the log normal and normal characteristic strength based on field test results
η_{cr}	conversion factor accounting for the adverse effect of tensile creep due to sustained static load over the design service life of the structure at the design temperature
η_{dmg}	conversion factor accounting for the adverse effects of mechanical damage during execution
η_{dyn}	conversion factor accounting for the adverse effects of intense and repeated loading over the design service life of the structure
$\eta_{el,con}$	conversion factor accounting for anticipated loss of strength with time and from other influences at the connection (with reinforcing elements)
η_{gs}	conversion factor for geosynthetic reinforcement accounting for potential loss of strength with time and other influences
η_{pwm}	conversion factor for reinforcement polymer steel woven wire mesh accounting for potential loss of strength with time and other influences
η_t	conversion factor accounting for the difference in time between testing (typically 28 days) and when the improved ground is exposed to the designed stresses
η_w	conversion factor accounting for the adverse effects of weathering
	angle on plan between the L axis and the direction of T
λ	inclination of the retaining wall
μ_{norm}	mean normal strength of field samples
μ_{po}	coefficient of interface friction determined in laboratory pull-out tests in representative conditions or from field tests (for reinforcement elements)
$\xi_{a,SLS,test}$	correlation factor for serviceability limit state verification taking account of the number of suitability tests
$\xi_{a,ULS,test}$	correlation factor for ultimate limit state verification taking account of the number of suitability tests
ξ_{mean}	correlation factor for mean values / for the mean of the calculated values

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

ξ_{\min}	correlation factor for minimum values/ for the minimum of the calculated values
ξ_n	correlation factor based on the number of tests and selected value of measured force
ξ_{sn}	correlation factor accounting for the number of field pull-out tests performed or comparable experience (in reinforcement elements)
ξ_{ULS}	correlation factor for ultimate limit state verification
σ'_n	normal effective stress acting on the reinforcing element at the distance x
σ'_v	effective vertical stress acting on the reinforcing element on the anchorage length
τ_{ds}	resistance (in units of stress) against direct shear along the ground / grout / reinforcement interface (for reinforcing elements)
τ_n	action effect of down drag (negative shaft friction)
$\tau_{n,rep}$	representative action effect of down drag (negative shaft friction)
τ_{po}	representative shear resistance (in units of stress) against pull-out along the ground/grout/reinforcement interface (for reinforcing elements)
$\varphi_{cv,k}$	characteristic value of the angle of internal friction of the ground under constant-volume conditions
$\varphi_{res,k}$	characteristic value of the angle of friction of the ground along a residual slip surface
$\varphi_{sn,d}$	design value of the effective angle of shearing resistance between the ground and a soil nail
$\varphi'_{st,d}$	design value of the effective angle of shearing resistance between the ground and steel reinforcement
ω_α	intermediate variable on the angle of inclination of the surcharge
ω_δ	intermediate variable on the angle of inclination of the earth pressure

3.2.5 Abbreviations

AI, AII	diffused ground improvement classes
BI, BII	discrete ground improvement classes
CPT	Cone Penetration Test
EFA	Effects Factoring Approach
EI	flexural stiffness product (bending stiffness)
GC	Geotechnical Category
MFA	Material Factor Approach

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

NDP	National Determined Parameter
OCR	overconsolidation ratio of the soil
PMT	Pressure meter Test
PWM	Polymer Steel Woven Wire Mesh
RFA	Resistance Factor Approach
SLS	Serviceability Limit State
SPT	Standard Penetration Test
ULS	Ultimate Limit State
VC	Verification Case
XA1 to XA3	Exposure classes for risk of chemical attack

4 Slopes, cuttings, and embankments**4.1 Scope and field of application**

- (1) This clause shall apply to cuttings, embankments and slopes within the zone of influence of construction works.

NOTE 1 Cuttings cover all type of transient and permanent excavations with an appointed design service life.

NOTE 2 EN 16907 (all parts) applies to the execution of earthworks projects (including cutting and embankments) and their planning.

- (2) This clause shall apply to overall stability, local stability, and displacement of nearby structures and infrastructure within the zone of influence.
- (3) This clause shall apply to dams and levees but excludes the verification of water retention of those structures.

NOTE The provisions in this clause do not entirely cover design rules needed for dams and levees classified in CC3 and CC4. For these structures additional provisions can be needed.

- (4) This clause shall apply to the overall stability of the following geotechnical structures:

- retaining structures;
- ground reinforcing elements and improved ground structures;
- structures, infrastructure and foundation on or near slopes and cuttings; and
- existing slope within the zone of influence of planned construction works.

4.2 Basis of design**4.2.1 Design situations**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2.2 shall apply to slopes, cuttings, and embankments.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)**4.2.2 Geometrical properties****4.2.2.1 General****SC7 NOTE [#12]:**
CR 0165

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.3 shall apply to slopes, cuttings, and embankments.

4.2.3 Zone of influence

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022 4.1.2.1 shall apply to slopes, cuttings, and embankments.

4.2.4 Actions and environmental influences**4.2.4.1 General**

- (2) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1 shall apply to slopes, cuttings, and embankments.

4.2.4.2 Permanent and variable actions

- (1) Design situations involving long-term settlement and movement should include permanent and variable actions determined using the quasi-permanent combination of actions specified in prEN 1990:2021, 8.4.3.4.
- (2) Design situation for cuttings shall include redistribution of initial in-situ stress due to excavation.
- (3) Traffic load shall be included in the verifications of slopes, cuttings and embankments.

NOTE Guidance on traffic loads on geotechnical structures is given in prEN 1991-2:2022, 6.9 and prEN 1992-1-1:2021, 8.10

4.2.4.3 Cyclic and dynamic actions

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1.3 shall apply to slopes, cuttings, and embankments.

4.2.4.4 Environmental influences

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1.4 shall apply to slopes, cuttings, and embankments.

4.2.5 Limit states**4.2.5.1 Ultimate Limit States**

- (1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.1, the following ultimate limit states shall be verified for all slopes, cuttings, and embankments:
- loss of overall and local stability of the ground and structures within the zone of influence;
 - failure due to gradual degradation of ground strength;
 - failure along discontinuities;
 - failure due to the impact of rock fall;
 - loss of bearing resistance of embankments;
 - structural failure of the face or surface of the slope, cutting or embankment and parts of it;
 - structural failure of stabilizing measures;
 - adverse hydraulic effects as a result of failure of drains, filters or seals;
 - rapid drawdown of surface water levels causing excess pore water pressure;
 - failure in ground caused by surface or internal erosion, or scour;

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- structural failure in structures, roads, railway lines, or utilities due to movements in the ground in the zone of influence.

(2) Potential ultimate limit states other than those given in (1) should be verified.

4.2.5.2 Serviceability Limit States

(1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 9, the following serviceability limit states shall be verified for all slopes, cuttings, and embankments:

- settlement of embankments;
- horizontal ground movements of slopes, cuttings and embankments;
- creep in soil and fill during the freezing and thawing period;
- loss of serviceability in neighbouring structures, roads or services due to movements in the ground or due to changes in groundwater conditions;
- deformation of the structure, which can cause serviceability limit states of existing nearby structures;
- movements in the ground due to shear deformations, settlement, vibration or heave; and
- accumulated ground movement or settlement due to creep.

NOTE Excavation below groundwater level can cause severe reduction in ground strength, hydraulic heave, groundwater flow, internal erosion, piping or surface erosion.

(2) Potential serviceability limit states other than those given in (1) should be verified.

4.2.6 Robustness

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.4 shall apply for slope, cuttings, and embankments.

4.2.7 Ground investigation**4.2.7.1 General**

(1) prEN 1997-2:2022, 5 shall apply for slope, cuttings, and embankments.

NOTE Specific ground investigations for earthworks are given in EN 16907-1 and EN 16907- 5.

4.2.7.2 Minimum extent of field investigation

~~(1) The depth and horizontal extent of the field investigation shall be sufficient to determine the ground conditions within the zone of influence in accordance with prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.2.1. In addition to EN1997-2 Clause 5.4.3, the depth of investigation for slopes, cuttings, and embankments shall be determined.~~

~~NOTE the minimum depth d_{min} of the ground investigation is given in Table 4.1 unless the National Annex gives another value.~~

~~(1) The minimum depth of field investigation (d_{min}) should be determined as follows:~~

- ~~— For cuttings: $1.4 h$ (where h is the maximum depth of excavation);~~
- ~~— For embankments: $1.2 H$ or $1.0 B$, whichever is the larger (where H is the maximum height of the embankment and B is its foundation width i.e. shorter dimension on plan);~~
- ~~— For embankments: at least, down to the bottom of the deepest fine soil layer (or layer of high compressibility) that could undergo consolidation settlement, depending on the depth of influence.~~

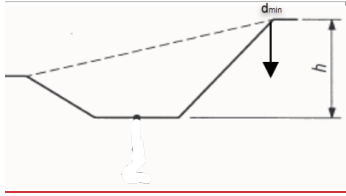
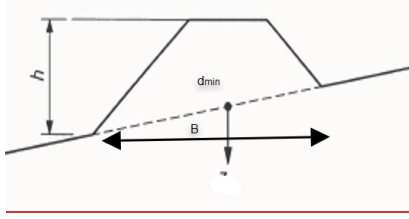
SC7 NOTE [#13]: CR 0147
Systematic revision of all clauses on minimum extent of field investigation.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

~~(2) If a layer of high strength is encountered, d_{min} may be reduced to the depth corresponding to the top of that layer.~~

~~(3) Groundwater and piezometric levels shall be determined if they could influence the stability or settlement of the geotechnical structure or any adjacent structures or services.~~

Table 4.1 — (NDP) Minimum depth of field investigation for slopes, cuttings, and embankments

Application	Minimum depth	Illustration
<u>Cuttings</u>	$d_{min} = 1.4 h$	
<u>Embankments^a</u>	$d_{min} = \max(1.2 h; 1.0 B; h_{com} + 2 \text{ m})$	
^a h_{com} is the depth to the bottom of a compressible soil layer or the zone of influence		

4.2.8 Geotechnical reliability

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.2 shall apply to slopes, cuttings, and embankments.

4.3 Materials

4.3.1 Ground properties

(1) prEN 1997-2:2022, 7-12 shall apply to slopes, cuttings, and embankments.

NOTE For fill properties see prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.

(2) Anisotropic properties should be determined if they have the potential to influence ground behaviour.

NOTE For example, anisotropic ground strength is of special importance for cuttings in fine soils due to the unloading and rotation of the principal stresses.

(3) Potential reduction in ground strength properties caused by exposure to weather conditions during or after execution should be considered.

NOTE Examples include desiccation and saturation of the ground and thawing of frozen ground.

(4) Slopes, cuttings, and embankments may be verified using effective stress or total stress ground properties.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (5) The determination of properties of discontinuities shall comply with prEN 1997-2:2022, 6.2.
- (6) For unstable, slowly moving slopes, ground properties may be derived from back analyses using prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.2 (12) and prEN 1997-2:2022, 5.3.6.

4.3.2 Properties of improved ground properties

- (1) ~~When ground improvement techniques are used, the determination of representative values of the improved ground properties~~ The determination of the representative values of improved ground properties shall comply with Clause 11.

SC7 NOTE [#14]:
CR 0165SC7 NOTE [#15]:
CR 0162**4.4 Groundwater****4.4.1 General**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 6 shall apply to slopes, cuttings, and embankments.
- (2) Measures shall be taken to prevent the adverse effects of potential scour leading to erosion of soil around an earth-structure or internal erosion of soil within or around an earth structure.
- (3) Groundwater pressure at interfaces and in discontinuities shall be determined.
- (4) groundwater flow through interfaces and discontinuities shall be determined.

4.4.2 Groundwater control systems

- (1) ~~Clause 12 shall apply to slopes, cuttings and embankments.~~

SC7 NOTE [#16]:
CR 0164

- ~~(2)~~(2) Groundwater control systems may be provided to ensure that design groundwater and piezometric pressures are not exceeded due to unforeseen circumstances.

NOTE 1 Guidance on verification of groundwater control systems is given in Clause 12.

NOTE 2 Examples of drainage for cuttings and embankments are given in EN 16907-1.

- ~~(2)~~(3) If a groundwater control system is not provided, then the design shall be verified to withstand potential increase of groundwater pressures.

- ~~(3)~~(4) It shall be verified that an Accidental Limit State is not exceeded if the groundwater control system fails.

- ~~(4)~~(5) Where the safety and serviceability of the geotechnical structure depend on the successful performance of a groundwater control system, one or more of the following measures should be taken:

- inspection and maintenance of the system, which should be specified in the Maintenance Plan, see prEN 1997-1:2022, 5;
- installing a drainage system that will perform according to specification without maintenance; and
- installing a secondary ("backup") system.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)**4.5 Geotechnical analysis****4.5.1 General**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 7 shall apply to slopes, cuttings, and embankments.
- (2) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1, the design of slopes, cuttings, and embankments subject to cyclic and dynamic loading should consider the following:
- degradation of ground strength and stiffness;
 - accumulated ground movement or settlement;
 - build-up of excess groundwater pressures;
 - amplification of loads or displacements owing to resonance; and
 - potential liquefaction of the ground.

NOTE For seismic design see EN 1998-5.

- (3) The resistance of pre-existing sliding surfaces should be determined using residual strength properties.
- (4) If the reliability according to prEN 1990 is not obtained in the design verification, potential necessity of stabilizing measures shall be considered.
- (5) When verifying overall stability, all potential failure mechanisms shall be verified.

4.5.2 Analysis of slopes and cuttings**4.5.2.1 Stability in soils and fills**

- (1) The stability of slopes shall be determined using at least one of the following calculation models:
- limit-equilibrium methods;
 - numerical models according to prEN 1997-1:2022, 7.1.4;
 - limit analysis.

NOTE 1 Calculation models for overall stability of soil and fill slopes are given in A.3.

NOTE 2 Calculation models for stability of rock slopes are given in ~~Annex~~ A.4.

- (2) In layered soils with significant differences in shear strength or subjected to high external loads, the stability of both circular and non-circular failure surfaces intersecting the layers with the lowest shear strength shall be verified.
- (3) When it is not obvious which condition (drained or undrained) governs overall stability in any particular geotechnical unit, a calculation using a combination of drained or undrained conditions should be used in which the most unfavourable combination of drainage conditions is chosen.
- (4) The weight density of a geotechnical unit should be a superior (upper) value if it has an unfavourable effect on the stability of the slope, or an inferior (lower) value if it has a favourable effect.
- (5) The stabilizing effect from ~~capillary action~~ **pore water suctions arising** in the unsaturated zone may be used in transient design situations, provided its effect can be verified by comparable experience, groundwater pressure measurements or monitoring.

SC7 NOTE [#17]:
CR 0190
Deleted instead of adding,
to be consistent with
CCMC draft

SC7 NOTE [#18]:
CR 0184

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

NOTE The stabilizing effect is also referred to as apparent cohesion and can be significantly reduced vary with an increase or decrease a change of moisture content. A common approach is to assume zero groundwater pressure above the piezometric level.

SC7 NOTE [#19]:
CR 0184

(6) Potential development of tension cracks in cohesive soils shall be considered in the verification of limit state.

(7) Potential instability along soil-rock interfaces shall be considered in verification of limit state.

4.5.2.2 Stability in rock mass

(1) The verification of rock mass stability shall consider, but is not limited to:

- the rock excavation technique and sequence;
- damaging effects of excavation by blasting;
- influence of rock discontinuities and weathered zones wedges within slopes and cuttings on the local stability;
- the influence of strength anisotropy of the rock material;
- effect of possible local instability on the overall stability.

SC7 NOTE [#20]:
CR 0191

NOTE Calculation models for stability of rock slopes are given in A.4.

(2) The verification of limit states shall be based on geotechnical mapping and documentation of the rock conditions.

(3) Scaling of rock surfaces shall be specified into the design.

4.5.3 Analysis of embankments

(1) For the analysis of the stability of embankments, the rules given in 4.5.2.1 shall apply.

(2) Analysis of embankments should adopt strength and stiffness properties that have been determined at compatible strains for the different materials in the embankment and ground.

(3) Potential uplift due to buoyancy shall be considered as an Ultimate Limit State.

(4) Additional calculation models for bearing resistance and settlement analysis given in Clause 5 may be used to verify that embankments do not exceed limit states.

(5) For embankments on low strength fine soils and organic soils, resistance to punching failure and plastic extrusion failure of the underlying soil should be verified.

NOTE 1 A calculation model for extrusion resistance of reinforced embankments is give in F.4.

NOTE 2 Calculation models for embankments subject to punching shear are given in B.5.

4.5.4 Supporting elements

(1) In cases where a combined failure of supporting elements and the ground could occur, ground-structure interaction shall be considered allowing for the difference in strength and stiffness of the ground and that of the supporting element.

SC7 NOTE [#21]:
CR 0183
However text from
CR0182 applied according
to the decision

NOTE Cases include failure surfaces intersecting S-supporting elements include, but are not limited to such as walls, piles, anchors, props, discrete ground improvement, and reinforcement-reinforcing elements and walls.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (2) If supporting elements are used to increase overall stability, their structural resistance shall be verified for the combined effects of action from the ground and the structure for all relevant design situations.
- (3) Supporting elements used to improve overall or local stability, bearing resistance, or settlement performance shall be verified in accordance with clauses 6-10.

NOTE Actions in the supporting elements can include axial forces, shear forces or bending moments depending on the types of interaction between the ground and the supporting elements.

- (4) It shall be verified that the ~~design resistance of the supporting element equals or exceeds the design effect of actions~~ can resist a design force effect given by Formula (4.14.1) for Verification Case 1, 2, and 3 and given by Formula (4.2) for Verification Case 4:

$$E_d = \max(F_{d,ULS}; \gamma_F F_{d,SLS}) \quad (4.1)$$

$$E_d = \max(F_{d,ULS}; \gamma_E F_{d,SLS}) \quad (4.2)$$

where

$F_{d,ULS}$ is the design value of the action that the supporting element shall provide to prevent an ultimate limit state of the slope, cutting or embankment;

$F_{d,SLS}$ is the design value of the action that the supporting element shall provide to prevent a serviceability limit state of the slope, cutting or embankment;

γ_F is a partial factor applied to $F_{d,SLS}$ to convert it to an ultimate value. Its value is given in EN 1990, a SLS value into an ULS value (using DC4).

γ_E is a partial factor applied to $F_{d,SLS}$ to convert it to an ultimate value. Its value is given in EN 1990.

NOTE Formula (4.1) and (4.2) ensure that the supporting element can resist the largest force that could occur in it during the entire design life of the supported structure.

(5) The design value $F_{d,SLS}$ should include the effects of prestressing the supporting element.

4.5.5 Ground displacement and settlement of embankments

- (1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1 potential ground displacement due to the following causes should be considered:
- change of stresses in the ground due self-weight or application and removal of external actions;
 - change in groundwater conditions and corresponding groundwater pressures;
 - ongoing creep;
 - volume loss of soluble strata or due to internal erosion;
 - shrinkage and swelling of ground due to change in water content;
 - freeze and thaw effects; and
 - presence of cavities in the ground.
- (2) The following components of settlement should be considered for soils and fill beneath and within the embankment:
- immediate settlement;

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- settlement caused by consolidation; and
- settlement caused by creep.

NOTE Consolidation and creep can occur simultaneously, particularly in thick soil layers of low hydraulic conductivity.

- (3) Immediate settlement and settlement below an embankment during execution should be included in the calculation of total settlement if it affects the final structure or utilities.
- (4) Settlement within and below the embankment after execution due to external actions, self-weight, or delayed compaction effects should be included in the total settlement.

4.6 Ultimate limit states**4.6.1 Verification by the partial factor method**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.4 shall apply for slopes, cuttings, and embankments.

4.6.2 Verification by prescriptive rules

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.5 shall apply for slopes, cuttings, and embankments.

4.6.3 Verification by testing

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.6 shall apply for slopes, cuttings, and embankments.
- (1) Staged construction or trial embankments excavations or cuttings may be used to verify limit states.

4.6.4 Verification by the Observational Method

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.7 shall apply for slopes, cuttings, and embankments.

4.6.5 Partial factors

- (1) Partial factors for the verification of slopes, cuttings, and embankments at the ultimate limit states shall be determined according to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.4.1 using the Material Factor Approach.

NOTE 2 Values of the partial factors are given in [Table 4.2 \(NDP\)](#) for persistent and transient design situations and in [Table 4.3 \(NDP\)](#) for accidental design situations, unless the National Annex gives different values.

Table 4.2 — (NDP) Partial factors for the verification of ground resistance of slopes, cuttings, and embankments for fundamental (persistent and transient) design situations

Verification of	Partial factor on	Symbol	Material factor approach (MFA) ^a _{,b}
-----------------	-------------------	--------	---

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

Overall stability	Actions, and effects of actions	$\gamma_{F,L}$ and γ_E	VC3
	Ground properties ^c	γ_M	M2 ^b
Bearing resistance	see Clause 5		
<div>a Values of the partial factors for Verification Case 3, (VC3) are given in prEN 1990 :2021 Annex A.</div> <div>b Values of the partial factors for Sets M2 are given in prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.4.1.3.</div> <div>c Also includes ground properties of Class AI ground improvement (Clause 11)</div>			

SC7 NOTE [#23]:
CR0082 But for VC3
only actions is relevant

Table 4. — (NDP) Partial factors for the verification of ground resistance of slopes, cuttings, and embankments for accidental design situations

Verification of	Partial factor on	Symbol	Material factor approach (MFA) ^a
Overall stability	Actions and effects of actions	γ_F and γ_E	Not factored
	Ground properties ^b	γ_M	M2
Bearing resistance	see Clause 5		
^a — Values of the partial factors for Set M2 are given in prEN 1997-1:2022 Annex A.			
^b — Also includes ground properties of Class A1 ground improvement (Clause 11).			

SC7 NOTE [#24]: CR0136
Accidental design
situation treated in part 1.
Delete

4.7 Serviceability limit states

4.7.1 General

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 9 shall apply to slopes, cuttings, and embankments.
- (2) It shall be verified that deformation of the ground within the zone of influence of a slope, cutting, or embankment does not cause a serviceability limit state in nearby structures or civil engineering works.
- (3) Serviceability limit states for embankments shall be verified for deformations caused by freezing and thawing.

4.7.2 Displacement of slopes and cuttings

- (1) In accordance with prEN 1990:2021, 5.1(2), if there are no explicit serviceability criteria, then the verification of serviceability limit states of slopes may be omitted provided ultimate limit states are verified.

4.7.3 Settlement of embankments

- (1) It shall be verified that differential settlement caused by the variability of ground stiffness and thickness does not cause a serviceability limit state to be exceeded.
- (2) When verifying the settlement of an embankment, any decrease in effective stress in the ground should be considered.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**4.8 Implementation of design****4.8.1 General**

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10 shall apply to slopes, cuttings, and embankments.

NOTE For earthworks see EN 16907-3.

4.8.2 Inspection

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.3 shall apply to slopes, cuttings, and embankments.

(2) Quality control of earthworks should comply with EN 16907-5.

4.8.3 Monitoring**4.8.3.1 General**

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.4 shall apply to slopes, cuttings, and embankments.

(1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.4, a Monitoring Plan should be prepared for slopes, cuttings, and embankments in GC 2 and GC3 for the following situations:

- when existing slopes show permanently or repeatedly ongoing displacement;
- where the stability is sensitive to the groundwater pressure distribution in and beneath the embankment;
- when utilizing the stabilising effect from capillary action; and
- to measure effects on structures.

4.8.3.2 Monitoring of slopes and cuttings

(1) The Monitoring Plan for slopes and cuttings should include, but is not limited to, measurement of the following:

- horizontal and vertical ground displacements with time;
- groundwater levels or groundwater pressures with time as needed;
- location and geometrical properties of the sliding surface in a developed slide, to derive the ground strength parameters from back analysis for the design of remedial works; and
- displacement and visible damage of structures and infrastructures within the zone of influence.

4.8.3.3 Monitoring of embankments

(1) The Monitoring Plan for an embankment should include, but is not limited to, measurement of the following:

- groundwater pressure measurements during execution of embankments on fine soil and fill of high compressibility;
- settlement measurements for the whole or parts of the embankment, different soil layers, and nearby structures, roads, and services;
- measurements of horizontal displacements in the zone of influence;
- checks on strength and stiffness properties of fill during construction;
- chemical analyses before, during and after construction, if pollution control is required;
- if fine grained fill is used: groundwater pressure measurement within the body of the embankment during construction; and

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- checks on hydraulic conductivity or grain sized distribution of fill material and of foundation soil during construction.

(2) When an embankment on fine soil of low strength is raised in layers, to avoid potential limit states, groundwater pressures within the zone of influence should be monitored to ensure that they have dissipated to a sufficient degree to prevent a limit state being exceeded, before the next layer is placed.

4.8.4 Maintenance

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.5 shall apply to slopes, cuttings and embankments.

(2) The Maintenance Plan should include, but is not limited to, the following:

- inspection and maintenance measures of erosion and scour protection, drainage systems and filters;
- allowable dredging or excavation levels;
- procedures for canal or reservoir emptying;
- reconstruction or remedial measures of existing slopes after failure or extensive deformation;
- allowable loads and other restrictions during maintenance work.

4.9 Testing

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 11 shall apply to slopes, cuttings, and embankments.

~~NOTE — For earthworks see EN 16907-5.~~

4.10 Reporting

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 12 shall apply to slopes, cuttings, and embankments.

SC7 NOTE [#25]:
CR0046 Implementation of design, testing, reporting. Delete unnecessary note.

5 Spread foundations**5.1 Scope and field of application**

~~(1) This clause shall apply to spread foundations, including pad, strip, raft foundations, and unreinforced working platforms and load transfer platforms.~~

~~NOTE — Parts of this clause also apply to load transfer platforms over rigid inclusions (see Clause 11).~~

~~(1)(2)~~ This clause may be applied to deep foundations, including caissons, that behave as spread foundations.

SC7 NOTE [#26]:
CR0149 LTP over rigid inclusion

5.2 Basis of design**5.2.1 Design situations**

(1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2., design situations for spread foundations should include the effect of o:

- t soluble, expansive, and collapsible soils;
- the particular features of rock; and
- of scour.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**5.2.2 Geometrical properties**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.3 shall apply to spread foundations.
- (2) The width of a spread foundation should be chosen considering setting out tolerances, working space requirements, and the dimensions of the structural member supported by the foundation.
- (3) When choosing the embedment depth of a spread foundation, influences that could affect the resistance of the bearing stratum and the deformation behaviour of the foundation shall be considered.

NOTE Influences that can affect the resistance of the bearing stratum are given in B.3.

5.2.3 Zone of influence

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.2.1 shall apply to spread foundations.

5.2.4 Actions and environmental influences**5.2.4.1 General**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1 shall apply to spread foundations.

5.2.4.2 Permanent and variable actions

- (1) Actions for spread foundation shall include but are not limited:
 - imposed actions from the structure;
 - the self-weight of the foundation;
 - the weight of any backfill placed on the foundation;
 - favourable and unfavourable earth pressures acting on the foundation, where significant;
 - loading due to lateral or vertical ground displacements;
 - actions due to frost, including frost heave, thaw settlement, and thaw weakening of the ground;
 - actions due to the swelling in soils with high expansion potential;
 - actions due to the collapse of ground;
 - actions due to heating of the ground causing a reduction in the groundwater content and ground movements;
 - actions due to the swelling of desiccated ground by the restoration of groundwater;
 - actions due to seasonal drying and wetting cycles;
 - changes in geometrical and geotechnical properties during the structure's design service life due to anticipated nearby excavations for the replacement of pipes, cables, and drainage;
 - actions due to adjacent building; and
 - accidental actions.
- (2) The adverse effects of actions on a spread foundation due to planned construction of adjacent structures and nearby excavations should be considered.
- (3) Hazards due to changes in the volume of the ground shall be identified.

NOTE Examples of risks are active soils, swelling, shrinking and heave.

- (4) In grounds with high expansion potential, measures shall be taken to avoid swelling during execution of a spread foundation.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (5) Spread foundations should be designed to accommodate any potential volumetric changes in the ground caused by a change in water content.

NOTE For example, due to the presence or removal of nearby trees or other vegetation or the presence of expansive clays.

- (6) For raft and slabs foundation of larger extent, an analysis of the interaction between the supported structure and the ground should be performed to determine the distribution of actions on the spread foundation.

- (7) Actions on the foundation may be determined by an analysis of ground structure interaction based on an equivalent spring model of the ground.

NOTE Formula for ~~linear elastic~~ spring stiffnesses are given in B.15.

NOTE The stiffness of the springs is to be chosen depending on the stress and strain level. For dynamic actions, the springs' stiffness is frequency dependent.

SC7 NOTE [#27]:
CR0032 Editorial
changed clause 5

5.2.4.3 Cyclic and dynamic actions

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1.3 shall apply to spread foundations.

- (2) The design of foundations subjected to cyclic and dynamic loading should consider the following:

- occurrence of vibrations that can affect the structure, surrounding structures, people or sensitive machinery;
- ~~degradation~~ ~~decrease~~ of ground strength and potential liquefaction of foundation soil (leading to ultimate limit states being exceeded at loads below those expected from verifications based on static strength);
- changes in the ground hydraulic conductivity;
- large eccentricity leading to smaller effective foundation area and reduced bearing resistance;
- ~~degradation~~ ~~decrease~~ of ground stiffness, leading to an accumulation of permanent foundation displacement;
- damping of vibrations in the ground beneath the structure;
- amplification of loads or movements owing to resonance; and
- potential surface wave issues due to dynamic loading.

SC7 NOTE [#28]:
CR0032 Editorial
changed clause 5

SC7 NOTE [#29]:
CR0032 Editorial
changed clause 5

5.2.4.4 Environmental influences

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1.5 shall apply to spread foundations

- (2) Measures shall be taken to avoid frost impact on ground during execution.

- (3) Testing to determine the frost susceptibility of ground shall comply with prEN 1997-2:2022, 12.1.

- (4) Structural damage due to frost in frost susceptible ground may be prevented by adopting one or more of the following measures:

- setting the foundation level beneath the depth of frost penetration; or
- providing insulation to prevent frost.

- (5) Insulation to prevent frost should comply with EN ISO 13793.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (6) An alternative to EN ISO 13793 may be used, when specified by the relevant authority or, where not specified, agreed for the specific project by the relevant parties.
- (7) The potential of low temperatures due to ground freezing causing deformations of the foundation elements shall be considered in the presence of frost susceptible ground.

NOTE This particularly applies to thin raft foundations, including during execution.

- (8) The adverse effects of frost action caused by construction work or by ground freezing should be considered.
- (9) Measures shall be taken to avoid structural damage due to drying and wetting cycles of the ground caused by the change of climatic conditions during service life.
- (10) Measures shall be provided to prevent the adverse effects of potential scour leading to erosion of soil under and around a spread foundation.

5.2.5 Limit states**5.2.5.1 Ultimate limit states**

- (1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.1, the following ultimate limit states shall be verified for all spread foundations:
- bearing failure;
 - sliding failure;
 - rotational failure;
 - shear and tensile failure of possible ground-foundation reinforcement elements;
 - structural failure due to excessive foundation movement; and
 - excessive heave due to swelling, frost, or other causes.
- (2) Potential ultimate limit states other than those given in (1) should be verified.

5.2.5.2 Serviceability limit states

- (1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 9, the following serviceability limit states shall be verified for all spread foundations:
- settlement;
 - heave;
 - rotation and tilting; and
 - horizontal displacement.
- (2) Potential serviceability limit states other than those given in (1) should be verified.

5.2.6 Robustness

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.4 shall apply to spread foundations.

5.2.7 Ground investigation**5.2.7.1 General**

- (1) prEN 1997-2:2022, 5 shall apply to spread foundations.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

5.2.7.2 Minimum extent of field investigation

SC7 NOTE [#30]: CR0147
Systematic revision of all
clauses on minimum extent
of field investigation.

(1) The depth and horizontal extent of the field investigation shall be sufficient to determine the ground conditions within the zone of influence of the structure according to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2.1.1. In addition to EN1997-2 Clause 5.4.3, the depth of investigation for spread foundation shall be determined.

NOTE The minimum depth d_{min} of the ground investigation is given in Table 5.1 unless the National Annex gives another value.

Table 5.3 — (NDP) Minimum depth of field investigation for spread foundations

Application	Minimum depth	Illustration
Strip footing	$d_{min} = \max(3B; 6 \text{ m})$	
Single square or circle footing	$d_{min} = \max(3B; 6 \text{ m})$ For low rise buildings (< 4 storey), footings: $d_{min} = \max(2B; 3 \text{ m})$ where B = width of the footing For high rise buildings (≥ 4 storey), footings: $d_{min} = \max(3B, 6 \text{ m})$, where B = smallest width of the total foundation	
Raft	$d_{min} = \max(3B; 6 \text{ m})$	

B is the smaller side length (width) of the foundation or footing (on plan).

(1)

(2) For low-rise structures in Geotechnical Category 1, the minimum depth of investigation below the planned base of an isolated spread foundation should be $d_{min} = 2 \text{ m}$.

(3) For low-rise structures in Geotechnical Category 2, the minimum depth of investigation below the planned base of an isolated spread foundation d_{min} should comply with Formula (5.1):

$$d_{min} \geq \max(3b_f; 3 \text{ m}) \quad (5.1)$$

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

where

b_F is the smaller side length of the foundation (on plan) shown in Figure 5.1a.

(4) For high-rise structures, the minimum depth of investigation below the planned base of a spread foundation d_{min} should comply with Formula (5.2):

$$d_{min} \geq \max(3b_B; 6m) \quad (5.2)$$

where

b_B is the smaller side length of the foundation (on plan) shown in Figure 5.1b.

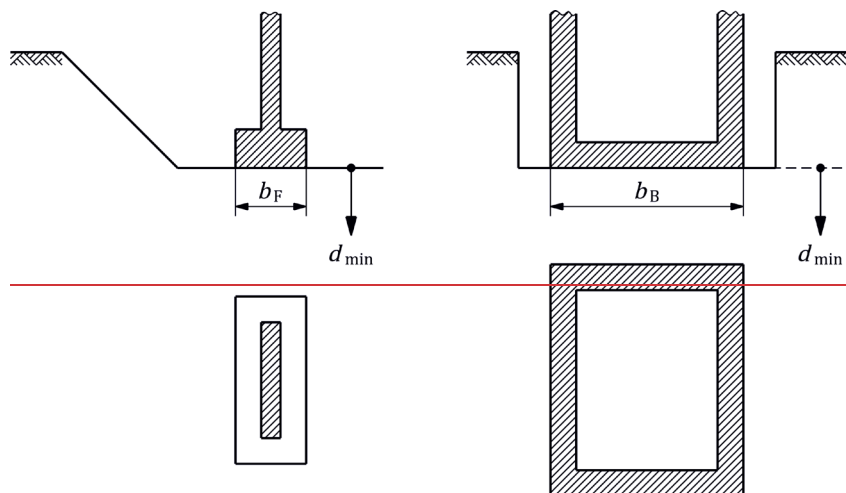
(5) For raft foundations and structures with several foundation elements whose effects in deeper strata are superimposed on each other, the minimum depth of investigation (d_{min}) below the planned base of the foundation should be determined based on the expected zone of influence unless a ground layer of high bearing resistance and sufficient thickness is identified at a shallower depth.

NOTE — Minimum depth of investigation is defined in Figure 5.1.

(6) The minimum depth of investigation may be reduced in medium strong rock masses and stiff rock mass, moraine and strongly over-consolidated clays provided there is comparable experience to allow the properties of the ground to be predicted up to the depth given by Formula (5.1) and Formula (5.2).

(7) Greater investigation depths should be selected when:

- unfavourable geotechnical conditions, including potential weak or compressible layers below layers with higher bearing resistance or discontinuities;
- unstable ground or groundwater conditions are anticipated; and
- the project involves raising or lowering the ground level.



A

B

Key

A foundation

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

B structure

Figure 5.1 — Definition of d_{min} for spread foundations**SC7 NOTE [#31]:**
CR0032 Editorial
changed clause 5
In Figure bF shall be
changed to bA and**5.2.8 Geotechnical reliability**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.2 shall apply to spread foundations.

5.3 Materials**5.3.1 Ground properties**

- (1) prEN 1997-2:2022, clause 7 to 12 shall apply to spread foundations.

NOTE For engineered fills see prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.2.

- (1) Spread foundations may be verified using effective or total stress properties depending on the ~~permeability~~ hydraulic conductivity of the ground, potential failure mechanisms, and the rate and duration of loading.

5.3.2 Plain and reinforced concrete

- ~~(1)~~ prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.5 shall apply to spread foundations.

- ~~(2)~~ Exposure classes for concrete shall comply with EN 206

- ~~(1)(3)~~ Concrete cover requirements shall comply with EN 1992-1-1.

SC7 NOTE [#32]:
CR0157**5.4 Groundwater****5.4.1 General**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 6 shall apply to spread foundations.
- (2) Groundwater levels and pressures (including potential changes in them) that could affect the bearing resistance, sliding resistance, stability against uplift and loss of equilibrium, and settlement shall be considered in the verification of limit states.

- ~~(3) Increased groundwater levels and pressures owing to burst pipes and other failures of engineered systems involving water around a foundation may be classified as accidental actions.~~

- ~~(4) Surface water, groundwater and piezometric levels shall comply with prEN 1997-1:2022, 6.2, and prEN 1997-2:2022, 11.1.~~

SC7 NOTE [#33]:
CR0163

- ~~(5)(3)~~ Where the groundwater level is close to the foundation level, the effects of capillary rise causing deterioration of foundation materials should be considered.

NOTE Capillary rise can be avoided by including waterproofing membranes or a capillary break soil layer.

5.4.2 Groundwater control systems

- (1) Clause 12 shall apply to spread foundations.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (2) If ponding of water above a spread foundation reduces its robustness against the occurrence of a limit state below an acceptable level, drainage systems should be provided to remove the surface water or structural measures implemented to prevent ponding.
- (3) Where the safety and serviceability of a spread foundation depend on the successful performance of a groundwater control system, one or more of the following measures should be taken:
- a Maintenance Plan should be specified (see prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.5);
 - a groundwater control system should be specified that perform according to the specifications without maintenance; and
 - a secondary (“backup”) system should be specified that prevent any potential leakage from entering the ground beneath or next to the structure.

NOTE An example of a secondary system is a pipe or channel that encloses the primary system.

5.5 Geotechnical analysis**5.5.1 General**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 7 shall apply to spread foundations.
- (2) When verifying a spread foundation against ultimate or serviceability limit states, the effect of adjacent foundations on the loading, resistance and movement of the foundation should be considered.
- (3) In addition to (2), the effect of the spread foundation on nearby foundations, structures, and services should be considered.
- (4) The calculation models given in 5.5.2.1 and ~~0.1.1.15.5.2.2~~ may be used to verify limit states for spread foundations on soil or fill.

NOTE Guidance on calculation models is given in B.4 to B.12.

- (5) The calculation models given in 5.5.2.3 may be used to verify limit states for spread foundations on rock.
- (6) Calculation models used to verify the bearing resistance of a spread foundation should account for the following:
- the failure mechanism (general shear, local shear, punching shear, or squeezing failure);
 - the strength of the ground;
 - the variability of the ground, especially layering;
 - discontinuities and weakness zones in a rock mass or in hard soils;
 - the shape, depth, and inclination of the foundation;
 - groundwater pressures;
 - the inclination of the ground surface;
 - the eccentricity and inclination of the loads; and
 - the presence of cyclic or dynamic loads.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

5.5.2 Bearing resistance

5.5.2.1 Bearing resistance from soil and fill parameters

- (1) Provided that the undrained strength of the ground is assumed constant within the zone of influence, the undrained bearing resistance (R_{Nu}) of a spread foundation on soil or fill to a force acting normal to the base may be determined using total stress analysis from Formula (5.1):

$$R_{Nu} = A' (c_u N_{cu} b_{cu} d_{cu} g_{cu} i_{cu} s_{cu} + q_o) \quad (5.1)$$

where

- A' is the effective plan area of the foundation, see (3) and (4);
 c_u is the soils undrained shear strength;
 N_{cu} is a non-dimensional bearing resistance factor for undrained conditions, see B.4;
 q_o is the overburden pressure applied to the ground outside the foundation;
 b_{cu} , d_{cu} , g_{cu} , i_{cu} and s_{cu} are non-dimensional factors to account for the effects of base inclination, embedment depth and resistance above the base of the foundation, ground surface inclination, load inclination, and foundation shape.

NOTE 1 Formula for N_{cu} , b_{cu} , d_{cu} , g_{cu} , i_{cu} , s_{cu} , and $N_{\gamma u}$ are given in Annex B.4(1) and (3).

NOTE 2 When the ground surface slopes downwards away from the foundation, it is possible to add a third term ($0.5 \gamma B' N_{\gamma u}$) in Formula (5.1), being γ the weight density of the ground below the base of the foundation; B' the effective foundation width shown in Figure 5.1; and $N_{\gamma u}$ a non-dimensional bearing resistance factor for the influence of the ground's weight density with negative value in this case.

- (2) The effective plan area of a rectangular foundation (A) in Formula (5.1) should be determined from Formula (5.2), assuming an uniform stress distribution:

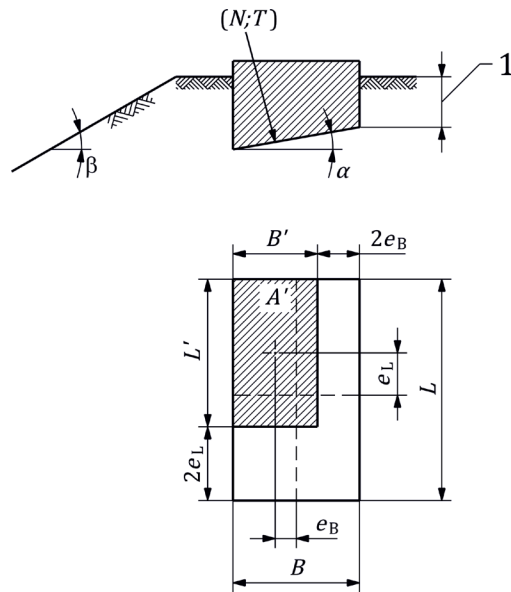
$$A' = B' \times L' = (B - 2e_B)(L - 2e_L) \quad (5.2)$$

where

- B' is the effective foundation width;
 L' is the effective foundation length;
 B is the actual foundation width;
 L is the actual foundation length;
 e_B is the eccentricity of the applied load in the direction of B ;
 e_L is the eccentricity of the applied load in the direction of L .

NOTE The notation used in Formula (5.2) is illustrated in Figure 5.1.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)



Key

- 1 Embankment/Foundation depth
- N Component of the total action acting normal to the foundation base
- T Component of the total action acting transverse (parallel) to the foundation base
- α Angle of foundation base
- B Actual foundation width
- B' Effective foundation width
- L Actual foundation length
- L' Effective foundation length
- A' Effective plan area of a rectangular foundation
- e_B Eccentricity of the applied load in the direction of B
- e_L Eccentricity of the applied load in the direction of L
- β Sloping down angle of the ground [to be ad usted in the igure]

SC7 NOTE [#34]:
CR0190

Figure 5.1 — Notation for a rectangular spread foundation with an inclined base and eccentric load

- (3) The effective plan area (A') of a circular foundation for use in Formula (5.1) should be determined from Formulae (5.3) and (5.4):

$$A' = B'_{eq} \times L'_{eq} = \frac{D^2}{2} \left(\cos^{-1} \left(\frac{2e}{D} \right) - \frac{2e}{D} \sqrt{1 - \left(\frac{2e}{D} \right)^2} \right) \quad (5.3)$$

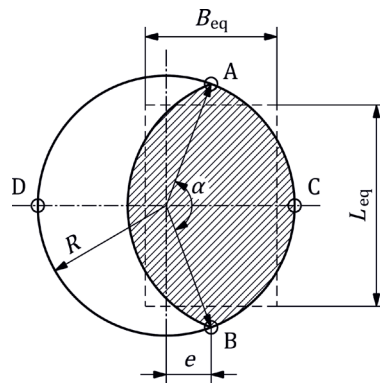
$$\frac{B'_{eq}}{L'_{eq}} = \sqrt{\frac{D - 2e}{D + 2e}} \quad (5.4)$$

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

where

- B'_{eq} is the effective width of the equivalent rectangular foundation area;
- L'_{eq} is the effective length of the equivalent rectangular foundation area;
- D is the diameter of the circular foundation;
- e is the eccentricity of the applied action.

NOTE The notation used in Formulae (5.3) and (5.4) is illustrated in Figure 5.2.



Key

- B_{eq} effective width of the equivalent rectangular foundation area
- L_{eq} effective length of the equivalent rectangular foundation area
- e eccentricity of the applied action
- α
- R radius of the circular foundation
- A, B, C, D

Figure 5.2 — Notation for a circular spread foundation with an inclined base and eccentric load

(4) The drained bearing resistance (R_N) of a spread foundation on soil or fill to a force acting normal to the base may be determined using effective stress analysis from Formula (5.5):

$$R_N = A' (c' N_c b_c d_c g_c i_c s_c + q' N_q b_q d_q g_q i_q s_q + 0.5 \gamma' B' N_\gamma b_\gamma d_\gamma g_\gamma i_\gamma s_\gamma) \quad (5.5)$$

where:

- A' is the effective plan area of the foundation;
- B' is the effective foundation width shown in Figure 5.1;
- c' is the soil effective cohesion;
- q' is the effective overburden pressure in ground outside the foundation base at the level of the base;
- γ' is the buoyant weight density of the ground beneath the foundation;
- N_c, N_q, N_γ are non-dimensional bearing resistance factors;
- b_c, b_q, b_γ are non-dimensional factors accounting for base inclination;

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

d_c, d_q, d_γ are non-dimensional factors accounting for the depth of foundation embedment;

g_c, g_q, g_γ are non-dimensional factors accounting for ground surface inclination;

i_c, i_q, i_γ are non-dimensional factors accounting for load inclination;

s_c, s_q, s_γ are non-dimensional factors accounting for foundation base shape.

NOTE 1 Formulae for N_c, N_q , etc. are provided in B.4(4) and B.4(6).

NOTE 2 Guidance is given in B.4(7) to account for the effect of groundwater level on groundwater pressure and buoyant weight density.

(5) Formula (5.5) should only be used in uniform soil or fill or in layered ground where the shear strength properties do not differ by more than 5 % between the layers in the zone of influence for bearing resistance failure.

(6) When calculating the bearing resistance of a foundation on layered ground in which shear strength properties differ by more than 5 % between layers, weighted average values of soil or fill parameters within the ~~zone of influence of the foundation~~ depth of the failure zone may be used.

NOTE In layered grounds the rupture mechanism can differ from those implied by the adoption of Formula (5.5).

SC7 NOTE [#35]:
CR0074
Clarified that it is the failure zone

(7) The q term in Formula (5.1) and Formula (5.5) shall be reduced if overburden is potentially removed during the design service life of the foundation.

(8) A value of $d_{cu} > 1.0$ in Formula (5.1) or $d_c > 1.0$ in Formula (5.5) should only be used when the strength of soil or fill above the foundation depth D is equal to or greater than the strength of the soil at foundation level; otherwise $d_{cu} = 1$ or $d_c = 1$.

(9) Where soil or fill beneath a spread foundation has a definite structural pattern of layering or other discontinuities, the assumed rupture mechanism and the selected shear strength and deformation parameters shall consider the characteristics of the layering and discontinuities.

(10) Where a weaker geotechnical unit underlies a stronger unit, including a granular layer forming a working platform foundation, the rupture mechanisms that should be considered depend on the relative thickness of the stronger layer to the foundation width and should include:

- bearing resistance failure in the upper geotechnical unit;
- punching failure through the upper unit and bearing resistance failure in the lower unit; and
- squeezing or extrusion failure in the lower unit.

NOTE Calculation models for punching failure of a spread foundation on a stronger geotechnical unit over a weaker unit are given in B.5.

(11) Soil reinforcement may be placed on a weak geotechnical unit under a spread foundation supporting an inclined force, or under a stronger unit supporting a working platform, to resist the horizontal component of the force.

(12) When soil reinforcement is used to improve the stability of a spread foundation close to sloping ground, verification of overall stability shall comply with Clause 4.

(13) When analytical models cannot accommodate or do not adequately represent the design situations described in (11) and (12), numerical models should be used instead to determine the most unfavourable failure mechanism (see prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.2).

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

~~5.5.2.20.1.1.1 Bearing resistance and settlement from empirical models~~~~(1) An empirical calculation model may be used to verify bearing resistance of spread foundations, provided there is comparable experience of its successful use.~~~~(2)(1) The bearing resistance and settlement of a spread foundation on soil may be determined from the results of field investigations and calculation models.~~~~NOTE Empirical calculation models for the bearing resistance and settlement of a spread foundation are given in Annex B.~~~~5.5.2.35.5.2.2 Bearing resistance of rock mass~~~~(1) The bearing resistance of a spread foundations on a discontinuous rock mass that behaves as a discontinuous medium shall be calculated using the shear strength along discontinuities, determined in accordance with prEN 1997-2:2022, 8.1.5.~~~~NOTE Mechanisms for bearing resistance of a spread foundation on discontinuous rock can include planar sliding, wedge sliding and toppling.~~~~(2) The bearing resistance of a spread foundation on a rock mass that behaves as an equivalent continuous medium shall be calculated using the shear strength determined in accordance with prEN 1997-2:2022, 8.1.4.~~~~NOTE A calculation model including the use of wedge equilibrium is presented in Annex B.15.~~~~5.5.2.3 Bearing resistance and settlement from empirical models~~~~(1) An empirical calculation model may be used to verify bearing resistance of spread foundations, provided there is comparable experience of its successful use.~~~~(2) The bearing resistance and settlement of a spread foundation on soil may be determined from the results of field investigations and calculation models.~~~~NOTE Empirical calculation models for the bearing resistance and settlement of a spread foundation are given in Annex B.6.~~~~5.5.2.40.1.1.1 Bearing pressures for structural analysis~~~~(1) The bearing pressure beneath a rigid foundation may be assumed to be distributed linearly when determining bending moments and shear forces in the structural member.~~~~(2)(1) The distribution of bearing pressure beneath a flexible foundation shall consider the stiffness of the foundation and the supported structure.~~~~(3)(1) The distribution of bearing pressure beneath a flexible foundation may be derived by modelling the foundation as a beam or raft resting on a deforming continuum or series of springs, with appropriate stiffness and strength, to determine the bending moments and shear forces.~~~~NOTE 1 Formulae for the relative stiffness of a spread foundation on elastic ground and for subgrade modulus are provided in B.14.~~

SC7 NOTE [#36]:
CR0040 Bearing resistance of Rock mass
Add text in accordance with CR. However, the original text in CR is not identical to the CCMC version. (1) is not in the CCMC version.

SC7 NOTE [#37] CR0106
Similar proposal, therefore wording from CR0040 were kept. The note were rephrased.

SC7 NOTE [#38]:
CR0193

SC7 NOTE [#39]:
CR0105
Moved and only describe ULS. SLS already covered by 5.5.4

SC7 NOTE [#40]:
CR0107 Move to 5.5.6

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

~~NOTE 2 — A method for determining whether a foundation is rigid or flexible on the basis of the relative stiffness value is given in B.14.~~

~~NOTE 3 — For spread foundations, calculations based on uniform spring stiffness do not provide realistic estimations of deformations due to edge effects.~~

5.5.3 Sliding resistance

- (1) The resistance of a spread foundation to sliding may be determined as the sum of the resistance to sliding on its base plus any resistance to sliding caused by earth pressure on the face of the foundation.
- (2) The resistance from earth pressure on the face of the foundation $R_{T,face}$ shall be determined considering the deformation compatibility with the sliding resistances.
- (3) Where a spread foundation is constructed on a lean concrete blinding layer or includes a waterproof membrane, failure occurring along a plane weaker than that between the foundation base and the underlying ground shall be considered.
- (4) The undrained sliding resistance along the base of a spread foundation ($R_{Tu,base}$) on soil or fill may be determined using total stress analyses from Formula (5.6):

$$R_{Tu,base} = A_{red} k_{cu} c_u \quad (5.6)$$

where

A_{red} is the plan area of the foundation base, not including any area where there is no positive contact pressure between the foundation and the underlying ground as a result of load eccentricity, ground shrinkage, or any other cause;

k_{cu} is a reduction factor depending on the foundation material, execution method, and soil or fill disturbance;

c_u is the soil undrained shear strength.

- (5) For spread foundations made of concrete cast directly against soil or fill, the value of k_{cu} should be taken as 1.0 if the base is rough or ridged; or as 2/3 if the base is smooth.
- (6) For spread foundations made of pre-cast concrete, the value of k_{cu} should be taken as 2/3.
- (7) The drained sliding resistance along the base of a spread foundation ($R_{T,base}$) on soil or fill may be determined using effective stress analysis from Formula (5.7):

$$R_{T,base} = (N - U) \tan \delta \quad (5.7)$$

where

N is the normal component of the resulting force acting on the foundation base;

U is the uplift force due to groundwater pressures on the foundation base;

$\tan \delta$ is the coefficient of friction between the foundation and the ground.

- (8) The value of the soil structure interface coefficient of friction ($\tan \delta$) shall comply with Formula (5.8):

SC7 NOTE [#41]:
CR0190

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

$$\tan \delta \leq k_{\tan \delta} \tan \varphi' \quad (5.8)$$

where

$\tan \varphi'$ is the value of the soil coefficient of effective friction;

$k_{\tan \delta}$ is a reduction factor depending on the foundation material and execution method.

- (9) For spread foundations made of concrete cast directly against soil or fill, the value of $k_{\tan \delta}$ should be taken as 1.0 if the base is rough or ridged; or as 2/3 if the base is smooth.
- (10) For spread foundations made of pre-cast concrete, the value of $k_{\tan \delta}$ should be taken as 2/3.
- (11) When verifying the sliding resistance of a spread foundation, the representative angle of friction of soil or fill should consider potential disturbance of the soil or fill beneath the foundation.
- (12) When designing a spread foundation against sliding using the Mohr-Coulomb model, the value of effective cohesion c' at the base of the foundation should be taken as zero.
- (13) The value of the sliding resistance of a spread foundation on its front face ($R_{T,face}$) should be determined considering of the nature of the ground including any backfill within the horizontal zone of influence.

5.5.4 Settlement

- (1) The following components shall be considered when calculating the settlement of spread foundations:
- immediate settlement;
 - settlement caused by consolidation;
 - settlement caused by creep; and
 - settlement caused by cyclic and dynamic actions.

NOTE 1 Calculation models for settlements of spread foundations are given in B7 to B13 for situations where comparable experience exists.

NOTE 2 Consolidation and creep can occur simultaneously, particularly in thick layers of soil of low permeability.

NOTE 3 Settlement by consolidation typically occurs in fine soils with a high degree of saturation.

NOTE 4 Cyclic actions can generate settlements due to strain and excess ground water pressure accumulation.

- (2) The settlement of a foundation on rock may be determined on the basis of comparable experience related to rock mass classification.
- (3) The settlement of a spread foundation may be determined using soil and fill parameters, provided the calculation model used is appropriate for the type of ground and is based on comparable experience.

NOTE Information regarding the use of calculation models for settlement is provided in B.7 to B11.

- (4) The depth of the compressible soil layer to be considered when calculating settlement should depend on the load, the size and shape of the foundation, the variation in soil stiffness with depth and the spacing of foundation elements.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (5) The following factors potentially causing additional settlement to the ones due to loading should be considered:
- the effect of a change in the effective stress due to reduction in the groundwater pressure;
 - the effect of self-weight compaction of the soil;
 - the effects of self-weight, flooding and vibration on fill and collapsible soils; and
 - the effects of stress changes on crushable coarse soil.
- (6) The settlement of spread foundations should be determined assuming a distribution of bearing pressures resulting from the ground-foundation interaction.
- (7) Allowance should be made for differential settlement caused by variability of the ground unless it is prevented by the stiffness of the structure.
- (8) The tilting of an eccentrically loaded foundation, which is of limited size and hence assumed to be rigid, may be determined by assuming a linear bearing pressure distribution and then calculating the settlement at the corner points of the foundation, using the vertical stress distribution in the ground beneath each corner point and the settlement calculation models described above.

NOTE Differential settlement calculations that ignore the stiffness of the structure tend to be over-predictions.

5.5.5 Heave

- (1) Verification of serviceability limit state shall allow for heave caused by the following potential mechanisms:
- reduction of effective stress;
 - volume expansion of partly saturated soil;
 - death or removal of vegetation;
 - seasonal changes of the water content;
 - increase in groundwater as a result of water leaking from damaged pipes;
 - constant volume deformations in fully saturated soil, caused by settlement of an adjacent structure; and
 - chemical reactions in the ground.

NOTE An example of a chemical reaction in the ground causing heave is the transformation of anhydrite (anhydrous calcium sulphate) to gypsum.

- (2) Calculations of heave shall include both immediate and delayed heave.

5.5.6 Bearing pressures for structural analysis

- (1) The bearing pressure beneath a rigid foundation may be assumed to be distributed linearly when determining bending moments and shear forces in the structural member.
- (2) The distribution of bearing pressure beneath a flexible foundation shall consider the stiffness of the foundation and the supported structure.
- (3) The distribution of bearing pressure beneath a flexible foundation may be derived by modelling the foundation as a beam or raft resting on a deforming continuum or series of springs, with appropriate stiffness and strength, to determine the bending moments and shear forces.

NOTE 1 Formulae for the relative stiffness of a spread foundation on elastic ground and for subgrade modulus are provided in B.14.

SC7 NOTE [#42]:
CR0107 Move from
5.5.2.4 to 5.5.6

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

NOTE 2 A method for determining whether a foundation is rigid or flexible on the basis of the relative stiffness value is given in B.14.

NOTE 3 For spread foundations, calculations based on uniform spring stiffness do not provide realistic estimations of deformations due to edge effects.

~~5.5.6~~

5.6 Ultimate limit states

5.6.1 General

- (1) The ultimate limit states of a spread foundation involving overall stability, bearing, and sliding failure shall be verified using Formula (8.1) of prEN 1990:2021.
- (2) The design resistance of ~~soil and fill ground~~ beneath a spread foundation shall be verified ~~for drained and undrained conditions (or a combination of both), depending on the prevailing~~ using the ~~appropriate~~ drainage conditions.

SC7 NOTE [#43]:
CR0034
resistance
Bearing
Revised
wording

5.6.2 Verification by the partial factor method

5.6.2.1 Overall stability

- (1) It shall be verified, in accordance with Clause 4, that a spread foundation does not exceed an ultimate limit state of overall stability.

NOTE This is particularly relevant when the spread foundation is within the zone of influence of sloping ground; excavations or cuttings; rivers, canals, lakes, reservoirs, or the seashore; mine workings or buried structures; other significant changes in the ground surface profile.

5.6.2.2 Bearing failure and overturning

- (1) The design bearing resistance normal to the base of a spread foundation R_{Nd} shall be verified using Formula (5.9):

$$N_d \leq R_{Nd} \quad (5.9)$$

where

N_d is the design value of the normal component of the resulting force on the foundation base;

R_{Nd} is the design value of the bearing resistance

NOTE The value of the partial factors for Formula (5.9) are given in Table 5.2 (NDP for persistent and transient design situations, and Table 5.3 (NDP), for accidental design situations, unless the National Annex gives a different value.

- (2) The design bearing resistance of a spread foundation subject to a horizontal force should be verified using two separate combinations of actions: one treating the vertical force as a favourable action and the other as an unfavourable action.
- (3) Overturning ~~of a spread foundation on soil or fill, subject to combined n vertical and horizontal forces (including gravity walls, a reinforced fill structures, and or soil nailed structures, subject to a combination of vertical and horizontal forces leading to an eccentric resultant loading in the foundation base)~~ shall be verified for bearing failure according to (1).

SC7 NOTE [#44]: CR0108
Multiple changes in this
sub-clause made based on
CR0108

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

~~(4)~~ The reduction of the plan area A of a foundation subject to eccentric loads to the effective plan area A' should be limited such that any potential foundation rotation does not result in the occurrence of a limit state to the foundation or overlying structure

NOTE The effective plan area A' for circular or rectangular foundations may be calculated according to 5.5.2.1 (4) or (5), respectively.

~~(4)(5)~~ The design eccentricity of the load acting on a spread foundation should be determined using design actions.

NOTE 1 The design eccentricity is calculated using the partial factors given in 5.6.6.

NOTE 2 Limit values for design eccentricities in ULS verification can be specified in the National Annex.

NOTE 2 When calculated using partial factors on actions from Verification Case VC1, the design eccentricity of loading e_d is limited to the values given in Table 5.1, unless the National Annex gives different values.

Table 5.1 — (NDP) Limits to the design load eccentricity in the case of ULS design

Strip foundation	Circular foundation	Rectangular foundation
$e_d \leq \left(\frac{7}{15}\right) B$	$e_d \leq \left(\frac{37}{80}\right) D$	$\left(1 - 2 \frac{e_{B,d}}{B}\right) \left(1 - 2 \frac{e_{L,d}}{L}\right) \geq \frac{1}{15}$

~~(5)(6)~~ The following precautions shall be taken where the eccentricity of loading exceeds 1/3 of the width of a rectangular foundation or 0.3 times the diameter of a circular foundation:

- careful review of the design values of the actions; and
- designing the location of the foundation edge by considering the magnitude of construction tolerances.

NOTE The bearing resistance procedure described in 5.5.2 is not always applicable in case of large eccentricity. For example, numerical methods are suitable options in this case.

~~(6)(7)~~ Unless specific measures or different tolerances are specified to control the dimensions of a cast-in-place concrete foundation where the eccentricity of the loading exceeds 1/3 of the foundation width or 0.3 times the diameter of a circular foundation, the design width of the foundation B_d should be determined from Formula (5.10):

$$B_d = B_{\text{nom}} - \Delta B \quad (5.10)$$

where

B_{nom} is the nominal width of the foundation;

ΔB is a deviation.

NOTE The value of ΔB is 0,1 m, unless the National Annex gives a different value.

5.6.2.3 Sliding failure

(1) Where the applied force is not normal to the foundation base, the foundation shall be verified against sliding failure.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (2) The design sliding resistance along the base of a spread foundation shall comply with Formula (5.115.13):

$$T_d \leq R_{Td,base} + R_{Td,face} \quad (5.11)$$

where:

- T_d is the design value of the applied force acting parallel to the foundation base, including any thrust caused by earth pressure acting on the foundation;
- $R_{Td,base}$ is the design value of the resistance of the foundation base to sliding;
- $R_{Td,face}$ is the design value of the resistance force to sliding caused by earth pressure on the front face of the foundation, i.e. the design face resistance.

- (3) Thrust caused by earth pressure acting on the foundation (included in T_d in Formula (5.11)) and $R_{Td,face}$ shall be determined according to clause 7.
- (4) The values T_d , $R_{Td,base}$, and $R_{Td,face}$ shall be related to the scale of movement anticipated under the limit state design loading.

NOTE The displacements required to mobilize shear resistance at the base of the foundation are much lower than the displacements required to mobilize earth pressures on the foundation front face.

- (5) The value of $R_{Td,face}$ should allow for potential loss of ground strength caused by large displacements.
- (6) For spread foundations on fine soils resting within the zone of seasonal changes of the water content, the possibility that the soil could shrink away from the vertical faces of foundations resulting in face resistance not being available shall be considered.
- (7) The possibility that face resistance cannot be available as a result of the soil in front of the foundation being removed by erosion or human activity shall be considered.
- (8) When using the material factor approach, the design undrained sliding resistance $R_{Tud,base}$ of a spread foundation on soil or fill shall be determined using Formula (5.12):

$$R_{Tud} = A_{red} k_{cu} c_{u,d} = A_{red} k_{cu} \frac{c_{u,rep}}{\gamma_{cu}} \quad (5.12)$$

where

- A_{red} is the plan area of the foundation base, not including any area where there is no positive contact pressure between the foundation and the underlying ground as a result of load eccentricity, ground shrinkage, or any other cause;
- k_{cu} is a reduction factor depending on the foundation material, execution method, and soil or fill disturbance;
- $c_{u,d}$ is the design value of the soil or fill undrained shear strength;
- $c_{u,rep}$ is the representative value of the soil or fill undrained shear strength;
- γ_{cu} is a partial factor on undrained shear strength.

NOTE Values for the reduction factor k_{cu} are specified in 5.5.3 (5) and (6).

- (9) When using the resistance factor approach, the design undrained sliding resistance $R_{Tud,base}$ of a spread foundation shall be determined using Formula (5.13):

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

$$R_{Tud,base} = \frac{A_{red} k_{cu} c_{u,rep}}{\gamma_{RT}} \quad (5.13)$$

where, in addition to the parameters defined for Formula (5.12):

γ_{RT} is the partial factor on sliding resistance

(10) In addition to (9) the design sliding resistance $R_{Tud,base}$ shall comply with Formula (5.14) if:

- it is possible for water or air to reach the interface between the foundation and the surrounding soil or fill; or
- the formation of a gap between the foundation and the surrounding soil or fill is not prevented by suction in areas where there is no positive bearing pressure.

$$R_{Tud} \leq 0.4 N_{rep,fav} \quad (5.14)$$

where

$N_{rep,fav}$ is the design value of the force acting normal to the foundation base, considered as a favourable action

(11) When using the material factor approach, the design drained sliding resistance R_{Td} in of a spread foundation on ground shall be determined from Formula (5.15):

$$R_{Td} = (N_{G,d,fav} - U_d) \tan \delta_d \quad (5.15)$$

where:

$N_{G,d,fav}$ is the design value of the permanent force acting normal to the foundation base, considered as a favourable action;

U_d is the design value of any uplift force from groundwater pressures acting normal to the foundation base;

$\tan \delta_d$ is the design value of interface friction between the foundation and the ground.

NOTE 1 Design values of groundwater pressures are specified in prEN 1997-1:2022, 6.

NOTE 2 Values of partial factors $\gamma_{tan\delta}$ are given in prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.4.1.3.

(12) When using the resistance factor approach, the design drained sliding resistance $R_{Td,base}$ of a spread foundation on ground shall be determined using Formula (5.16) for VC1 or Formula (5.17) for VC4:

$$R_{Td} = \frac{(N_{G,d,fav} - U_d) \tan \delta_{rep}}{\gamma_{RT}} \quad (5.16)$$

$$R_{Td} = \frac{(N_{G,rep,fav} - U_{rep}) \tan \delta_{rep}}{\gamma_{RT}} \quad (5.17)$$

where:

$N_{G,d,fav}$ is the design value of the favourable permanent force acting normal to the foundation base;

$N_{G,rep,fav}$ is the representative value of the favourable permanent force acting normal to the foundation base;

SC7 NOTE [#45]:
CR0190

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- U_d is the design value of any uplift force from groundwater pressures normal to the foundation base;
- U_{rep} is the representative value of the any uplift force from groundwater pressures normal to the foundation base;
- δ_{rep} is the representative value of interface friction between the foundation and the ground;
- γ_{RT} is a partial factor on sliding resistance.

NOTE 1 Representative values of groundwater pressures are specified in prEN 1997-1:2022, 6.

NOTE 2 Values of partial factors γ_{RT} are given in 5.6.6.

~~(13)~~ The determination of $N_{G,d,fav}$ and $N_{G,rep,fav}$, shall consider whether T and N are independent or interdependent actions.

~~(14)~~ When a foundation is subject to an inclined variable force Q_d from a single source, the term $N_{G,d,fav}$ in Formula (5.18) may be replaced by $N_{G,d,fav} + N_{Qd}$, where N_{Qd} is the design value of the vertical component of the applied variable force.

~~(13)~~(15) When a foundation is subject to an inclined variable force Q_{rep} from a single source, the term $N_{G,rep,fav}$ in Formula (5.19) may be replaced by $N_{G,rep,fav} + N_{Qrep}$, where N_{Qrep} is the representative value of the vertical component of the applied variable force.

SC7 NOTE [#46]: CR0035
Bearing resistance
Permission to include
variable load from a single
source

5.6.2.4 Toppling

- (1) The stability against toppling of a spread foundation shall be verified in accordance with prEN 1990.

NOTE Toppling is rotational failure that does not involve failure of the ground.

5.6.3 Verification by prescriptive rules

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.5 shall apply to spread foundations

NOTE Guidance on the use of the presumed bearing pressures can be given in the National Annexes

5.6.4 Verification by testing

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.6 shall apply to spread foundations
- (2) The results of large-scale tests may be used to verify limit states for a spread foundation directly.
- (3) The location of the test shall be chosen in accordance with the ground investigation results to be representative of the most unfavourable ground conditions likely to be found under the structure.
- (4) When evaluating the results of large-scale foundation tests to verify limit states, any excess groundwater pressures beneath the foundation shall be measured and considered.
- (5) When using a test to verify limit states for a spread foundation, any differences in scale and response between the test foundation and the real foundation shall be considered, including the adverse influence of weak layers within the zone of influence of the test or real foundation.

5.6.5 Verification by the Observational Method

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.7 shall apply to spread foundations

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**5.6.6 Partial factors**

(1) Partial factors for the verification of spread foundations at the ultimate limit state shall be determined according to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.4.1, using either the Material Factor Approach or the Resistance Factor Approach.

NOTE 1 The National Annex can specify which Factor Approach to use.

NOTE 2 Values of partial factors are given in Table 5.1 (NDP) for persistent and transient design situations, and , for accidental design situations, unless the National Annex gives different values.

NOTE 3 If the Material Factor Approach is used, the National Annex can specify whether to use both combinations (a) and (b) or the single combination (c) in Table 5.1 (NDP) and Table 5.3 (NDP).

Table 5.1 — (NDP) Partial factors for the verification of ground resistance of spread foundations for fundamental (persistent and transient) design situations

Verification of	Partial factor on	Symbol	Material factor approach (MFA), either both combinations (a) and (b) or the single combination (c)			Resistance factor approach (RFA), either combination (d) or © ^c	
			(a)	©(c)	(d)	(e)	
Overall stability	See Clause 4						
Bearing and sliding resistance	Actions, and effects-of-actions	γ_{F_r} and γ_E	VC1 ^a	VC3 ^a	VC1 ^a	VC1 ^a	VC4
	Ground properties	γ_M	M1 ^b	M2 ^b	M2 ^b	Not factored	
	Bearing resistance	γ_{RN}	Not factored			1,4	
	Sliding resistance	γ_{RT}	Not factored			1,1	
^a Values of the partial factors for Verification Cases (VCs) 1, 3, and 4 are given in prEN 1990:2021 Annex A.							
^b Values of the partial factors for Sets M1 and M2 are given in prEN 1997-1:2022, Table 4.7.							
^c Use combination (d) except where specified otherwise in 5.6.6 (2) and (3)							

SC7 NOTE [#48]:
o To be corrected in final draft

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

Table 5. — (NDP) Partial factors for the verification of ground resistance of spread foundations for accidental design situations

Verification of	Partial factor on	Symbol	Material factor approach (MFA), either both combinations (a) and (b) or the single combination (c)			Resistance factor approach (RFA)
			(a)	(b)	(c)	
Overall stability	See Clause 4					
Bearing and sliding resistance	Actions and effects of actions	γ_F and γ_E	Not factored			
	Ground properties	γ_M	M1 ^a	M2 ^a	M2 ^a	Not factored
	Bearing resistance	γ_{RN}	Not factored			1,20
	Sliding resistance	γ_{RT}	Not factored			1,05
^a —Values of the partial factors for Sets M1 and M2 are given in prEN 1997-1:2022, Table 4.7.						

SC7 NOTE [#49]: CR0136
Since accidental design situation now will be treated in part 1, with a note. This table is deleted

- (2) If the resistance factor approach is used to determine the bearing resistance of spread foundations under inclined loading, Verification Case 4 may be used instead of Verification Case 1, provided the condition in Formula (5.18) is satisfied:

$$T_{\text{rep}} \leq 0,2N_{\text{rep}} \quad (5.18)$$

where

T_{rep} is the representative value of the force acting tangential to the foundation base;

N_{rep} is the representative value of the force acting normal to the foundation base, considered as a favourable action.

- (3) ~~If the resistance factor approach is used to determine bearing resistance of gravity retaining structures, Verification Case 4 may be used instead of Verification Case 1.~~

SC7 NOTE [#50]:
CR0034 Bearing resistance Delete 5.6.6 (2) [Now (3) since added (1)]

- (4) Provided the conditions specified in prEN 1997-1:2022 4.4.3(10) are satisfied, the value of γ_{RN} and γ_{RT} for transient design situations may be multiplied by a factor $K_{R, \text{tr}}$ 1 0 provided that the products $K_{R, \text{tr}} \gamma_{RN}$ and $K_{R, \text{tr}} \gamma_{RT}$ are not less than 1,0.

NOTE For spread foundations, the value of $K_{R, \text{tr}}$ is 1,0 unless the National Annex gives a different value.

5.7 Serviceability limit states

5.7.1 General

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 9 shall apply to spread foundations.
- (2) The adverse effects of foundation displacements shall be considered both in terms of displacement of the entire foundation and differential displacements of parts of the foundation.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (3) Displacements caused by actions on the foundation shall be considered, including the actions given in prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1.2(1).
- (4) In determining the magnitude of foundation displacements, comparable experience shall be considered, as given in prEN 1997-1:2022, 3.1.2.3.
- (5) The effect of existing adjacent foundations, fills, and excavations shall be considered, including the stress increase in the ground and its influence on ground compressibility and displacement.

5.7.2 Settlement

- (1) To ensure the avoidance of a serviceability limit state, determination of differential settlements and relative rotations shall consider both the distribution of loads and the variability of the ground.
- (2) Upper and lower bound values of settlement should be determined using inferior and superior representative values of stiffness and hydraulic conductivity.

5.7.3 Tilting

- (1) For spread foundations subject to eccentric loading, it shall be verified that differential settlement of the foundation will not result in the occurrence of a serviceability limit state due to unacceptable tilting of the supported structure.

SC7 NOTE [#51]: CR0108
TGA2 decided to not make any changes

5.7.4 Vibration

- (1) Foundations for structures subjected to vibrating loads shall be designed to ensure that vibrations will not cause excessive settlements or a loss of serviceability of supported or adjacent structures.
- (2) Precautions should be taken to ensure that resonance will not occur between the frequency of the dynamic load and a critical frequency in the foundation-ground system, and to ensure that liquefaction will not occur in the ground.

5.7.5 Physical gap beneath the foundation

- (1) In order to prevent a physical gap forming beneath the foundation, the eccentricity of load at the serviceability limit state shall not be greater than the values given in Table 5.4.

SC7 NOTE [#52]:
CR0108

Table 5.2 — (NDP) Limits to the SLS design load eccentricity in the case of SLS design

Loading effects	Strip foundation	Circular foundation	Rectangular foundation
<u>Permanent action effects only</u> (No tension gap)	$\frac{e_B}{B} \leq \frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{e}{R} \leq \frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{e_L}{L} + \frac{e_B}{B} \leq \frac{1}{6}$
<u>Permanent and variable action effects</u> (Limited tension gap)	$\frac{e_B}{B} \leq \frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{e}{R} \leq 0,59$	$\left[\frac{e_L}{L}\right]^2 + \left[\frac{e_B}{B}\right]^2 \leq \frac{1}{9}$

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

5.8 Implementation of design

5.8.1 General

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10 shall apply to spread foundation.
- (2) The execution of concrete spread foundations should comply with EN 13670.

5.8.2 Inspection

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.3 shall apply to spread foundation

5.8.3 Monitoring

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.4 shall apply to spread foundation

5.8.4 Maintenance

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.5 shall apply to spread foundation

- (2) ~~Groundwater control systems around spread foundations should be designed for ease of maintenance and renewal during the design life of the structure.~~

SC7 NOTE [#53]: CR0046
Implementation of design, testing, reporting. Delete RCM that is covered by part 1

5.9 Testing

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 11 shall apply to spread foundation

- (2) ~~Full- or small-scale tests may be used to verify limit states of spread foundations on soil and fill.~~

NOTE 1 ~~Examples of full-scale tests include sacrificial footing test, kentledge tests, and zone tests.~~

NOTE 2 ~~An example of a small scale test is the Plate Loading Test.~~

SC7 NOTE [#54]: CR0066
Revised wording

- ~~(2)~~(3) The results of Plate Loading Tests should only be used for verification of limit state if:

- the size of the plate has been chosen considering the width of the planned spread foundation; and
- a homogeneous layer ~~exists beneath the spread foundation with thickness greater than up to~~ two times the width of the ~~planned spread foundation exists.~~

NOTE 1 ~~Plate Loading Tests are frequently used for compliance testing of thin layers of compacted fill. Due to the small diameter of the plate, their use to verify limit states of spread foundations is limited in practice.~~

NOTE 2 The depth of the ~~zone ground~~ tested by ~~the a~~ Plate Loading Test is ~~limited to~~ approximately twice the diameter of the plate. ~~Therefore, no~~ inference concerning ~~the~~ soil quality below that depth can be made unless additional investigation, ~~(e.g. sounding), is are~~ carried out.

- ~~(3)~~(4) ~~Based on established experience~~ Provided comparable experience is available, the results of a Plate Loading Test may be used ~~with an adjusted elasticity method~~ to determine Young's modulus and evaluate the settlement of a spread foundation on soil and fill and on rock.

NOTE ~~Young's modulus can be determined using the An~~ adjusted elasticity method is given in B.7.

- ~~(4)~~(5) When a Plate Loading Test is used to determine the Young's modulus ~~and or to~~ evaluate ~~the~~ settlement of a spread foundation on soil and fill, the effects of any groundwater pressures generated on loading should be considered.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

~~(5) Dummy footing tests, skip tests, zone tests, and small-scale prototype tests may also be used to verify the design of a spread foundation on soil or fill, provided the size of the loaded area and the depth of a homogeneous layer beneath the planned foundation comply with (3).~~

5.10 Reporting

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 12 shall apply to spread foundation.

6 Piled foundations**6.1 Scope and field of application**

(1) This Clause shall apply to single piles, pile groups and piled rafts.

~~NOTE Parts of this clause also apply to rigid inclusions (See In addition to Clause 11, part of this clause shall apply to rigid inclusions).~~

SC7 NOTE [#55]: CR0148
Link to clause 11

(2) Piles should be classified according to their method of execution.

NOTE 1 The classification is given in ~~Table 6.1~~ **Table 6.1** (NDP) unless the National Annex gives a different classification.

NOTE 2 The pile type is used to determine resistance factors, see 6.6.3.

NOTE 3 Examples of different pile types are given in Annex C.3.

Table 6.1 — (NDP) Classification of piles

Pile type	Description	Class
Displacement pile	Pile installed in the ground without excavation of material	Full displacement
		Partial displacement
Replacement pile	Pile installed in the ground after the excavation of material	Replacement
Pile not listed above	---	Unclassified

6.2 Basis of design**6.2.1 Design situations**

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2.2 shall apply to piled foundations.

6.2.2 Geometrical properties**6.2.2.1 General**

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.3 shall apply to piled foundations.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)**6.2.2.2 Single Pile**

- (1) Pile dimensions shall be selected according to the pile type and method of execution, the stability of the ground, and the potential adverse changes that can occur due to pile installation.

NOTE Nominal dimensions are given in the execution standards given in 6.8.1

- (2) The adverse effects of pile geometrical imperfections shall be considered in the verification of limit states.

NOTE 1 The execution standards given in 6.8.1 give positional and verticality tolerances. Other geometrical imperfections can include curvature of the pile shaft, bulging or necking of the pile, and oversized or undersized bores.

NOTE 2 Annex C.13 provides calculation models to consider second order effects induced by some geometrical imperfections.

6.2.2.3 Pile groups

- (1) The spacing of piles in groups should be selected according to the pile type, method of execution, proposed sequence of execution, pile length, ground conditions, and anticipated pile group behaviour.
- (2) Pile spacing should be sufficient to avoid damage to previously constructed piles, considering positional and verticality tolerances.

6.2.3 Zone of influence

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.2.1 shall apply to piled foundations.

~~(2) The adverse effects of nearby construction activity on the piled foundation shall be considered.~~

~~(3)~~(2) The adverse effects of pile execution resulting in ground movement and vibrations that could impact on nearby structures ~~should~~ shall be considered.

SC7 NOTE [#56]:
CR0054 Wording
piling Made
paragraph into a REQ

6.2.4 Actions and environmental influences**6.2.4.1 General**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1 shall apply to piled foundations.

6.2.4.2 Permanent and variables actions

- (1) Actions for piled foundations shall include, but are not limited to:
- applied axial, transverse, and shear forces in any combination;
 - applied bending and torsional moments in any combination;
 - static, cyclic, dynamic, or impact actions in any combination;
 - loading due to lateral or vertical ground displacements;
 - pile imperfections that result in additional bending moment or shear loads;
 - loading due to thermal deformations of the pile or surrounding ground.

NOTE Seismic actions are defined in EN 1998 (all parts).

6.2.4.3 Cyclic and dynamic actions

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1.3 shall apply to piled foundations.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (2) The adverse effects of cyclic and dynamic action on the long-term bearing and transverse resistance of piled foundations, shall be considered.

NOTE 1 Cyclic and dynamic actions can result in reduced ground strength and stiffness leading to additional pile displacements and loss of resistance.

NOTE 2 In coarse fills and soils, cyclic and dynamic actions can result in densification of the ground leading to increased stiffness, particularly in the horizontal direction.

- (3) For axially loaded piles, the stability diagram may be used to assess whether the effects of cyclic loads can significantly affect the response of the pile or can be neglected.

NOTE 1 The concept of a pile stability diagram is presented in Annex C.14.

NOTE 2 The effect of cyclic actions on the axial pile resistance depends on the pile properties, load characteristics and ground properties.

6.2.4.4 Actions due to ground displacement

- (1) The adverse effects on the piled foundation of vertical and horizontal ground movements shall be considered.

NOTE 1 See 6.5.2.2 for a method of calculating downdrag action on piles.

NOTE 2 Ground mass displacement are assessed according to Clause 4.

6.2.4.5 Environmental influences

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1.5 shall apply to piled foundations.

6.2.5 Limit states**6.2.5.1 Ultimate Limit States**

- (1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.1, the following ultimate limit states shall be verified for all piled foundations:

- failure of the ground surrounding the piled foundation;
- failure of the ground between individual piles;
- buckling of the pile element;
- structural failure of the pile element ~~(see EN 1992 (all parts), prEN 1993 (all parts) or EN 1995 (all parts) respectively based on pile material);~~
- combined failure of the ground and the structural pile element;
- failure of the supported structure caused by excessive pile movement.

- (2) Potential ultimate limit states other than those given in (1) should be verified.

6.2.5.2 Serviceability Limit States

- (1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 9, the following serviceability limit states shall be verified for all piled foundations:

- pile settlement;
- differential settlements;
- settlement caused by downdrag;

SC7 NOTE [#57]:
CR0034 Bearing
resistance Delete
references

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- heave;
- transverse movement;
- unacceptable movements or distortions of the structure caused by pile movements.

(2) Potential serviceability limit states other than those given in (1) should be verified.

6.2.6 Robustness

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.4 shall apply to piled foundations.

6.2.7 Ground investigation**6.2.7.1 General**

(1) prEN 1997-2:2022, 5 shall apply to piled foundations.

(2) The ground investigation should include one or more of the following:

- field tests to allow direct correlation with the pile shaft and base resistance;
- field tests to determine the shear strength and stiffness of ground;
- laboratory tests to determine ground shear strength and stiffness;
- description of the geological and geotechnical ground conditions.

(3) In addition to (1) for piled foundations on or in very weak to weak rock mass or weakness zones at the anticipated pile base level, the ground investigation should include one or more of the following:

- rotary core drill holes to provide undisturbed core samples;
- assessment of any core loss, fracturing and joint spacing;
- a full core description complying with EN ISO 14689, including estimates of rock strength;
- laboratory testing to determine the compressive strength of the rock.

(4) In addition to (1) for piled foundations on or in medium to strong rock mass at the anticipated pile base level, the ground investigation should include one or more of the following:

- measurement while drilling;
- borehole video logging;
- comprehensive comparable experience.

(5) The aggressiveness of the ground and groundwater shall be determined during the ground investigation.

(6) In addition to (1) – (3), the ground investigation may include:

- visual inspection of rock surfaces;
- site trials and prototype pile installation;
- installation of piles for load testing;
- observation of spoil from drilled or bored replacement piles;
- measurement of drive blows for driven displacement piles;
- drive energy analysis;
- static load testing;
- dynamic impact load testing;
- rapid load testing.
-

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

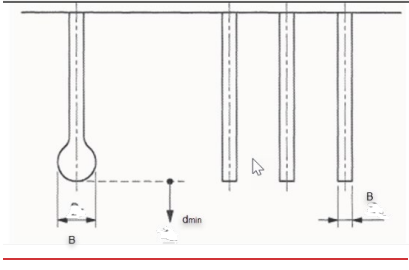
6.2.7.2 Minimum extent of field investigation

SC7 NOTE [#58]: CR0147
Systematic revision of all
clauses on minimum
extent of field investigation

~~(1)~~ The depth and horizontal extent of field investigation shall be sufficient to determine ground conditions within the zone of influence of the structure according to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2.1.1. In addition to EN1997-2 Clause 5.4.3, the depth of investigation for piled foundation shall be determined.

NOTE The minimum depth d_{min} of the ground investigation is given in Table 6.1 unless the National Annex gives another value.

Table 6.4 — (NDP) Minimum depth of field investigation for piled foundations

Application	Minimum depth	Illustration
Piled foundation	$d_{min} = \max(3B; 5 \text{ m})$	
B is the equivalent size of the pile base (the diameter for a circular pile, the width of a square pile or the equivalent diameter)		

~~(1)~~

~~(2)~~ The field investigation shall determine ground conditions over the full depth of the piled foundation including any overlying fills or low strength soils, and should extend beyond the anticipated founding stratum at or pile base.

~~(3)~~~~(2)~~ The minimum depth of field investigation below the anticipated base of a piled foundation d_{min} in soils and in very weak and weak rock masses should be determined from Formula ~~6.16.1~~:

$$d_{min} = \max(5 \text{ m}; 3B_{b,eq}; p_{group}) \quad (6.1)$$

where

$B_{b,eq}$ is the equivalent size of the pile base, equal to B_b (for square piles), D_b (for circular piles), or p_b/π (for other piles);

B_b is the base width of the pile with the largest base (for square piles);

D_b is the base diameter of the pile with the largest base (for circular piles);

p_b is the base perimeter of the pile with the largest base (for other piles);

p_{group} is the smaller dimension of a rectangle circumscribing the group of piles forming the foundation, limited to the depth of the zone of influence.

~~(4)~~~~(3)~~ The value of d_{min} in strong rock masses should be determined from Formula ~~(6.26.2)~~:

$$d_{min} = \max(3 \text{ m}; 3B_{b,eq}) \quad (6.2)$$

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

~~(5) The value of d_{\min} should be increased for rock masses that are susceptible to dissolution features or cavities, or where closely spaced discontinuities may reduce the mass strength and stiffness.~~

~~(6) The value of d_{\min} in medium strong and strong rock mass or dense moraine may be reduced provided there is comparable experience to allow the properties of the rock mass or moraine to be predicted.~~

6.2.8 Geotechnical reliability

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.2 shall apply to piled foundations.

(2) Piled foundations shall be classified as GC 2 or GC 3.

6.3 Materials**6.3.1 Ground properties**

(1) prEN 1997-2:2022, Clauses 7 to 12 shall apply to piled foundations.

(2) The following non-exhaustive list of field tests and ground parameters may be used to calculate axial or transverse pile resistance:

- cone resistance from Cone Penetration Tests;
- corrected blow counts from Standard Penetration Tests;
- limit pressure from Pressuremeter Tests;
- effective shear strength parameters of fill, soil, or weak rock;
- constant volume effective stress parameter of fill or soil;
- undrained shear strength of fill or soil;
- unconfined compressive strength of rock;
- compressive strength of rock mass and mechanical properties of discontinuities.

(3) The effect of subsequent excavation, placement of overburden, or changes in groundwater pressure on the values of ground properties should be considered.

(4) Verification of limit states should be based on ground parameters that represent the strength and stiffness of the ground after pile execution, unless the selected design method implicitly allows for execution effects.

6.3.2 Plain and reinforced concrete

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.5 shall apply to piled foundations.

(2) Exposure classes for concrete ~~should~~ shall comply with EN 206.

(3) Concrete cover requirements shall comply with prEN 1992-1-1.

~~NOTE — For many reinforced concrete piles or piled foundations constructed in natural ground, the exposure class will be XA1, XA2 or XA3. Currently prEN 1992-1-1 does not provide guidance for the cover allowance for durability for these exposure classes.~~

(4) In the absence of alternative guidance, the minimum cover for environmental conditions $c_{\min, \text{dur}}$ should be 25 mm for reinforced concrete used for both precast and cast-in-place piles.

~~(5) In the absence of alternative guidance the allowance for deviation c_{dev} should be 50 mm for concrete cast against the ground and 10 mm for precast piles.~~

SC7 NOTE [#59]:
CR0157

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

~~NOTE — EN 12794 and EN 13369 give additional recommendations.~~

~~(6)~~(5) The value for c_{dev} for precast piles may be reduced in accordance with prEN 1992-1-1:2021, 4.4.1.3 ~~(3)~~ when fabrication is subject to a quality assurance system with measurement of concrete cover.

SC7 NOTE [#59]:
CR0157

6.3.3 Plain and reinforced grout and mortar

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.4 shall apply to piled foundations.
- (2) Exposure classes for grout and mortar should comply with:
 - 6.3.2(2) for durability;
 - EN 14199 for corrosion protection.
- (3) In the absence of guidance, exposure classes for grout and mortar, and rules for durability may be determined from comparable experience or testing.

6.3.4 Steel

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.6 shall apply to piled foundations.

~~**6.3.5 Steel reinforcement**~~

- ~~(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.5 shall apply to piled foundations.~~

SC7 NOTE [#60]:
CR0158

~~**6.3.6**~~**6.3.5 Ductile cast iron**

- (1) Cast iron for piles or piled foundation and the values of cast iron properties should comply with EN 1563.

~~**6.3.7**~~**6.3.6 Timber**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.7 shall apply for pile design.
- (2) Timber grading for pile foundations should comply with the general requirements of EN 14081-1.
- (3) Timber piles without preservative treatment may be used provided the piles are installed below the groundwater table and remain fully submerged throughout their design service life.

6.4 Groundwater~~**6.3.8**~~**6.4.1 General**

- ~~(1)~~ prEN 1997-1:2022, 6 shall apply to piled foundations.

6.4.2 Groundwater control systems

- ~~(2)~~ Clause 12 shall apply to piled foundations.

SC7 NOTE [#61]:
CR0164

~~(1)~~

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

6.4.6.5 Geotechnical analysis**6.4.16.5.1 General**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 7 shall apply to piled foundations.
- (2) The interaction between the structure, pile foundation and ground shall be considered when verifying limit states.

~~(3) Combined axial and lateral loading may be analysed by separating each load component and applying the principle of superposition, provided pile internal behaviour remains substantially elastic.~~

- ~~(4)~~(3) The non-linearity of the load-displacement curve of axially and transversally loaded piles should be considered for the verification of both geotechnical and structural limit states.

SC7 NOTE [#62]: CR0034
Bearing resistance Delete
6.5.1 (2) [now (3) since
(1) added]

6.4.26.5.2 Effect of ground displacement**6.4.2.16.5.2.1 General**

- (1) Actions due to ground displacement shall be modelled either by treating the displacement as an action or as an equivalent design force.
- (2) Evaluation of an equivalent design force should take account of the strength and stiffness of the ground, together with the source, magnitude and direction of the ground displacement by assuming the most unfavourable values of the strength and stiffness of the moving ground.

6.4.2.26.5.2.2 Downdrag

- (1) The adverse effects of the drag force caused by moving ground shall be included in the verification of serviceability and ultimate limit states.
- (2) The effects of the downdrag should be modelled by carrying out a ground-pile interaction analysis, to determine the depth of the neutral plane L_{dd} corresponding to the point where the pile settlement spile equals the ground settlement.

NOTE 1 The neutral plane marks the boundary between downwards shaft friction (occurring above the neutral plane), and upwards shaft friction (occurring below the neutral plane).

NOTE 2 The depth of the neutral plane L_{dd} is usually different for serviceability and ultimate limit state conditions.

~~(3) A Simplified approach for calculating downdrag may be used by assuming the depth of the neutral plane L_{dd} resulting in an upper (superior) value for the downdrag or disregarding downdrag in case of minor settlement at the ground surface.~~

SC7 NOTE [#63]:
CR0137 Added
permission for simplified
approach

~~NOTE 1 Annex C.9.3 provides guidance for cases to use an upper (superior) value or to disregard the downdrag.~~

~~NOTE 2 The term 'minor' in (3) is relative. Annex C.9.3 provides guidance to disregard the downdrag based on the settlement of the pile in comparison with the settlement at the ground surface level.~~

- ~~(3)~~(4) The ground-pile interaction analysis should provide force, displacement, and strain profiles for the full depth of the pile to enable the representative drag force D_{rep} acting on the pile shaft above the neutral plane to be determined.

NOTE See C.9 for detailed models and combinations of actions for downdrag.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

~~(4)~~(5) In addition to prEN 1990-1:2021, 6.1.1(4) and prEN 1990-1:2021, 8.3.3.1(3)-(4), when carrying out an interaction analysis, if the drag force and shaft resistance originate in a single geotechnical unit, with no significant change in strength or stiffness across the neutral plane, then both the drag force and the resistance may be considered as coming from a single-source.

~~(5)~~(6) The equivalent drag force D_{rep} should be determined from Formula ~~6.3~~:

$$D_{\text{rep}} = p \int_0^{L_{\text{dd}}} \tau_s \cdot dz \quad (6.3)$$

where

p is the perimeter of the pile;

τ_s is the unit shaft friction causing downdrag at depth z ;

L_{dd} is the depth to the neutral plane.

~~(6)~~(7) In order to provide a cautious estimate of the downdrag force, the shaft friction causing downdrag should be determined from upper (superior) ground parameters.

~~6.4.2.36~~5.2.3 **Heave**

- (1) Verification of the pile compression or tensile resistance shall take account of ground heave (including swelling) which could take place during execution before piles are fully loaded by the structure.
- (2) The adverse effects of heave caused by moving ground shall be included in the verification of serviceability and ultimate limit states, especially to avoid tensile failure of the pile.
- (3) Verification of serviceability limit states should consider short- or long-term ground heave sufficient to cause unacceptable uplift to the pile element or to result in a serviceability limit state in the overall structure.
- (4) Long-term heave may be disregarded where the imposed permanent actions exceed the heave load.

~~6.4.2.46~~5.2.4 **Transverse loading**

- (1) Verification of the pile transverse resistance and displacement shall take account of actions on piles originating from the adverse effect of ground movements or asymmetric loads around a pile.

~~6.4.36~~5.3 **Axially loaded single piles**

~~6.4.3.16~~5.3.1 **Calculation**

- (1) The axial resistance of a single pile shall be determined based on comparable experience from the results of field investigation and laboratory testing or load tests.
- (2) The axial resistance of a single pile designed by calculation shall be determined by one of the following methods:
 - using ground properties determined from field and laboratory tests (the Ground Model Method); or
 - using individual pile resistance profiles determined from correlations with field test results or ground properties from field or laboratory tests (the Model Pile Method).

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

NOTE The method (Ground Model or Model Pile) to be used can be given in the National Annex.

- (3) The validity of the method used to assess the base and shaft resistance of a pile shall be proved by documented load testing of comparable piled foundations and case histories that confirm that the method provides reliable pile resistance and performance.

NOTE Methods of calculating base and shaft resistance are included in C.4 and C.5 for ground parameters, C.6 for cone penetration test methods, and C.7 for pressuremeter methods.

- (4) The axial compressive resistance R_c of a single pile should be determined from Formula 6.4

$$R_c = R_b + R_s \quad (6.4)$$

where

R_b is the pile base resistance;

R_s is the pile shaft resistance.

NOTE 1 The use of Formula (6.4) assumes the compatibility of the displacements to mobilise both base resistance and shaft resistance considering the pile geometry and the difference of stiffness between the ground and the pile. In case of layered ground with layers of significant different stiffness, shaft resistance may not be fully mobilized in layers of lower stiffness.

NOTE 2 For piled foundation on rock the proportion of base resistance and shaft resistance to be taken into account depends on the ratio of E_c (concrete Young's modulus) to E_{rm} (rock mass Young's modulus) and on the pile slenderness. The shaft resistance of soil layers tends to reduce to 0, when a pile is socketed in competent rock.

- (5) The weight of the pile should be included as an action in the calculation model, in which case the beneficial contribution of overburden should be included in the axial compressive resistance at the pile base.
- (6) The weight of the pile and the additional resistance at the pile base due to overburden pressure may both be disregarded provided that:
- the pile weight and the contribution to resistance due to overburden pressure are approximately equal;
 - downdrag is not significant;
 - the soil or fill does not have a very low weight density;
 - the pile does not extend above the surface of the ground.

- (7) The weight of the pile element may be included as a resistance for piles loaded by tension.

- (8) The pile base resistance in compression R_b should be determined from Formula (6.5):

$$R_b = A_b \cdot q_b \quad (6.5)$$

where

q_b is the unit base resistance;

A_b is the area of the pile base.

- (9) The pile shaft resistance R_s in compression should be determined from Formula (6.6):

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

$$R_s = \sum_{i=1}^n A_{s,i} q_{s,i} \quad (6.6)$$

where

- $q_{s,i}$ is the unit shaft resistance in the i -th geotechnical unit;
- $A_{s,i}$ is the area of the pile shaft in the i -th geotechnical unit;
- i is an index that varies from 1 to n ;
- n is the number of geotechnical units providing resistance.

(10) The pile shaft resistance in tension R_{st} should be determined from Formula (6.7):

$$R_{st} = \sum_{i=1}^n A_{s,i} q_{st,i} \quad (6.7)$$

where

- $q_{st,i}$ is the unit shaft resistance in tension in the i -th geotechnical unit.

6.4.3.26.5.3.2 Prescriptive rules

- (1) The axial compressive resistance of a single pile may be determined using prescriptive rules where specified by a relevant authority.

6.4.3.36.5.3.3 Testing

~~(1) Static load tests may be used to determine the ultimate and serviceability limit states of a single pile in compression and tension.~~

~~(2) Rapid load tests may be used to determine the ultimate limit state of a single pile in compression.~~

~~(3) Dynamic impact tests may be used to determine the ultimate limit state of a single pile in compression.~~

~~(1) The axial compressive resistance of a single pile at the ultimate limit state may be determined from the results of static load, dynamic impact, or rapid load tests.~~

~~(2) The axial tensile resistance of a single pile at the ultimate limit state may be determined from the results of static load tests.~~

~~(3)~~(4) Determination of the axial resistance of a single pile from static load tests should account for potential temporary support.

~~(4)~~(5) The compressive resistance of a single pile may be determined from the results of dynamic impact or rapid load tests provided adjustments are made to account for temporary support.

~~(5)~~(6) The compressive resistance of a friction pile from a dynamic impact test should be determined from the maximum applied test load determined by signal matching.

~~(6)~~(7) In the absence of site-specific correlations, the validity of dynamic impact or rapid load tests shall have been established using static load test previously carried out in documented comparable situation on the same pile type, with similar geometry, in comparable ground conditions, and tested to similar load levels.

SC7 NOTE [#64]:
CR0176

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

~~(7)(8)~~ Results of dynamic impact or rapid load tests where more than approximately 30 % of the total pile resistance is provided ~~by shaft friction or end bearing~~ in fine soils should only be used to determine R_c if there is site-specific calibration against static load test.

SC7 NOTE [#65]:
CR0034 Bearing resistance

~~(8)(9)~~ The validity of the interpreted results from dynamic impact or rapid load tests should be demonstrated by static load tests carried out in parallel to allow direct site-specific correlation.

~~(9)(10)~~ Allowance for any potential pile set-up may be included provided this has been either verified by load tests on piles of different ages or established by comparable experience.

~~(10)(11)~~ The compressive resistance of a pile may be determined from the results of wave equation analysis based on the registered energy transfer to the pile during driving, provided the analysis has previously been calibrated against the results of static load tests on the same pile type, with similar geometry and installation method and in comparable ground conditions.

~~(11)(12)~~ The compressive resistance of an end-bearing pile in coarse soil or rock may be based on a pile driving formula provided the formula has previously been calibrated against the results of static load tests on the same pile type, with similar geometry, of similar installation method and in comparable ground conditions.

~~(12)(13)~~ Analysis of the results of dynamic impact tests may be carried out using wave equation analysis for confirmation of design or for interpolation between test locations when it is necessary to modify the design to consider different design situations.

~~(13)(14)~~ Wave equation analysis may also be used to determine the effect of significant changes in dimensions, length, impact energy, and final set of piles that are not load tested.

~~(14)(15)~~ Wave equation analysis or driving formulae may be used to determine driving criteria for control purposes.

6.4.46.5.4 Transversely loaded single piles

(1) The transverse resistance of a single pile may be determined by calculation or by testing.

(2) The transverse resistance of a single pile may be determined assuming rotation or translation of the pile as a rigid body ~~(for short piles with a ratio (length to diameter ratio $L/D < 6$) or bending failure and local yielding depending on the ground properties and the flexural stiffness of the pile for longer piles ($L/D \geq 6$)).~~

NOTE Verification of piles for transverse loading is often controlled by the serviceability limit state rather than ultimate limit state.

SC7 NOTE [#66]:
CR0034 Bearing resistance
wording Revised

(3) Temporary support from moving ground that will reduce or reverse during the design service life of the piled foundation shall not be included in the computation of transverse resistance.

(4) The transverse resistance of a single pile shall take account of the fixity of the pile head to the pile cap or sub-structure and the fixity of the pile base.

(5) The transverse resistance of a single pile should take account of potential variations of ground stiffness with depth.

(6) For piles in multi-layered soils, superior (upper) and inferior (lower) values of soil stiffness in different layers should be combined in the most adverse manner.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

NOTE For example, upper bound stiffness for stiff soil layers and lower bound for less stiff layers.

(7) The transverse geotechnical and structural resistance of a socketed pile should include specific analyses of the pile base, especially when shear forces are present owing to a large difference in stiffness between the rock mass and any overlying soil.

(8) If piles are additionally loaded ~~transversally~~**axially**, they should be verified using second order theory.

NOTE For example, additionally load can be induced by settlement of the ground, displacement of sloping ground or by structural actions.

SC7 NOTE [#67]:
CR0044 Replace
transversally with axially

6.4.5.5 Pile groups

(1) Verification of limit states for pile groups may be carried out by numerical, analytical, or empirical calculation methods, or determined from the observed performance of comparable pile groups.

(2) Pile group design shall consider that the resistance and load-displacement behaviour of individual piles in a group might show significant variation compared to the behaviour of single piles.

(3) Calculation of pile group effects should consider the potential changes in stress and density of the ground resulting from pile installation together with the effects of group behaviour due to the structural loads.

(4) Pile group design may be based on the results of load tests on individual piles provided the interaction between individual piles and pile group effects are considered.

(5) The ultimate vertical resistance of a pile group R_{group} should be determined from Formula 6.8:

$$R_{\text{group}} = \min \left\{ \sum_i^n R_i ; R_{\text{block}} \right\} \quad (6.8)$$

where

R_i is the ultimate axial resistance of the i -th pile in the pile group, taking full account of the effects of pile interaction;

i is an index that varies from 1 to n ;

n is the number of piles within the piled foundation;

R_{block} is the ultimate vertical resistance of the block of ground bounded by the perimeter of the pile group.

(6) In the case of tension loading, the reduction in effective vertical stresses in the ground should be considered when deriving the shaft resistance of individual piles in the group.

NOTE For the evaluation of the block failure of pile groups subject to axial tension see C.10.

(7) The effects of pile interaction, the shadow effect of closely spaced piles, and head fixity of piles should be accounted for when deriving the transverse resistance of a pile group from the results of calculations or load tests on individual test piles.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (8) Where interaction effects between piles are expected to be significant, the verification of limit states should be based on numerical models that consider non-linear ground-pile response and can cater for combined axial, lateral, and moment actions.
- (9) If the piles in a group are connected by a pile cap that is unable to redistribute loads, verification of limit states shall be based on the pile in the most unfavourable condition.
- (10) The verification of geotechnical ultimate and serviceability limit states for individual piles may be omitted provided it is verified that the pile cap is able to redistribute loads without itself exceeding an ultimate or serviceability limit state.

6.4.6.5.6 Piled rafts

- (1) The ultimate compressive resistance of a piled raft $R_{\text{piled-raft}}$ should be determined from Formula 6.9 considering the compatibility of the displacements of the piles and the rafts:

$$R_{\text{piled-raft}} = \left(\sum_i^n R_{c,i} + R_{\text{raft}} \right) \quad (6.9)$$

where

R_{raft} is the ultimate compressive resistance of the raft alone;

$R_{c,i}$ is the compressive resistance of the i -th pile;

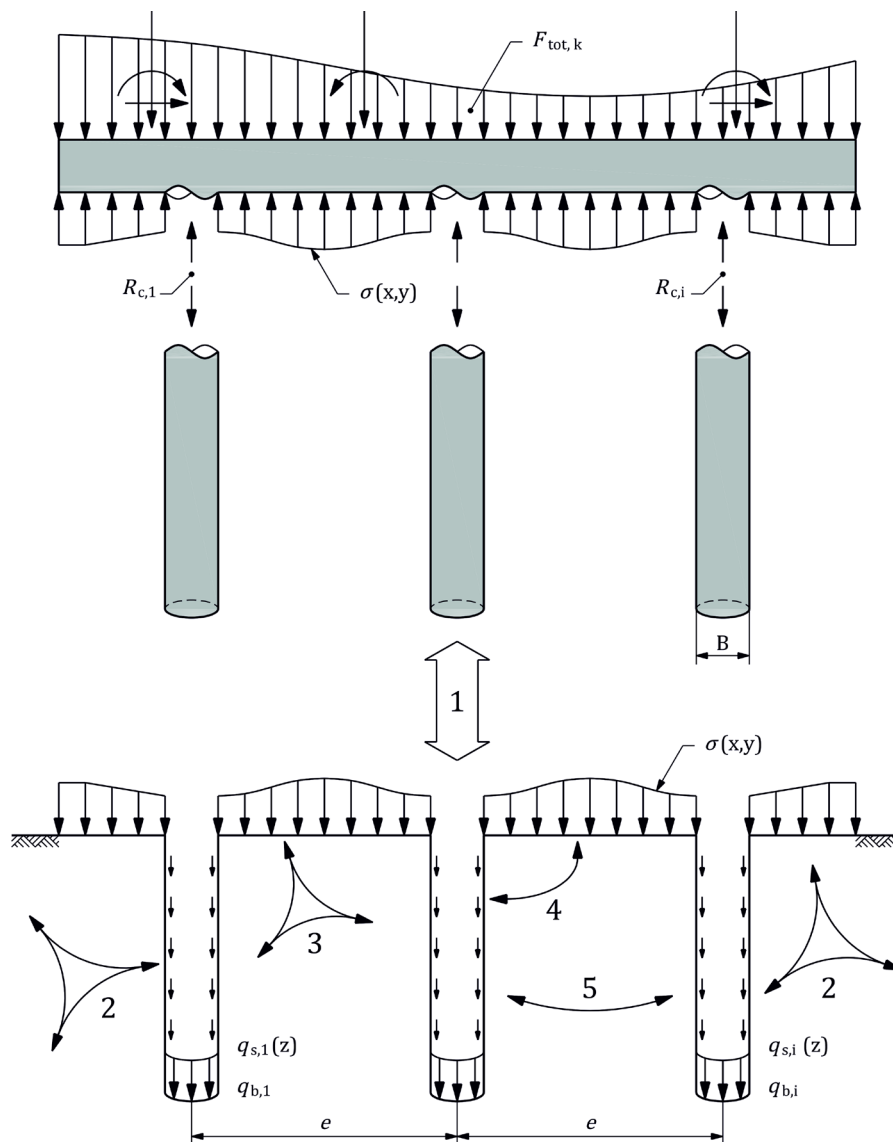
i is an index that varies from 1 to n ;

n is the number of piles supporting the piled-raft.

- (2) The design of piled rafts should consider the interaction effects shown in [Figure 6.1](#):

- pile-soil interaction;
- pile-pile interaction;
- raft-soil interaction;
- pile-raft interaction.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)



Key

- 1 interaction between piled raft and ground
- 2 Piled-Ground-Interaction
- 3 Raft-Ground-Interaction
- 4 Piled-Raft-Interaction
- 5 Pile-Pile-Interaction
- e distance between piles
- B pile diameter

Figure 6.1 — Interaction effects of a piled raft

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (3) Analysis of a piled raft may be based on numerical modelling including nonlinear stress-strain models for the ground, the structural flexural stiffness of the raft and the interactions between ground, raft and piles.
- (4) Verification of the ultimate limit state of individual piles within a piled raft may be omitted provided an ultimate limit state of the combined structure is not exceeded.
- (5) The ultimate compressive resistance of a piled raft may be determined in a simplified manner by neglecting pile resistances and considering the ultimate compressive resistance of the raft alone R_{raft} according to ~~5.5.2.3~~~~5.5.2.2~~ and 5.6.3.
- (6) Provided that an ultimate limit state in the combined structure is not exceeded, the shaft and base resistances of individual piles used for settlement reduction of a raft foundation may be allowed to reach their limiting value.

NOTE 1 This is particularly beneficial when piles are used for the purpose of settlement or raft bending moment reduction.

NOTE 2 The limiting value here is not necessarily the same as that of a single pile, since it includes pile-raft interaction effects, especially the surcharge effect and the restraint provided by the raft in contact with the ground.

~~6.4.7.5.7~~ Displacement of piled foundations

~~6.4.7.16.5.7.1~~ General

- (1) The settlement and transverse displacement of a piled foundation shall be determined from the results of load tests; analytical, numerical or empirical calculations, or prescriptive rules based on the observed performance of comparable single piles or pile groups.

NOTE Load testing of pile groups is seldom feasible, and so the performance of pile groups is normally verified by other methods.

- (2) The validity of analytical, numerical and empirical calculation methods should be demonstrated using documented load tests on and case histories of comparable pile foundations to confirm that the methods provide reliable parameter values and predictions of pile settlement and transverse displacement.
- (3) Potential downdrag shall be considered for both serviceability and ultimate conditions and shall take account of the relevant pile foundation loading and the strain mechanisms between the piles and the surrounding fill or soil in accordance with 6.5.2.

~~6.4.7.26.5.7.2~~ Single piles

- (1) The settlement and transverse displacement of a single pile may be determined from load tests or calculated using empirical or analytical methods or numerical modelling.

NOTE Owing to rapid degradation of mobilized ground stiffness with pile head movement, calculation models based on nonlinear stiffness are particularly appropriate for calculating the transverse response of a pile foundation.

- (2) Elastic shortening of the pile shaft under axial compression should be included in the calculation of pile head settlement taking into account the effects of creep.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**6.4.7.36.5.7.3 Pile groups and piled rafts**

- (1) The settlement and transverse displacement of pile groups and piled rafts may be determined using empirical or analytical methods or numerical modelling.
- (2) Calculation methods for pile group design should take account of:
- the load-displacement behaviour of individual piles as well as behaviour of pile group;
 - the movement and loading effects caused by pile to pile interaction through the ground;
 - the interaction with the supported structure.

NOTE Examples of appropriate methods include finite element/difference, boundary element, and interaction factor approaches.

- (3) Load transfer functions should not be used to determine groups effects unless they account for interaction between the piles.
- (4) Interactions between piles should consider the non-linear behaviour of the ground.

NOTE Methods based on purely linear behaviour tend to overestimate pile displacement at working load.

6.4.86.5.8 Confirmation of pile design by site-specific load testing or comparable experience

- (1) Pile design should be validated using site-specific static load testing to confirm design parameter values, verify compressive or tensile resistance, and establish behaviour under serviceability limit state conditions.

NOTE Unlike static load tests, rapid load and dynamic impact tests do not provide direct information about the pile behaviour under serviceability limit state conditions.

- (2) Pile resistance to axial compression may be confirmed using dynamic impact or rapid load tests provided that these tests have been validated by static pile load tests.
- (3) Site-specific ultimate control test may be omitted where there is comparable experience or evidence of previous successful use for the same pile type, with similar geometry, installed in similar ground conditions.
- (4) The number and type of site-specific pile load tests n_{test} needed to confirm pile design by calculation may be selected based on the type and purpose of the load test.

NOTE Values of n_{test} are given in [Table 6.2](#) (NDP) unless the National Annex gives different values.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

Table 6.2 — (NDP) Minimum quantity of load testing for confirmation of pile design by calculation

Type of load test	Confirmation of design by Ultimate Control Tests	Confirmation of design by Serviceability Control Tests
Static load test	max (1, 0.5 % N)	max (2, 1 % N)
Rapid load test	max (3, 1.0 % N)	max (6, 5 % N)
Dynamic impact load test	max (3, 1.0 % N)	max (6, 5 % N)
NOTE N = total number of piles in similar ground conditions		

- (5) When selecting the value of n_{test} , piles with different geometries may be considered as a single set of tests, provided they are anticipated to exhibit a similar response to loading.
- (6) The value of n_{test} may be adjusted proportionately when carrying out both Ultimate and Serviceability Control Tests or when carrying out a mix of static, rapid, or dynamic impact load tests.
- (7) All pile load test should be carried out in accordance with 6.9.
- (8) The design of piles shall consider any adverse effect of Control Tests on the load-settlement behaviour of the test pile during its design service life.

SC7 NOTE [68]:
CR0034 Bearing
resistance Editorial

6.5.6 Ultimate limit states

6.5.6.1 Single piles

6.5.1.16.1.1 Verification of axial compressive resistance

- (1) The axial compressive resistance of a single pile shall be verified using Formula (6.10):

$$F_{\text{cd}} \leq R_{\text{cd}} \quad (6.10)$$

where

F_{cd} is the design axial compression applied to the pile including an allowance for any potential drag force (see 6.6.1.4);

R_{cd} is the pile's design axial compressive resistance.

NOTE R_{cd} includes cyclic degradation effects where applicable.

- (2) The design axial compressive resistance R_{cd} shall be determined from Formula (6.11):

$$R_{\text{cd}} = \frac{R_{\text{c,rep}}}{\gamma_{\text{Rc}} \cdot \gamma_{\text{Rd}}} \text{ or } \left(\frac{R_{\text{b,rep}}}{\gamma_{\text{Rb}} \cdot \gamma_{\text{Rd}}} + \frac{R_{\text{s,rep}}}{\gamma_{\text{Rs}} \cdot \gamma_{\text{Rd}}} \right) \quad (6.11)$$

where

$R_{\text{c,rep}}$ is the pile's representative total resistance in axial compression;

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

$R_{b,rep}$ is the pile's representative base resistance in axial compression;

$R_{s,rep}$ is the pile's representative shaft resistance in axial compression;

γ_{Rd} is a model factor;

γ_{Rc} , γ_{Rb} , γ_{Rs} are resistance factors given in 6.6.3.

NOTE 1 Values of γ_{Rd} are given in **Table 6.3 — (NDP)** for verification by calculation for compressive and tensile actions unless the National Annex gives different values.

NOTE 2 Value of γ_{Rd} are given in **Table 6.4 — (NDP)** for verification by testing for compressive and tensile action, unless the National Annex gives different values.

Table 6.3 — (NDP) Model factor γ_{Rd} for verification of axial pile resistance by calculation

Verification by		Model factor γ_{Rd}	
Ground Model Method	Ultimate Control Tests	1.2	
	Extensive comparable ^{a,b} experience without site-specific Control Tests	1.3	
	Serviceability Control Tests	1.4	
	No pile load tests and limited comparable experience ^{a,c}	1.6	
	Pile on competent rock using properties determined from field and laboratory tests	1.1	
		Compressive resistance	Tensile resistance
Model Pile Method	Pressuremeter test ^d	1.15	1.4
	Cone penetration test ^d	1.1	1.1
	Profiles of ground properties based on field or laboratory tests ^{d,e}	1.2	1.2

^a Comparable experience assumes documented records (or database) of static pile load test results conducted on similar piles, in similar ground conditions, under similar loading conditions from a certain number of sites n ,
^b Extensive comparable experience assumes $n \geq 10$
^c Limited comparable experience assumes $n < 10$
^d Value can be multiplied by 0.9 when accompanied by Ultimate Control Tests
^e Ground strength properties determined at maximum vertical spacings of 1.5 m

SC7 NOTE [#69]:
CR0079 Delete the line on competent rock

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

Table 6.4 — (NDP) Model factor γ_{Rd} for verification of axial pile resistance by testing

Verification by		Model factor γ_{Rd}			
		Fine soils	Coarse soils	Rock mass ^c	Competent rock
Static load tests		1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
Rapid load tests (multiple load cycles) ^{a,b}		1.4	1.2	1.2	1.1
Rapid load tests (single load cycle) ^{a,b}		1.4	1.2	1.2	1.1
Dynamic impact tests (signal matching) ^{a,b}	Shaft bearing resistance	1.5	1.2	1.2	1.1
	End bearing resistance	1.4	1.25	1.25	1.15
Dynamic impact tests (multiple blow) ^{a,b}	Shaft resistance bearing	1.5	1.2	1.2	1.1
	End resistance bearing	1.4	1.2	1.2	1.1
Dynamic impact tests (closed form solutions) ^b	Shaft resistance bearing	Not permitted	Not permitted	Not permitted	1.3
	End resistance bearing	Not permitted	1.3	1.3	1.3
Wave equation analysis		Not permitted	1.6	1.5	1.4
Pile driving formulae		Not permitted	1.8	1.7	1.5
^a When dynamic impact tests <u>or rapid load tests</u> are not calibrated by site-specific static load testing, but by comparable experience only (see Table 6.3 — (NDP)), the values for γ_{Rd} are increased by: +0.1 when calibration is based on extensive comparable experience; +0.25 when calibration is based on limited comparable experience.					
^b When dynamic impact tests <u>or rapid load tests</u> are carried out on cast-in-place piles, the values for γ_{Rd} are increased by 0.2					
^c <u>If the test results demonstrate an elastic behaviour without any significant permanent movement, the model factors can be decreased by -0.1 as long as the model factor remains equal or larger as 1.0.</u>					

SC7 NOTE [#70]: CR0080
Revised columns with RockSC7 NOTE [#71]: CR0083
Revised bearing to resistance

SC7 NOTE [#72]: CR0083 revised the values for coarse soil

6.5.1.26.6.1.2 Verification of axial tensile resistance

(1) The axial tensile resistance of a single pile shall be verified using Formula (6.12):

$$F_{td} \leq R_{td} \quad (6.12)$$

where

 F_{td} is the design axial tension applied to the pile; R_{td} is the pile's design axial tensile resistance.(2) The design axial tensile resistance R_{td} shall be determined from Formula (6.13):

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

$$R_{td} = \frac{R_{t,rep}}{\gamma_{Rst} \cdot \gamma_{Rd}} \quad (6.13)$$

where

$R_{t,rep}$ is the pile's representative axial tensile resistance;

γ_{Rd} is a model factor;

γ_{Rst} is a resistance factor, specified in 6.6.3.

NOTE 1 Values of γ_{Rd} are given in 6.6.1.1

NOTE 2 R_{td} include potential cyclic degradation effects.

6.5.1.36.6.1.3 Verification of transverse resistance

(1) The transverse resistance of a single pile shall be verified using Formula (6.146.14):

$$F_{tr,d} \leq R_{tr,d} \quad (6.14)$$

where:

$F_{tr,d}$ is the design transverse force applied to the pile including an allowance for any potential transverse force due to moving ground (see 6.6.1.5);

$R_{tr,d}$ is the pile's design transverse resistance.

(2) If using the material factor approach, the design transverse resistance $R_{tr,d}$ shall be determined according to prEN 1990:2021, Formula (8.12), by applying material factors γ_M to the representative values of the material properties X_{rep} .

NOTE The values of γ_M is given in prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.4.1

(3) If using the resistance factor approach, the design transverse resistance $R_{tr,d}$ shall be determined according to prEN 1990:2021, Formula (8.13), by applying resistance factors $\gamma_{R,tr}$ to the representative transverse resistance of the single pile $R_{tr,rep}$.

NOTE The value of $\gamma_{R,tr}$ is given in 6.6.3

6.5.1.46.6.1.4 Downdrag

(1) Downdrag should be classified as a permanent action arising from the relative axial movement when ground settlement exceeds pile settlement.

(2) The design drag force due to settling ground shall be determined from Formula (6.15):

$$D_d = \gamma_{F,drag} D_{rep} \quad (6.15)$$

where:

D_d is the design drag force due to moving ground;

D_{rep} is the representative drag force due to moving ground;

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

$\gamma_{F,drag}$ is a partial action factor given in 6.6.3.

6.5.1.56.6.1.5 Transverse ground loading

- (1) Transverse forces on the pile due to moving ground should be classified as permanent actions arising from relative transverse movement between the ground and the pile.

6.5.1.66.6.1.6 Representative values of resistance

- (1) For design by calculation using the Ground Model Method, the representative value of resistance of a single pile R_{rep} shall be determined from Formula (6.166.16):

$$R_{rep} = R_{calc} \quad (6.16)$$

where:

R_{rep} is $R_{c,rep}$ for compression, $R_{t,rep}$ for tension, or $R_{tr,rep}$ for transverse resistance, as appropriate;

R_{calc} is the calculated pile resistance based on ground parameters.

- (2) For design by calculation using the Model Pile Method, the representative value of resistance of a single pile R_{rep} shall be determined from Formula (6.17):

$$R_{rep} = \min \left\{ \frac{(\cancel{R_{calc}}) R_{calc,mean} \cancel{mean}}{\xi_{mean}}; \frac{R_{calc,min} (\cancel{R_{calc}}) \cancel{min}}{\xi_{min}} \right\} \quad (6.17)$$

where:

$R_{calc,mean} (\cancel{R_{calc}}) \cancel{mean}$ is the mean calculated pile resistance for a set of profiles of field test results;

$R_{calc,min} (\cancel{R_{calc}}) \cancel{min}$ is the minimum calculated pile resistance for a set of profiles of field test results;

ξ_{mean} is a correlation factor for the mean of the (calculated) values;

ξ_{min} is a correlation factor for the minimum of the (calculated) values.

NOTE 1 Values of ξ_{mean} and ξ_{min} for the Model Pile Method are given in Table 6.5 — (NDP) Table 6.5 — (NDP) unless the National Annex gives different values.

NOTE 2 The correlation factors given in Table 6.5 (NDP) assume filed test profiles arranged on a grid with reference spacing d_{ref} of 30 m.

SC7 NOTE [#72b]
CR0068 resulted
in changes in this
clause and tables.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Table 6.5 — (NDP) Correlation factors **for Model Pile Method**

Correlation Factor ^{a,b}	Coefficient of variation (CoV)	Number of tests or profiles								
		1	2	3	4	5	7	10	≥ 20	≥ 50
ξ_{mean}	≤ 12 %	1.4	1.35	1.33	1.31	1.29	1.27	1.25	1.19	
ξ_{min}	n/a	1.4	1.27	1.23	1.20	1.15	1.12	1.08	1.06	
ξ_{min}	n/a	1.4	1.27	1.23	Use ξ_{mean} alone					
ξ_{mean}	≤ 12 %	Use ξ_{min} alone		1.30	1.28	1.28	1.27	1.26	1.25	1.25
	15 %			1.40	1.39	1.38	1.37	1.36	1.36	1.35
	20 %			1.67	1.64	1.63	1.61	1.60	1.59	1.58
	25 %			1.98	1.95	1.93	1.90	1.89	1.87	1.85
	≥ 25 %	Sub-divide the Geotechnical Design Model to reduce the CoV								

^a If all piles in a group are tested, use $\xi_{\text{mean}} = 1.0$ provided load can be transferred through the pile cap. For individually tested piles, use $\xi_{\text{mean}} = \xi_{\text{min}} = 1.0$.

^b The correlation factors given here assume field test profiles arranged on a grid with reference spacing d_{ref} of 30 m

(3) Profiles of field test results shall only be considered as a single data set if they are obtained in an area of the site with similar ground conditions and over similar depths as the installed piles.

(4) For each single data set defined in (3), the coefficient of variation (CoV) of the computed pile resistance for each profile should be determined.

(5) The values of the correlation factors ξ_{mean} and ξ_{min} for the Model Pile Method shall be determined based on the number of profiles in the single data set, whereand the coefficient of variation determined in (4) is less than 12%.

~~(5)(6)~~ In cases of a coefficient of variation greater than 12%, the single data set should be split up in different sets with smaller coefficient of variation or additional correlation factors should be provided in the National Annex for these cases.

~~(7)~~ When using the Model Pile Method, the values of ξ_{mean} and ξ_{min} may be calculated by considering adjusted for the spacing of the test profiles according to Formula (6.18) corresponding to the number of test profiles N in the area S:

$$\xi'_{\text{mean}}(S) = 1 + \frac{d_{\text{avg}}}{d_{\text{ref}}} (\xi_{\text{mean}} - 1) \text{ or } \xi'_{\text{min}}(S) = 1 + \frac{d_{\text{avg}}}{d_{\text{ref}}} (\xi_{\text{min}} - 1) \quad [6.18]$$

$$\xi'_{\text{min}} = 1 + \frac{d_{\text{avg}}}{d_{\text{ref}}} (\xi_{\text{min}} - 1)$$

where:

$\xi'_{\text{mean}}(S)$ is the value of ξ_{mean} by considering the area S corresponding to the number of test profiles N;

$\xi'_{\text{min}}(S)$ is the value of ξ_{min} by considering the area S corresponding to the number of test profiles N;

d_{ave} is the average distance horizontal spacing between the N test profiles located in the area S;

d_{ref} is a the reference horizontal spacing, equal to of 30 m for the Model Pile Method.

NOTE Formula (6.18) is applied unless the National Annex provides different formula.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

(6)(8) For design by testing, the representative value of resistance of a single pile R_{rep} shall be determined from Formula (6.19):

$$R_{rep} = \min \left\{ \frac{R_{test,mean}}{\xi_{mean}}; \frac{R_{test,min}}{\xi_{min}} \right\} \quad (6.19)$$

where:

$R_{test,mean}$ is the mean pile resistance measured in a set of load tests;

$R_{test,min}$ is the minimum pile resistance measured in a set of load tests;

ξ_{mean} is a correlation factor for the mean of the (measured) values;

ξ_{min} is a correlation factor for the minimum of the (measured) values.

NOTE 1 Values of ξ_{mean} and ξ_{min} for pile design by testing are given in Table 6.6 and Table 6.7 unless the National Annex gives different values.

NOTE 2 The correlation factors given in Table 6.6 and Table 6.7 are based on a coefficient of variation of the pile load test results of 12 %.

Table 6.6 — (NDP) Correlation factors for design by testing – Static Load Test

Correlation Factor ^a	Number of tests or profiles				
	1	2	3	4	≥ 5
ξ_{mean}	1,4	1,35	1,233	1,31	1,0529
ξ_{min}	1,4	1,27	1,0523	1,20	1,0045

^a If all piles in a group are tested, use $\xi_{mean} = 1.0$ provided load can be transferred through the pile cap. For individually tested piles, use $\xi_{mean} = \xi_{min} = 1.0$.

Table 6.7 — (NDP) Correlation factors for design by testing – Rapid Load Test and Dynamic Impact Test

Correlation Factor ^a	Correlation Factor	Number of tests							
		1	2	3	4	5	7	10	≥ 20
Rapid Load Test	ξ_{mean}	1,4	1,36	1,32	1,29	1,28	1,25	1,23	1,19
	ξ_{min}	1,4	1,28	1,23	1,19	1,15	1,13	1,1	1,06
Dynamic Impact Test	ξ_{mean}	1,4	1,36	1,32	1,29	1,28	1,25	1,23	1,19
	ξ_{min}	1,4	1,28	1,23	1,19	1,15	1,13	1,1	1,06

^a If all piles in a group are tested, use $\xi_{mean} = 1.0$ provided load can be transferred through the pile cap. For individually tested piles, use $\xi_{mean} = \xi_{min} = 1.0$.

(9) Results of pile load tests shall only be considered as a single data set if they relate to similar pile types, pile geometry, pile tip levels, loading conditions, and ground conditions.

(7)(10) When a pile is subjected to a pile load test, the values of ξ_{mean} and ξ_{min} for that pile may be taken as 1.0.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

~~(8)~~(11) The values of ξ_{mean} and ξ_{min} may be reduced by 10 % for pile groups or piled rafts that are able to redistribute load from a single pile to other piles in the group without any significant additional settlement of the foundation provided the value of the final correlation factor is not less than 1.0.

~~(9)~~(12) If ξ_{mean} and ξ_{min} are reduced according to ~~(8)~~(11), then the verification of limit states in the pile cap shall ~~consider~~ take into account the load redistribution.

~~(10)~~(1) The values of ξ_{mean} and ξ_{min} may be calculated by considering corresponding to the number of test profiles N in the area S :

$$\xi_{\text{mean}}(S) = 1 + \frac{d}{d_{\text{ref}}} (\xi_{\text{mean}} - 1) \text{ or } \xi_{\text{min}}(S) = 1 + \frac{d_{\text{ave}}}{d_{\text{ref}}} (\xi_{\text{min}} - 1) \quad (6.19)$$

~~where:~~

$\xi_{\text{mean}}(S)$ ~~is the value of ξ_{mean} by considering the area S corresponding to the number of test profiles N ;~~

$\xi_{\text{min}}(S)$ ~~is the value of ξ_{min} by considering the area S corresponding to the number of test profiles N ;~~

d_{ave} ~~is the average distance between the N test profiles located in the area S ;~~

d_{ref} ~~is the reference spacing of 30 m for the Model Pile Method.~~

NOTE ~~Formula (6.19) is applied unless the National Annex provides different formula.~~

6.5.26.6.2 Pile groups and piled rafts

(1) The design resistance of a pile group ~~or piled raft~~ $R_{d,\text{group}}$ shall be verified using Formula (6.20):

$$F_{d,\text{group}} \leq R_{d,\text{group}} \quad (6.20)$$

where:

$F_{d,\text{group}}$ is the design action applied to the pile group ~~or piled raft~~;

$R_{d,\text{group}}$ is the design resistance of the pile group ~~or piled raft~~.

(2) The design resistance of a piled raft $R_{d,\text{piled-raft}}$ shall be verified using Formula (6.21):

$$F_d \leq R_{d,\text{piled-raft}} \quad (6.21)$$

where:

F_d is the design action applied to the piled raft;

$R_{d,\text{piled-raft}}$ is the design resistance of the piled raft.

~~(2)~~(3) If using the material factor approach, the design resistance $R_{d,\text{group}}$ shall be determined according to prEN 1990:2021, Formula (8.12), by applying material factors γ_M to the representative values of the material properties X_{rep} .

NOTE The value of γ_M is given in prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.4.1

~~(3)~~(4) If using the resistance factor approach the design resistance $R_{d,\text{group}}$ ~~for vertical resistance~~ may be determined from Formula ~~(6.226.21)~~:

SC7 NOTE [#73]:
CR0170

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

$$R_{d,group} = \frac{R_{rep,group}}{\gamma_{R,group}\gamma_{Rd,group}} \text{ or } R_{d,piled-raft} = \left(\frac{\sum_i^n R_{e,rep,i}}{\gamma_{Rd}\gamma_{Rc}} + \frac{R_{rep,raft}}{\gamma_{R,raft}} \right) \quad (6.22)$$

where:

$R_{rep,group}$	Is the representative ultimate vertcl resistance of the pile group;
$\gamma_{R,group}$	is a resistance factor for the pile group axial compressive resistance;
γ_{Re}	is a resistance factor for individual pile axial compressive resistance;
$\gamma_{R,raft}$	is a resistance factor for the raft, given in 6.6.3;
$\gamma_{Rd,group}$	is a model factor for the pile group or piled raft.
$\gamma_{R,d}$	Is a model factor for a single pile, given in 6.6.1.1

NOTE The value of $\gamma_{R,group}$ is given in Table 6.7 (NDP) unless the National Annex gives different values.NOTE The value of $\gamma_{Rd,group}$ is 1.0, unless the National Annex gives different values.(5) If using the resistance factor approach the design values for the vertical compressive resistance of a piled raft $R_{d,piled-raft}$ may be determined from Formula (6.23):

$$R_{d,piled-raft} = R_{d,group} + \frac{R_{rep,raft}}{\gamma_{R,raft}} \quad (6.23)$$

where:

$R_{d,group}$	is the design value of the vertical compressive resistance of a pile group;
$R_{rep,raft}$	is a representative resistance of the raft;
$\gamma_{R,raft}$	is a resistance factor for the raft.

NOTE The value of $\gamma_{R,raft}$ is given in Table 6.7 (NDP) unless the National Annex gives different values.SC7 NOTE [#74]: CR0171
Split paragraph

6.5.3.6.3 Partial factors

6.5.3.16.6.3.1 Single piles

(1) Partial factors for the verification of the axial resistance of single piles at the ultimate limit state shall be determined according to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.4.1, using either the Resistance Factor Approach in combination with either the Ground Model Method or the Model Pile Method.

NOTE 1 Values of the partial factors for single piles are given in Table 6.8, 6.9, 6.10 for persistent and transient design situations ~~and for accidental design situations~~ unless the National Annex gives different values.

NOTE 2 ~~Either the~~ The Model Pile Method or the Ground Model Method can be used, unless the National Annex specifies otherwise.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Table 6. — (NDP) Partial factors for the verification of ultimate resistance of single piles for fundamental (persistent and transient) design situations and accidental situations

Table 6.8 — (NDP) Partial factors for the verification of ultimate resistance of single piles for fundamental (persistent and transient) design situations – Ground Model Method

Verification of	Partial factor on	Symbol	Material factor approach (MFA) – both combinations		Resistance factor approach (RFA)	
			(a)	(b)	Pile class	Ground Model Method
Axial compressive resistance	Actions: effects of actions ^a	γ_F and γ_E	Not Used		All	VC1
	Drag force due to settling ground	$\gamma_{F,drag}$				1.35
	Ground properties ^b	γ_M				Not factored
	Base and shaft resistance in compression	$\gamma_{Rb,l}$ γ_{Rs}				Base 1.2 Shaft 1.05
					Full displacement	1.2 1.05
					Partial displacement	1.3 1.05
					Replacement	1.4 1.15
					Unclassified	1.5 1.25
	Total resistance in compression	γ_{Rc}			Full displacement	1.1
					Partial displacement	1.2
Axial tensile resistance	Actions: effects of actions ^a	γ_F ; γ_E	Not Used		All	VC1
	Ground properties ^b	γ_M				Not factored
	Shaft resistance in tension	γ_{Rst}			Full displacement	1.2
					Partial displacement	1.2
					Replacement	1.3
					Unclassified	1.5
Transverse resistance	Actions and effects of actions ^{a,c}	γ_F ; γ_E	VC4 or VC1	VC3		VC1
	Ground properties ^b	γ_M	M1	M2		Not factored
	Transverse resistance	γ_{Rtr}	Not factored			1.3

^a Values of the partial factors for Verification Cases (VCs) 1, 3, and 4 are given in prEN 1990:2021 Annex A. For transverse resistance, DC1 may be used as alternative to VC4.

^b Values of the partial factors for Sets M1 and M2 are given in prEN 1997-1:2022, Table 4.7

^c Including drag force due to moving ground

SC7 NOTE [#75]: CR0082
Either partial factors on action or effect-of-action, not both. Delete the EFA and link to part 1. Similar change in all tables, even if the original comment were on clause 7

SC7 NOTE [#76]: CR0136
Delete factors for accidental situation

SC7 NOTE [#77]: CR0172

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

Table 6.9 — (NDP) Partial factors for the verification of ultimate resistance of single piles for fundamental (persistent and transient) design situations – Model Pile Method

Verification of	Partial factor on	Symbol	Material factor approach (MFA) – both combinations		Resistance factor approach (RFA)	
			(a)	(b)	Pile class	Model Pile Method
Axial compressive resistance	Actions; effects- of- actions ^a	γ_F, γ_E	Not Used		All	VC1
	Drag force due to settling ground	$\gamma_{F,drag}$				1.35
	Ground properties ^b	γ_M				Not factored
	Base and shaft resistance in compression	γ_{Rb}, γ_{Rs}			Full displacement	Base 1.2, Shaft 1.0
					Partial displacement	1.2, 1.0
					Replacement	1.2, 1.0
					Unclassified	1.35, 1.25
	Total resistance in compression	γ_{Rc}			Full displacement	1.1
					Partial displacement	
					Replacement	
Axial tensile resistance	Actions; effects- of- actions ^a	γ_F, γ_E	Not Used		All	VC1
	Ground properties ^b	γ_M				Not factored
	Shaft resistance in tension	γ_{Rst}			Full displacement	1.15
					Partial displacement	
					Replacement	
					Unclassified	1.4

^a Values of the partial factors for Verification Cases (VCs) 1, 3, and 4 are given in prEN 1990:2021 Annex A. For transverse resistance, DC1 may be used as alternative to VC4.

^b Values of the partial factors for Sets M1 and M2 are given in prEN 1997-1:2022, Table 4.7

^c Including drag force due to moving ground

SC7 NOTE [#78]: CR0082
Either partial factors on action or effect-of-action, not both. Delete the EFA and link to part 1. Similar change in all tables, even if the original comment were on clause 7

SC7 NOTE [#79]: CR0136
Delete factors for accidental situation

SC7 NOTE [#80]: CR0172

Table 6.10 — (NDP) Partial factors for the verification of ultimate resistance of single piles for fundamental (persistent and transient) design situations – Design by testing

Verification of	Partial factor on	Symbol	Material factor approach (MFA) – both combinations		Resistance factor approach (RFA)	
			(a)	(b)	Pile class	
Axial	Actions; effects, of- actions ^a	γ_F, γ_E	Not Used			VC1

SC7 NOTE [#81]: CR0082
Either partial factors on action or effect-of-action, not both. Delete the EFA and link to part 1. Similar change in all tables, even if the original comment were on clause 7

SC7 NOTE [#82]: CR0136
Delete factors for accidental situation

SC7 NOTE [#83]: CR0172

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

<u>compressive resistance</u>	<u>Drag force due to settling ground</u>	$\gamma_{F,drag}$			1.35
	<u>Ground properties^b</u>	γ_M			Not factored
	<u>Total resistance in compression</u>	γ_{Rc}		<u>Full displacement</u>	1.1
				<u>Partial displacement</u>	1.1
				<u>Replacement</u>	1.1
<u>Axial tensile resistance</u>	<u>Actions: effects of actions^a</u>	γ_F	Not Used	All	VC1
	<u>Ground properties^b</u>	γ_M			Not factored
	<u>Shaft resistance in tension</u>	γ_{Rst}		<u>Full displacement</u>	1.25
				<u>Partial displacement</u>	1.25
				<u>Replacement</u>	1.25
				<u>Unclassified</u>	1.25
^a Values of the partial factors for Verification Cases (VCs) 1, 3, and 4 are given in prEN 1990:2021					
^b Values of the partial factors for Sets M1 and M2 are given in prEN 1997-1:2022, Table 4.7					
^c Including drag force due to moving ground					

Verification of	Partial factor on	Symbol	Material factor approach (MFA) — both combinations		Resistance factor approach (RFA)			
			(a)	(b)	Pile class	model pile		ground model
Axial compressive resistance	Actions and effects of actions ¹	γ_F and γ_E	Not Used		All	VC1		
	Drag force due to settling ground	$\gamma_{F,drag}$				1.35 (1.0) ^d		
	Ground properties ²	γ_M				Not factored		
	Base and shaft resistance in compression	γ_{Rb+} and γ_{Rc}				Base	Shaft	Base and Shaft
					Full displacement	1.2 (1.1) ^d		1.2 (1.1) ^d and 1.05 (1.0) ^d
					Partial displacement	1.2 (1.1) ^d	1.0 (1.0) ^d	1.2 (1.15) ^d and 1.05 (1.0) ^d
					Replacement	1.2 (1.1) ^d		1.4 (1.2) ^d and 1.15 (1.05) ^d

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

Verification of	Partial factor on	Symbol	Material factor approach (MFA)—both combinations		Resistance factor approach (RFA)					
			(a)	(b)	Pile class		model pile		ground model	
	Total resistance in compression	γ_{Re}			Unclassified	1.35 (1.15) ^d	1.25 (1.1) ^d	1.5 (1.25) ^d	1.25 (1.1) ^d	
					Full displacement				1.1 (1.05) ^d	
					Partial displacement				1.2 (1.1) ^d	
					Replacement				1.3 (1.15) ^d	
					Unclassified	1.3 (1.15) ^d		1.4 (1.2) ^d		
					Axial tensile resistance	Actions and effects of actions ^a	γ_{Ei} and γ_{Ee}	Not Used		All
Ground properties ^b	γ_M	Not factored								
Shaft resistance in tension	γ_{Rst}		Full displacement	1.15 (1.05) ^d		1.2 (1.1) ^d				
			Partial displacement			1.2 (1.1) ^d				
			Replacement			1.3 (1.15) ^d				
Unclassified	1.4 (1.2) ^d		1.5 (1.25) ^d							
Transverse resistance	Actions and effects of actions ^{a, c}	γ_{Ei} and γ_{Ee}	VC4 (EFA) ^e	VC3	Not used					
	Ground properties ^b	γ_M	M1	M2	Not factored					
	Transverse resistance	γ_{Rtr}	Not factored		Not used					

^a—Values of the partial factors for Verification Cases (VCs) 1, 3, and 4 are given in prEN 1990:2021 Annex A. For transverse resistance, DC1 may be used as alternative to VC4.

^B—Values of the partial factors for Sets M1 and M2 are given in prEN 1997-1:2022, Table 4.7

^c—Including drag force due to moving ground.

^D—Values in brackets are given for accidental design situations.

^E—See prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.2

6.5.3-26.6.3.2 Pile groups and piled rafts

(1) Partial factors for the verification of pile groups and piled rafts at the ultimate limit state shall be determined according to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.4.1 using either the Material Factor Approach or the Resistance Factor Approach.

NOTE 1 Values of the partial factors for pile groups and piled rafts are given in Table 6.7-9 (NDP) for persistent, transient, and accidental design situations unless the National Annex gives different values.

NOTE 2 The National Annex can specify which Factor Approach to use.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Table 6.11 — (NDP) Partial factors for the verification of ultimate resistance of pile groups and piled rafts for fundamental (persistent and transient) design situations ~~and accidental situations~~

Verification of	Partial factor on	Symbol	Material factor approach (MFA) – both combinations		Resistance factor approach (RFA)
			(a)	(b)	
Vertical resistance	Actions and effects-of-actions ^a	γ_F and γ_E	VC4	VC3	VC1
	Ground properties ^b	γ_M	M1	M2	Not factored
	Vertical resistance	$\gamma_{R,group}$	Not factored		1.4 (1.1) ^c
		γ_{Re}			See Table 6.6 — (NDP)
		$\gamma_{R,piled-raft}$			1.4 (1.1) ^c
Combined axial and transverse resistance (see prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.2)	Actions and effects-of-actions ^a	γ_F and γ_E	VC4 (EFA)^d or VC1	VC3	Not used
	Ground properties ^b	γ_M	M1	M2	
	Compressive and transverse resistance	$\gamma_{R,group}$	Not factored		

^A Values of the partial factors for Verification Cases (VCs) 3 and 4 are given in prEN 1990:2021 Annex A.

^b Values of the partial factors for Sets M1 and M2 are given in prEN 1997-1:2022, Table 4.7.

^c ~~Values in brackets are given for accidental situations.~~

^d ~~See prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.2~~

SC7 NOTE [#85]:
CR0136

6.5.46.6.4 Structural design and verification

(1) The structural resistance of single piles should be verified in accordance with:

- prEN 1992-1-1 for reinforced and plain concrete, grout or mortar piles;
- prEN 1993-1-1 and EN 1993-5 for steel piles;
- EN 1994-1-1 for composite steel and concrete piles;
- EN 1995-1-1 for timber piles.

(2) Ground stiffness should be determined considering the magnitude of any axial or transverse displacement of the pile.

(3) The representative value of stiffness should be selected as either an upper or lower value, depending on which is more critical.

NOTE Upper values are sometimes critical when transversal loads are present (e.g. from settling soil).

(4) Bending stresses due to initial curvature, eccentricities and induced deflection should be considered together with stresses due to transverse load.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (5) ~~Buckling and torsional stability should be verified considering second order effects, particularly for long slender piles.~~

NOTE — ~~Annex C.13 provides calculation models to take into account buckling and second order effects.~~

- (6) ~~For fully embedded piles and rigid inclusions subjected to compression which have a high slenderness ratio (λ), or a high ratio of design axial load to the critical buckling load (N_{Ed}/N_{cr}), the structural resistance and buckling should be verified by theory of second order, when the following conditions are met:~~

SC7 NOTE [#86]:
CR0084 Revised to make
a clear link to annex C13.

- (7) ~~Pile diameter $B < B_{ref}$~~

- (8) ~~Pile length embedded in soil layers with a thickness of $h > h_{ref}$ and with a shear strength in total stress analyses $c_u < c_{u,ref}$~~

NOTE 1 ~~Annex C.12 and C.13 provide guidance for the calculation of the critical buckling load and the design buckling resistance including second order effects. $B_{ref} = 0.3$ m, $h_{ref} = 1.0$ m and $c_{u,ref} = 15$ kPa unless the National Annex gives other values.~~

NOTE 2 ~~Example of second order theory is given in Annex C.13. Annex C.13.5 provides limit values of λ and N_{Ed}/N_{cr} for fully embedded piles of different pile materials below which second order effect can be neglected.~~

6.6.7 Serviceability limit states

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 9 shall apply to piled foundations.
- (2) Serviceability behaviour of piled foundations shall be determined in accordance with 6.5.7.
- (3) Explicit verification of the serviceability of a piled foundation may be omitted provided serviceability performance of the piled foundation can be demonstrated by comparable experience.
- (4) Explicit verification of settlement may be omitted for single piles loaded in compression when founded in medium to dense coarse soils, medium to high strength fine soils, or rock, provided the inequality given in Formula (6.24.22) is verified:

$$F_{cd,SLS} \leq \kappa_{b,SLS} R_{b,rep} + \kappa_{s,SLS} R_{s,rep} \quad (6.24)$$

where:

$F_{cd,SLS}$ is the design axial compression applied to the pile with the quasi-permanent and characteristic serviceability limit state combinations, including potential downdrag forces;

$R_{b,rep}$ is the representative value of base resistance;

$R_{s,rep}$ is the representative value of shaft resistance;

$\kappa_{b,SLS}$ is a mobilization factor for base resistance in the serviceability limit state;

$\kappa_{s,SLS}$ is a mobilization factor for shaft resistance in the serviceability limit state.

NOTE The values of $\kappa_{b,SLS}$ and $\kappa_{s,SLS}$ are respectively 0.1 and 0.85 unless the National Annex gives different values.

- (5) Verification of the serviceability limit state for pile groups and piled rafts should be based on modelling that accounts for non-linear stiffness of the ground, flexural stiffness of the structure, and interaction between the ground, structures, and piles.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**6.7.6.8 Implementation of design****6.7.16.8.1 General**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10 shall apply to piled foundations.
- (2) The execution of piled foundations ~~should~~shall comply with the following execution standards:

- EN 1536 for bored piles;
- EN 12699 for displacement piles;
- EN 14199 for micropiles;
- EN 12063 for sheet piles used for bearing resistance;
- EN 1538 for diaphragm walls for bearing resistance;
- EN 12716 for jet grouting;
- EN 14679 for deep mixing.

SC7 NOTE [#87]: CR0027
Reference to execution standards
All specific references to execution standards changed to shall.

6.7.26.8.2 Inspection**6.7.2.16.8.2.1 General**

- (1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.3, the Inspection Plan should include but is not limited to:

- the location and general layout of the piled foundations;
- the sequence of works;
- the working level and working platform;
- ~~rig monitoring and instrumentation;~~
- ~~non-destructive integrity tests.~~

SC7 NOTE [#88]: CR0037
Use the same wording before lists.

- (2) ~~Ground investigation may include additional observations of spoil from drilling or boring during execution of geotechnical structure.~~

SC7 NOTE [#89]: CR0046
Implementation of design, testing, reporting. Delete unnecessary bullet points

6.7.2.2 Rig monitoring and instrumentation

- (1) ~~For continuous flight auger and continuous helical displacement piles, the piling rig should be fitted with a suitable automated instrumentation and monitoring system capable of measuring the execution metrics throughout the boring and concreting of the pile.~~

SC7 NOTE [#90]: CR0154
add permission

- (2) ~~Piling rigs used to install driven displacement piles should be fitted with a suitable automated instrumentation and monitoring system capable of measuring the execution metrics throughout the pile driving process.~~

SC7 NOTE [#91]: CR0178
Inspection and monitoring part of Execution standard. Delete Rig monitoring

- (3) ~~Installation and monitoring records should be inspected after pile execution to verify conformance of the pile to its design criteria.~~

SC7 NOTE [#92]: CR0046
Implementation of design, testing, reporting. Repeat the need to delete this sub-clause

6.7.2.3 Non-destructive integrity tests

- (1) ~~Cast in place or precast concrete piles may be subject to non-destructive integrity testing to verify the pile does not include any defects within the shaft and has not been damaged during installation.~~

SC7 NOTE [#93]: CR0178
Inspection and monitoring part of Execution standard. Delete integrity tests

- (2) The method for integrity testing may be chosen from the following:

- ~~low-strain Pile Integrity Test;~~
- ~~thermal integrity profiling;~~
- ~~cross-hole sonic logging method;~~

SC7 NOTE [#94]: CR0046
Implementation of design, testing, reporting. Repeat the need to delete this sub-clause

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

~~—distributed fibre optic sensing method.~~

~~(3) Results of dynamic impact load testing may also be used to verify pile shaft integrity.~~

~~(4) For driven precast concrete piles, the need of integrity tests may be based on evaluation of the driving based on observations and discontinuities in the drive blow record.~~

6.7.3.6.8.3 **Monitoring**

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.4 shall apply to piled foundations.

~~(1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.4, the Monitoring Plan for piled foundations should comply with the execution standards.~~

~~(2) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.4, the Monitoring Plan should include, but is not limited to, the following:~~

- ~~— settlement, lateral and distortion measurements of the supported structure;~~
- ~~— vibration measurements;~~
- ~~— settlement, lateral and distortion measurements of nearby sensitive structures.~~

~~(3) Monitoring of pile execution should be carried out for all piles over the full depth of each pile and should include, but is not limited to:~~

- ~~— piling rig monitoring and instrumentation records;~~
- ~~— drive blow and hammer energy records for driven piles;~~
- ~~— visual inspection of spoil and observations of ground conditions for auger bored and drilled piles.~~

~~NOTE — Piling rig monitoring and instrumentation records can include pull down force, duration per depth, penetration per revolution, torque.~~

~~(4)(2)~~ Installation and monitoring records should be inspected after pile execution to verify conformance of the pile to its design criteria.

6.7.4.6.8.4 **Maintenance**

~~(2)(3) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.5, the Maintenance Plan of piled foundations should comply with prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.5 the execution standards.~~

6.8.6.9 **Testing**

6.8.16.9.1 **General**

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 11 shall apply for piles.

(2) Pile load tests ~~should~~ **shall** conform to the following standards:

- EN ISO 22477-1 for static compression load testing;
- prEN ISO 22477-2 for static tension load testing;
- prEN ISO 22477-3 for transverse load testing;
- EN ISO 22477-4 for dynamic load testing;
- EN ISO 22477-10 for rapid load testing.

SC7 NOTE [#95]:
CR0178 Inspection and monitoring part of Execution standard.
Revise text on Monitoring

SC7 NOTE [#96]:
CR0046 Implementation of design, testing, reporting. Revised text

SC7 NOTE [#97]: CR0027
Reference to testing standards
All specific references to testing standards changed to shall.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (3) Ultimate Control Tests shall be carried out when verification of limit states is to be based on the results of pile load testing.
- (4) Ultimate Control Tests should be performed when using a pile type or installation method for which there is no comparable experience or when piles have not previously been tested under comparable ground or loading conditions.
- (5) Serviceability Control Tests should be carried out on working piles during the main piling works for the purpose of verifying acceptable pile movement.
- (6) Control Tests should also be carried out when observations during pile execution indicates conditions that deviate from the anticipated Ground Model.
- (7) Inspection Tests should be carried out to verify the integrity of all piles susceptible to installation damage or other piles when execution procedures cannot be monitored in a reliable way.

6.8.26.9.2 Trial piles

- (1) Trial piles should be installed and tested before commencement of the piling works to confirm the chosen pile type, its design, dimensions, resistance, and performance.
- (2) If only one trial pile is installed, it should be located in the most adverse ground conditions identified on the project site.
- (3) Execution of the trial pile shall be performed in an identical manner to that proposed for the working piles ~~and shall comply with the execution standards.~~
- (4) In cases where it is impractical to install or construct full-size large diameter trial piles, a smaller diameter trial pile may be installed provided that:
 - the ratio of the trial pile to working pile diameter is not less than 0.5;
 - the trial pile is constructed or installed in an identical manner to the proposed working piles;
 - the trial pile is instrumented to allow separation of the base and shaft resistance during any test.

SC7 NOTE [#98]:
CR0046 Implementation of design, testing, reporting. Delete unnecessary last part of sentence

6.8.36.9.3 Test proof load

- (1) The test proof load shall be determined allowing for potential drag force, transverse ground force, and temporary support load.
- (2) The proof load P_P for Ultimate Control Tests shall be determined from Formula (6.25):

$$P_P \geq R_{rep} + D_{sup} \quad (6.25)$$

where:

R_{rep} is the representative value of the pile's ultimate resistance, estimated from previous load testing, calculation, or comparable experience;

D_{sup} is the ~~representative vertical or transverse~~ temporary support force ~~provided by the ground.~~

SC7 NOTE [#99]:
CR0179

- (3) The value of D_{sup} should be estimated using superior (upper) ground strength and stiffness properties.
- (4) In presence of a significant vertical temporary support force provided by the ground, the pile should be instrumented.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (5) When the pile ultimate resistance is unknown at the time of test, the proof load P_p may be determined from Formula (6.26):

$$P_p \geq \gamma_{Rd} \cdot \xi \cdot \gamma_R \cdot F_{d,ULS} + D_{add} + D_{sup} \quad (6.26)$$

where:

γ_{Rd} is the model factor used in the verification of ultimate resistance;

ξ is the correlation factor (if any) used in the verification of ultimate resistance;

γ_R is the resistance factor to be used in the verification of ultimate resistance;

$F_{d,ULS}$ is the design action at the ultimate limit state excluding any drag force or transverse force as appropriate to the type of load test.

- (6) The test proof load P_p for Serviceability Control Tests shall be determined from Formula (6.27):

$$P_p = \gamma_{test} \cdot F_{d,SLS} + D_{add} + D_{sup} \quad (6.27)$$

where:

γ_{test} is a partial factor;

$F_{d,SLS}$ is the design action at the serviceability limit state of the quasi-permanent combination excluding any drag force or transverse force as appropriate to the type of load test.

NOTE The value of γ_{test} is 1.35, unless the National Annex gives a different value.

- (7) Determination of the proof load for transverse load testing should take account of the level at which the applied load or transverse force from moving ground is to be applied and any differences in geometry and head fixity of the test pile compared to the pile under service conditions.

6.8.46.9.4 Static load tests

- (1) Static load tests in compression should comply with EN ISO 22477-1.
- (2) The interpretation of load testing should take account of the systematic and random variations that exist in the ground and the variability of the test pile installation and its influence when deriving the pile's resistance.
- (3) Separation of the base and shaft resistance components from a static compression load test may be performed using instrumented test piles or specialist testing procedures.
- (4) In an Ultimate Control Test, the ultimate compressive resistance shall be determined as the load corresponding to a downward plunging failure of the pile, with adjustments for temporary support resistance.
- (5) The ultimate compressive resistance should be mathematically defined as the resistance corresponding to infinite settlement.
- (6) Provided the Ultimate Control Test has been taken to a sufficiently high load level to mobilise a large proportion of the base resistance, an extrapolated asymptotic value of pile compressive resistance at infinite movement may be adopted.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

(7) As an alternative to (5) and (6), the ultimate compressive resistance may be determined as:

- the maximum applied test load; or
- the test load at a pile head settlement equal to 10 % of the pile's base diameter.

(8) For a tension load test, the ultimate tension resistance R_t shall be determined as the load corresponding to pull-out failure of the pile corresponding to infinite vertical displacement.

NOTE The limiting criteria to be used is as specified by the relevant authority or where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by the relevant parties.

(9) Interpretation of horizontal load test results shall take account of the different deformation mechanism between a load test carried out on a free-headed pile and the in-service behaviour where the pile caps and sub-structure can result in significant head fixity to the pile.

NOTE 1 It is unlikely that a horizontal load test can achieve sufficient displacement to fully mobilize the resistance of the ground to any appreciable depth.

NOTE 2 Under test conditions, the behaviour of the pile will be dominated by the strength, stiffness and variability of the ground over the top few metres of the pile. The pile diameter due to oversized or undersized ores and the concrete rate stiffness dependency will also affect the results.

6.8.5.6.9.5 Rapid load tests

(1) Rapid load tests should comply with EN ISO 22477-10.

(2) The compressive pile resistance R_c determined from the results of a rapid load test should be set equal to the maximum frictional resistance, with allowance for temporary support resistance.

(3) For rapid load tests carried out on piles installed in fine fills and soils, an additional allowance for potential consolidation and creep should be applied.

6.8.6.6.9.6 Dynamic impact tests

(1) Dynamic impact load tests should comply with EN ISO 22477-4.

(2) The compressive pile resistance R_c determined from the results of a ~~rapid load~~ dynamic impact test should be set equal to the maximum frictional resistance, with allowance for any drag force or temporary support resistance.

SC7 NOTE [#100]:
CR0180

~~(3)~~ Where Ultimate Control Tests using dynamic load test are used to confirm design by calculation or testing, the pile's total resistance and an estimate of its shaft and base resistances may be determined from an analysis of test measurements using signal matching.

~~(3)(4)~~ For dynamic impact tests carried out on piles installed in fine fills and soils, an additional allowance for potential consolidation and creep should be applied.

SC7 NOTE [#101]:
CR0180

6.9.6.10 Reporting

(1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 12, pile test reports shall include full details of the pile execution including type of pile, method of installation, size, length, material properties, and other observations made during installation.

(2) Pile load test reports shall comply with 6.9.4-6.9.6 and the test standards given in 6.9.1.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (3) In addition to (2), pile load test reports shall include applied load and displacement measurements at all stages of the test, together with results of any instrumentation or external measurements.

7 Retaining structures**7.1 Scope and field of application**

- (1) This Clause shall apply to structures that retain ground, groundwater, engineered fill, and surface water.

7.2 Basis of design**7.2.1 Design situations**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2.2 shall apply to retaining structures.

7.2.2 Geometrical properties**7.2.2.1 General**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.3 shall apply to retaining structures.

7.2.2.2 Ground surfaces

- (1) Values for the geometry of the retained material shall take account of any variation in actual field values and anticipated excavation or possible scour or erosion in front of the retaining structure.

NOTE Anticipated excavation includes post-construction excavation in front of the structure, e.g. due to buried services maintenance.

- (2) The design level of the resisting ground should be lowered below the nominal level by an amount Δa given by:

- for a cantilever wall, $\Delta a = \min(0.1 H; 0.5 \text{ m})$, where H is wall height above excavation level;
- for a supported wall, $\Delta a = \min(0.1 h_s; 0.5 \text{ m})$, where h_s is the distance between the lowest support and excavation level at each construction stage.

- (3) Values of Δa smaller than those given in (2), including $\Delta a = 0$, may be used when the surface level is specified to be controlled reliably throughout the relevant execution period.

- (4) Values of Δa larger than those given in (2) should be used when the surface level is particularly uncertain.

NOTE This can be relevant for marine structures during dredging operations or for erosion conditions.

7.2.3 Zone of influence

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.2.1 shall apply to retaining structures.

7.2.4 Actions and environmental influences**7.2.4.1 General**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1 shall apply to retaining structures.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**7.2.4.2 Permanent and variables actions**

(1) Actions for retaining structures shall include, but are not limited to:

- stages of excavation, construction, operation, and maintenance;
- anticipated future structures or any anticipated future loading or unloading within the zone of influence of the geotechnical structure;
- effects on waterfront structures, ice, and wave force;
- potential adverse effects of repeated surcharge loading;
- potential actions arising from temperature changes in struts or integral bridges.

NOTE Seismic actions are defined in EN 1998 (all parts)

(2) Loads that act within the zone of influence may be considered as concentrated or uniform depending on their nature and proximity to the retaining structure.

7.2.4.3 Cyclic and dynamic actions

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1.3 shall apply to retaining structures.

7.2.4.4 Environmental influences

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1.5 shall apply to retaining structures.

(2) The adverse effects of temperature changes shall be considered, especially when determining the loads in struts and props due to wall movements.

NOTE Direct sunlight effects can often be reduced by specific measures, such as coating or painting.

(3) Measures should be taken to prevent frost heave and potential ice lenses forming in the ground behind a retaining structure.

NOTE 1 Frost heave can occur in frost susceptible soil, especially in silt.

NOTE 2 Formation of ice lenses can occur in silt with access to free water leading to a significant volume expansion of the soil.

NOTE 3 Possible measures include selection of suitable backfill material, drainage, or insulation.

7.2.5 Limit states**7.2.5.1 Ultimate Limit States**

(1) In addition to the limit states specified in prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.1, the following ultimate limit states shall be verified for all retaining structures:

- failure of a structural element, including the wall, anchor, rock bolt, corbel, or strut;
- failure of the connection or interface between structural elements;
- combined failure in the ground and in the structural element;
- excessive movement of the retaining structure, which may cause collapse of the structure or nearby structures or services that rely on it (see prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.1.2 (1)).

(2) Potential ultimate limit states other than those given in (1) should be verified.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

(3) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.1, the following ultimate limit states shall be considered for gravity walls and for composite retaining structures:

- bearing resistance failure of the ground below the base, taking into account eccentricity and inclination of loads;
- failure by sliding along the base;
- failure by overturning or by toppling (see [Clause 5](#)).

SC7 NOTE [#102]:
CR0036 Editorial in clause 7 and 8

(4) In addition to this Clause 7, ultimate limit states for gravity walls shall be verified according to Clause 5.

(5) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.1, the following ultimate limit states shall be considered for embedded retaining walls:

- failure by rotation or translation of the wall or parts thereof;
- failure by lack of vertical equilibrium.

(6) Ultimate limit states for embedded retaining walls shall be verified according to this Clause 7.

7.2.5.2 Serviceability Limit States

(1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 9, the following serviceability limit states shall be verified for all retaining structures:

- movements of the retaining structure that cause damage or affect the appearance or the use of the structure or nearby structures or services;
- unacceptable leakage through or beneath the structure;
- unacceptable change in the groundwater conditions induced by retaining structure itself.

(2) Potential serviceability limit states other than those given in (1) should be verified.

7.2.6 Robustness

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.4 shall apply to retaining structures.

7.2.7 Ground investigation

7.2.7.1 General

(1) prEN 1997-2:2022, 5 shall apply to retaining structures.

(2) Investigations should include the installation of sufficient piezometers to measure groundwater variations within each relevant geotechnical unit considering seasonal, tide and fluvial changes.

(2)(3)

7.2.7.2 Minimum extent of field investigation

(1) The depth and horizontal extent of the investigation shall be sufficient to determine the ground conditions within the zone of influence of the structure according to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2.1.2. In addition to EN1997-2 Clause 5.4.3, the depth of investigation for retaining structures shall be determined.

SC7 NOTE [#103]:
CR0147 Systematic revision of all clauses on minimum extent of field investigation

NOTE The minimum depth d_{min} of the ground investigation is given in Table 7.1 unless the National Annex gives another value.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Table 7.1 — (NDP) Minimum depth of field investigation for piled foundation

Application	Minimum depth	Illustration
<u>Gravity walls</u>	$d_{min} = \max(H_{ret}; 6 \text{ m})$ <u>from foundation level</u> Depending on foundation type also consider with: <u>5.2.7.2 or 6.2.7.2</u>	
<u>Embedded walls</u>	<u>For laterally supported wall:</u> $d_{min} = 2 H_{ret}$ <u>For laterally unsupported wall:</u> $d_{min} = 3 H_{ret}$	
<u>H_{ret} is height of the supported ground</u>		

(4)(2)

~~(2) The depth of field investigation shall comply with prEN 1997-3:2022, 5.2.7.2 for gravity retaining structures and with prEN 1997-3:2022, 6.2.7.2 for embedded retaining structures with particular attention paid to hydraulic conditions at the bottom of the wall.~~

~~(3) The field investigation shall determine ground conditions over the full height of the retaining wall including any overlying fills or low strength soils.~~

SC7 NOTE [#104]:
CR0036 Editorial in clause 7 and 8

7.2.8 Geotechnical reliability

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.2 shall apply to retaining structures.

7.3 Materials

7.3.1 Ground properties

(1) prEN 1997-2:2022, Clause 7 to Clause 12 shall apply to retaining structures.

7.3.2 Plain and reinforced concrete

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.5 shall apply to retaining structures.

(2) Exposure classes for concrete shall comply with EN 206

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

~~(1)(3) Concrete cover requirements shall comply with EN 1992-1-1.~~

SC7 NOTE [#105]:
CR0157

7.3.3 Steel

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.6 shall apply to retaining structures.

~~7.3.4 Sprayed concrete~~

~~(1) Clause 10 shall apply to retaining structures.~~

SC7 NOTE [#106]:
CR0159

~~7.3.5~~ 7.3.4 Timber

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.7 shall apply to retaining structures.

~~7.3.6~~ 7.3.5 Masonry

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.8 shall apply to retaining structures.

~~7.3.7~~ 7.3.6 Other structural materials

~~(1) Materials other than those specified in 7.3 may be used provided they comply with a relevant material standard. Materials other than concrete, steel, timber or masonry may be used provided they comply with a material standard specified by the relevant authority or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by appropriate parties.~~

SC7 NOTE [#107]:
CR0165

~~NOTE The relevant standard can be specified in the National Annex or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by appropriate parties.~~

~~7.3.8~~ 7.3.7 Improved ground properties

(1) ~~In case~~When ground improvement techniques are used, either to form the retaining structure itself, or to improve the adjacent ground, the determination of the representative values of the properties of improved ground material properties shall comply with Clause 11.

SC7 NOTE [#108]:
CR0162

7.4 Groundwater

7.4.1 General

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 6 shall apply to retaining structures.

(2) Potential obstruction of natural groundwater flow caused by l embedded retaining walls shall be considered.

(3) Retaining walls should be designed for an accidental design situation corresponding to a water table at the surface of the retained material unless the three following conditions are met:

- a persistent groundwater control system is installed (see Clause 12); or
- infiltration is prevented; or
- efficient piezometric control is ensured.

(4) Unfavourable potential effects of hydraulic gradients due to dewatering shall be considered when calculating groundwater pressures and resulting effective stresses (see 7.6.5).

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**7.4.2 Groundwater control systems**

- (1) Clause 12 shall apply to retaining structures.
- (2) When the safety and the serviceability of the structure depends on the successful performance of a drainage system, a Maintenance Plan shall be specified.

7.5 Geotechnical analysis**7.5.1 General**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 7 shall apply to retaining structures.
- (2) The limit states specified in 7.6 and 7.7 should be verified using one or more of the following calculation models:
 - an analytical model (including limit equilibrium model and limit analysis);
 - a semi-empirical model (including earth pressure envelopes);
 - a numerical model (including beam-on-spring models or continuum models).

NOTE Further details of these models are given in Annex D.

- (3) Prestressing forces exerted on the retaining structure by anchors or struts should be included in the calculation model.

7.5.2 Determination of earth pressures

- (1) Determination of earth pressures shall take account of the expected failure mechanisms and deformations at the limit state under consideration.

~~NOTE 1~~ ~~NOTE 2~~ The term “earth pressure” includes ground pressure from rock.

~~NOTE 1~~ The magnitudes of earth pressures and directions of resultant forces are strongly influenced by horizontal and vertical movements of the retaining structure in relation to the ground ~~block~~, which may vary with time, ~~successive design situations~~ ~~stages of execution~~, and limit states being considered.

~~NOTE 2~~ The term “earth pressure” includes ground pressure from rock.

- (2) Total stress analysis may only be adopted if comparable experience exists.
- (3) Calculations of earth pressure and the forces resulting from them shall consider, but are not limited to, the following:
 - shear strength and weight density of the ground;
 - amount and direction of the movement of the wall relative to the ground;
 - surcharge on the ground surface;
 - inclination of the ground surface;
 - inclination of the wall to the vertical;
 - wall roughness;
 - rigidity of the structure and its supporting system relative to the stiffness of the ground;
 - water levels and the seepage forces in the ground;
 - strain and stiffness time-dependence for low-permeability fine soils;
 - effect of compaction;
 - horizontal and vertical equilibrium for the entire retaining structure;

SC7 NOTE [#109]:
CR0190

SC7 NOTE [#110]:
CR0194

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- effect of initial stresses and stiffness of the ground;
- inclination of the ground strata and potential discontinuities;
- the swelling potential of the ground;
- anisotropy of the ground for mechanical and hydraulic properties;
- potential for strain ratcheting due to imposed cyclic actions.

(4) The shear stress mobilized at the interface between the ground and the structure shall be determined by the ground-structure interface coefficient ($\tan \delta$), where δ is the inclination of stresses applied to the interface.

(5) The value of the ground-structure interface coefficient ($\tan \delta$) shall comply with Formula (7.17.1):

$$\delta \leq k_{\delta} \varphi \quad (7.1)$$

where:

φ is the value of the ground's angle of friction;

k_{δ} is a constant depending on the roughness of the ground structure interface and local disturbance during execution.

NOTE 1 The value of the interface coefficient depends on the relative displacement of the retaining structure in relation to the ground block that might, in specific circumstances, reduce the inclination of earth pressure.

NOTE 2 This reduction in inclination is automatically considered when using continuum numerical models. Explicitly introducing a value lower than the maximum is only relevant for analytical models that do not automatically take the relative displacement into account.

NOTE 3 The assessment of reduced values of the interface coefficient in the presence of structural forces is considered in 7.6.4.2 and more guidance is given in Annex D.

(6) In fine soils, it may be assumed that $k_{\delta} = \frac{a}{c}$, where a is the adhesion to the wall and c the soil's cohesion.

(7) The value of k_{δ} shall not exceed 1.0.

(8) A value of $k_{\delta} = 1,0$ may be assumed for concrete cast directly against soil and for stone infill or backfill used for crib walls and gabions.

(9) The value of k_{δ} should not exceed 2/3 for retaining structures formed with smooth surfaces.

NOTE This limit can also be applied conservatively to retaining structures with rough surfaces.

(10) A value of $k_{\delta} = 0$ should be used for steel sheet piles walls immediately after installation into clay or peat.

(11) In the case of structures retaining rock masses, calculations of the earth pressures shall take account of the effects of discontinuities in the rock mass, as well as the strength anisotropy of the rock material, with particular attention to their

NOTE 1 The orientation, spacing, aperture, roughness of the discontinuities and the mechanical characteristics of any joint filling material are important in this respect.

NOTE 2 The mechanical resistance of the matrix itself can be a limiting parameter in specific materials, such as schist.

SC7 NOTE [#111]:
CR0194

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**7.5.3 Limiting values of earth pressure**

- (1) Limiting values of earth pressures shall be determined considering the relative movement of the ground and the wall at failure and the corresponding shape of the failure surface.
- (2) When using tabulated values of earth pressure coefficients or computer software based on limit equilibrium analysis, the consistency between limiting values of earth pressure assuming straight failure surfaces and interface parameters δ should be considered in order to avoid unsafe results (see 7.5.5).
- (3) In cases where struts, anchors, or similar structural elements impose restraints on movement of the retaining structure, the possibility of more adverse earth pressures than limiting active and passive values should be considered.

7.5.4 Values of active earth pressure

SC7 NOTE [#112]:
CR0011 Minimum earth pressure

- (1) For ground in an active state, the component of the total earth pressure normal to the wall face (p_a) at a depth (z_a) below ground surface may be determined from Formula (7.2):

$$p_a = p'_a + u_a \geq p_{a,min} \quad (7.2)$$

where:

p'_a is the component at depth z of the effective active earth pressure normal to the wall face, defined in (7.3);

u_a is the groundwater pressure acting at depth z on the active side of the wall;

$p_{a,min}$ is the minimum value of p_a .

NOTE $p_{a,min}$ is provided to increase the robustness of the structure.

- (2) A minimum value of $p_{a,min} > 0$ should be used when very large cohesion values result in no effective pressure being applied over a significant height of the wall.
- (3) The component of the effective active earth pressure normal to the wall face (p'_a) at a depth (z_a) below ground surface may be determined from Formula (7.3):

$$p'_a = K_{ay}(\gamma_{a,av}z_a - u_a) - K_{ac}c' + K_{aq}q_a \quad (7.3)$$

where, in addition to the symbols defined for Formula (7.2):

$\gamma_{a,av}$ is the average weight density of the ground above depth z_a ;

c' is the soil's effective cohesion;

q_a is the vertical surcharge applied at the ground surface; and

K_{ay} , K_{ac} , and K_{aq} are active earth pressure coefficients.

NOTE Values of K_{ay} , K_{ac} , and K_{aq} are given in Annex D.

- (4) When using a total stress calculation of undrained behaviour (see 7.5.2), Formula (7.47.4) may be used instead of (7.27.2) and (7.37.3):

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

$$p_a = (\bar{\gamma}_a z_a) - K_{ac,u} c_u + q_a \geq p_{a,min} \quad (7.4)$$

where, in addition to the symbols defined for Formula (7.27.2):

c_u is the soil's undrained shear strength;

$K_{ac,u}$ is an active earth pressure coefficient for undrained conditions.

NOTE Values of $K_{ac,u}$ are given in Annex D.

(5) The value of $p_{a,min}$ shall be ≥ 0 .

NOTE The value of $p_{a,min}$ is 10 % of the total vertical stress unless the National Annex gives different values ~~or a different procedure to determine $p_{a,min}$.~~

(6) A value of $p_{a,min} > u_a$ should be used when very large cohesion values result in no pressure being applied over a significant height of the wall.

7.5.5 Values of passive earth pressure

(1) For ground in a passive state, the component of the total earth pressure normal to the wall face (p_p) at a depth (z) below formation level may be determined from Formula (7.57.5):

$$p_p = p'_p + u_p \quad (7.5)$$

where, in addition to the symbols defined for Formula (7.2):

p'_p is the component at depth z of the effective passive earth pressure normal to the wall face, defined in (7.6);

u_p is the groundwater pressure acting at depth z on the passive side of the wall.

(2) The component of the effective passive earth pressure normal to the wall face (p'_p) at a depth (z_p) below formation level may be determined from Formula (7.67.6):

$$p'_p = K_{py}(\gamma_{p,av} z_p - u_p) + K_{pc} c' + K_{pq} q_p \quad (7.6)$$

where, in addition to the symbols defined for Formula (7.57.5):

$\gamma_{p,av}$ is the average weight density of the ground above depth z_p ;

q_p is any permanent vertical load applied at formation level; and

K_{py} , K_{pc} , and K_{pq} are passive earth pressure coefficients.

NOTE Values of K_{py} , K_{pc} , and K_{pq} are given in Annex D.

(3) Coefficients of passive earth pressure should be cautiously assessed for high values of the friction angle ($> 40^\circ$).

(4) When using a total stress analysis for calculation of undrained behaviour, Formula (7.77.7) may be used instead of Formula (7.57.5):

$$p_p = (\bar{\gamma}_{p,av} z_p) + K_{pc,u} c_u + q_p \quad (7.7)$$

where, in addition to the symbols defined for Formula (7.57.5):

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

$K_{pc,u}$ is a passive earth pressure coefficient for undrained conditions.

NOTE Values of $K_{pc,u}$ are given in Annex D.

- (5) If limiting values of passive earth pressure are determined by assuming planar failure surfaces, the ground-structure interface coefficient in Formula (7.17.1) should be reduced to $\tan \delta = 0$.
- (6) Only permanent loads shall be considered on the passive side of the retaining structure.

7.5.6 At-rest values of earth pressure

- (1) The earth pressure coefficient at rest K_0 should be determined according prEN 1997-2:2022, 7.1.7 taking into account in addition the type of retaining structures and the conditions of installation.

NOTE Some examples of conditions that affect the earth pressure coefficient at rest include the ratio of overconsolidation in clay, a cylindrical wall layout on plan, and the wall's installation method.

- (2) For ground in an at-rest state, the total earth pressure (p_0) at a depth (z_0) below ground surface may be determined from Formula (7.87.9):

$$p_0 = p'_0 + u = K_0(\gamma_{o,av}z_0 - u + q) + u \quad (7.8)$$

where:

- p'_0 is the effective at-rest earth pressure at depth z ;
- u is the groundwater pressure;
- K_0 is the at-rest earth pressure coefficient.
- $\gamma_{o,av}$ is the average weight density of the ground above depth z_0 ; and
- q is the vertical load applied at the surface of the ground.

NOTE Calculation models to determine K_0 are given in Annex D.

7.5.7 Intermediate values of earth pressure

- (1) Intermediate values of earth pressure, between active and passive limits, shall be determined considering the amount of wall movement and its direction relative to the ground.
- (2) The intermediate values of earth pressures acting on the wall may be determined using empirical rules, beam on springs models, or continuum numerical models.

NOTE Guidance on suitable calculation models and determination of ground stiffness, which plays an important part in soil structure interaction, is given in Annex D.

7.5.8 Compaction pressures

- (1) The determination of earth pressures acting behind the wall shall consider any additional pressures generated by compacting backfill, in relation with the procedures adopted for its compaction.

NOTE Guidance for determining these additional pressures is given in Annex D.

- (2) For integral bridges, enhanced values of earth pressure shall be determined considering the total movement of the abutment from its maximum expansion position to its maximum contraction

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

position, and the direction of movement being considered in conjunction with the position of the abutment.

NOTE For a given position of the abutment, there will be a maximum and minimum potential pressure depending on whether the abutment is moving in or out of the backfill.

7.5.9 Groundwater pressures

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 6 shall apply to retaining structures.

7.6 Ultimate limit states**7.6.1 General**

- (1) Effects of actions derived from ultimate limit state verifications shall be considered when checking the structural resistance of the retaining structure and associated supports, as well as the pull-out resistance of anchors.

7.6.1.1 Verification by the Observational Method

- (1) For all retaining structures, when verification of limit states by the Observational Method is performed, prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.7 shall apply.

7.6.2 Overall stability

- (1) The overall stability of a retaining structure shall be verified in accordance with Clause 4.

NOTE [Figure 7.1](#) gives examples of limit modes for overall stability of retaining structures.

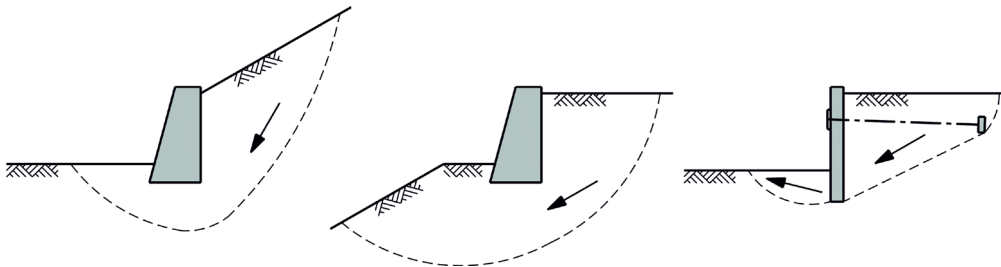


Figure 7.1 — Examples of limit modes for overall stability of retaining structures

- (2) If measures are necessary to ensure the overall stability of the site and the retaining structure plays a part in those measures, then the stability of failure surfaces that intersect the retaining structure shall be verified.
- (3) If a continuum numerical model is used for overall stability calculations, it should also be used to verify the ultimate limit states given in 7.6.4.1 (rotational resistance), 7.6.5 (stability of excavations), and 7.6.7 (structural failure).

NOTE This does not exclude that other calculation models are additionally used when checking local failure mechanisms.

- (4) When a numerical model is used for overall stability calculations with elastic properties for structural elements, forces in ~~to~~ these structural elements shall be checked according to prEN 1992 (all parts), prEN 1993 (all parts), prEN 1995 (all parts) or prEN 1996 (all parts) depending on the nature of structural elements (concrete, steel, timber, masonry).

SC7 NOTE [#113]:
CR0190

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (5) When a numerical model is used for overall stability calculations with elasto-plastic properties for structural elements shall be verified according to prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.2 with the ultimate resistance of structural elements defined according to prEN 1992 (all parts), prEN 1993(all parts), prEN 1995(all parts) or prEN 1996 (all parts) depending on the nature of structural elements (concrete, steel, timber, masonry).
- (6) If the rotational resistance of a retaining structure is verified using the resistance factor approach, with partial factors only applied to passive earth pressure (see 7.6.8), one of the following approaches should be used for overall stability calculations:
- the effects of actions into the retaining wall are checked using a continuum numerical model;
 - failure surfaces intercepting the retaining structure are checked using a limit equilibrium method;
 - the overall stability is checked by considering an additional model factor γ_{Rd} .

NOTE Unless the National Annex gives different values, the value of γ_{Rd} is 1.2 for persistent design situations and sensitive structures, 1.05 for transient design situations, and 1.0 for deep failure mechanisms that have no possibility of interfering with the retaining structure.

7.6.3 Gravity walls

- (1) Overall stability of a gravity retaining structure shall be verified according to Clause 4 and 7.6.2.
- (2) The resistance of a gravity retaining structure to bearing, sliding, overturning resistance and toppling shall be verified according to Clause 5.

7.6.4 Embedded walls**7.6.4.1 Rotational resistance**

- (1) Resistance to loss of rotational equilibrium may be verified using analytical calculation models or continuum numerical models.

NOTE 1 [Figure 7.2](#) gives examples of mechanisms involving failure of embedded walls.

NOTE 2 Further information about calculation models is given in Annex D.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

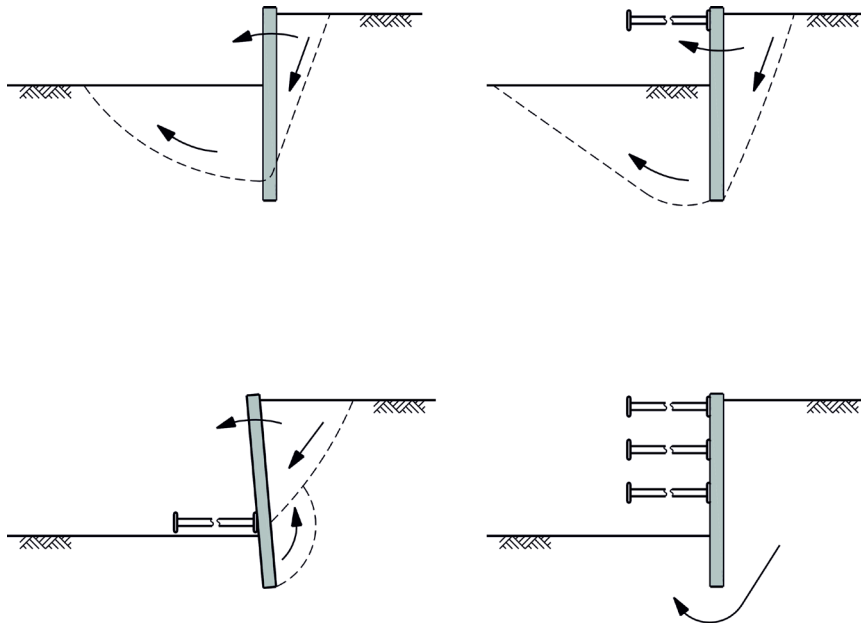


Figure 7.2 — Examples of failure mechanisms for embedded walls

7.6.4.2 Bearing resistance

- (1) The bearing resistance of an embedded wall that is subject to significant imposed vertical forces, shall be verified according to either Clause 5 or Clause 6, depending on its embedded length.

NOTE Significant vertical forces can be imposed on an embedded wall by inclined anchors.

- (2) It shall be verified that the shaft friction mobilized to ensure the vertical equilibrium is compatible with the horizontal equilibrium in terms of stress inclination.

NOTE 1 Shaft friction acting downwards on the active side of the wall or upwards on the passive side considerably change the coefficients of earth pressure in an adverse way.

NOTE 2 Guidance is provided in 7.5.1(6) and Annex D.

7.6.5 Stability of excavations

- (1) Resistance to failure by heave of the bottom of excavations due to unloading of the ground shall be verified.

NOTE Guidance about suitable models is provided in Annex D.

- (2) Resistance to basal heave during excavation in fine soils should be verified assuming undrained ground conditions.
- (3) Resistance to basal heave should be verified assuming drained conditions when undrained conditions are likely to be less critical, particularly in layered soils.
- (4) Resistance to basal heave in coarse soils should be verified considering hydraulic gradients in the soil.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (5) In the presence of hydraulic gradients, it shall be verified that limit states due uplift (see prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.2.3.2), hydraulic heave (see prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.2.4.2), and internal erosion or piping (see prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.2.4.3) or bottom failure mechanisms, i.e. basal heave, are not exceeded.

NOTE See Annex D for basal heave.

- (6) Measures should be taken to avoid the adverse effects of upward hydraulic gradients.

NOTE Examples of preventive measures include: deep relief wells to protect the passive zone close to embedded walls; increased embedment; embedment down to impervious layers and grouting.

- (7) If upward hydraulic gradients cannot be avoided in the passive zone close to the retaining structure, passive earth resistance shall be reduced accordingly and potential failure due to soil erodibility shall be checked.

7.6.6 Supporting elements

- ~~(1)~~ In cases where a combined failure of supporting elements and the ground could occur, ground-structure interaction shall be considered allowing for the difference in strength and stiffness of the ground and that of the supporting element.

NOTE Supporting elements include, but are not limited to walls, piles, anchors, props and reinforcing elements.

- ~~(3)~~(2) It shall be verified that the supporting element can resist a design force effect given by Formula (7.9) for Verification Case 1, 2 and 3 and given by Formula (7.10) for Verification Case 4:

$$E_d = \gamma_{sd} \max(\gamma_{sd} F_{d,ULS}; \gamma_F F_{d,SLS}) \quad (7.9)$$

$$E_d = \gamma_{sd} \max(F_{d,ULS}; \gamma_E F_{d,SLS}) \quad (7.10)$$

where:

$F_{d,ULS}$ is the design value of the action that the supporting element shall provide to prevent an ultimate limit state in the supported structure;

$F_{d,SLS}$ is the design value of the action that the supporting element shall provide to prevent a serviceability limit state in the supported structure;

γ_{sd} is a model factor to accounting address for the concentration of load in the supporting element due to arching effects behind stiff retaining structures; and depending on the stiffness of the retained wall and the arching effects;

γ_F is a partial factor applied to $F_{d,SLS}$ used to convert it to an ultimate value. Its value is given in EN1990, a SLS value to an ULS value (using DC4).

γ_E is a partial factor applied to $F_{d,SLS}$ to convert it to an ultimate value. Its value is given in EN1990.

NOTE 1 Formula (7.9) and (7.10) ensure that the supporting element can resist the largest force that could occur in it during the entire design life of the supported structure.

NOTE 2 The value of the model factor, γ_{sd} , is 1.0 unless the National Annex gives another value.

NOTE 2 The value of the partial factor, γ_E , is 1.35 according to VC4 unless the National Annex gives another value.

- (3) The design value $F_{d,SLS}$ should include the effects of prestressing the supporting element.

SC7 NOTE [#114]:
CR0182 Revised to
two different
formulas

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)**7.6.7 Structural failure**

- (1) The structural resistance of retaining structures and their component members shall be verified in accordance with:
- prEN 1992 (all parts) for reinforced or plain concrete retaining walls;
 - FprEN 1993 (all parts) for steel retaining walls;
 - EN 1994 (all parts) for composite steel and concrete retaining walls;
 - EN 1995 (all parts) for timber members in retaining walls;
 - prEN 1996 (all parts) for masonry retaining walls.
- (2) Structural resistance shall be verified considering all geotechnical failure mechanisms that interfere with the retaining structure.

7.6.8 Partial factors

- (1) Partial factors for the verification of retaining structures at the ultimate limit state shall be determined according to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.4.1, using either the Material Factor Approach or the Resistance Factor Approach

NOTE 1 The National Annex can specify which Factor Approach to use

NOTE 2 Values of the partial factors are given in [Table 7.2](#) (NDP) for persistent and transient design situations, unless the National Annex gives different values.

NOTE 3 Additional guidelines for use of partial factors for numerical models, is given in prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.2.

- (2) If the resistance factor approach is used, the partial factor γ_{re} should be applied to the resultant passive earth resistance.

NOTE When using the resistance factor approach, the partial factors γ_{re} and γ_E can be combined into a single factor applied to passive soil resistance.

SC7 NOTE [#115]:
CR0190

- (3) When using the resistance factor approach, explicit verification of rotational resistance may be omitted if the upper part of the retaining structure is supported by anchors, struts, or slabs and the ratio between the passive earth resistance and the mobilized earth pressure in front of the wall is greater or equal to $\gamma_{re} \gamma_E$.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Table 7.2 — (NDP) Partial factors for the verification of ground resistance against retaining structures for fundamental (persistent and transient) design situations and accidental design situations

Verification of	Partial factor on	Symbol	Material factor approach (MFA) – both combinations (a) and (b) or the single combination (c)			Resistance factor approach (RFA)	
			(a)	(b)	(c)(b)	(d)	(e)
Overall stability	See Clause 4						
Bearing resistance of gravity walls	See Clause 5						
Bearing resistance of embedded walls	See Clause 6						
Bearing/sliding resistance of gravity walls	Actions, effects-of-actions	γ_F, γ_E	VC4 ^a	VC3 ^a	VC1 ^a	VC1 ^{a,d}	VC4 ^{a,d,e}
	Ground properties	γ_M	M1 ^b	M2 ^b	M2 ^b	Not factored	
	Bearing resistance	γ_{RN}	Not factored			1.4	
	Sliding resistance	γ_{RT}				1.1	
Bearing/rotational resistance of embedded walls Basal heave ^d	Actions, effects-of-actions	γ_F, γ_E	VC4 ^a	VC3 ^a	n.a.	VC1 ^a	VC4 ^a
	Ground properties	γ_M	M1 ^b	M2 ^b	n.a.	Not factored	
	Vertical resistance, basal heave	γ_R	Not factored			1.4	
	Passive earth resistance	γ_{Re}				1.4	
Rotational resistance	Actions and effects-of-actions	γ_{*} and γ_E	VC4 ^a	VC3 ^a		VC4 ^a (EFA) ^d	
	Ground properties	γ_M	M1 ^b	M2 ^b		Not factored	
	Passive earth resistance	γ_{Re}, γ_E	Not factored			1.4 γ_E (1.12 γ_E) ^e	
Basal heave	See Annex D and Clause 5						

SC7 NOTE [#118]:
CR0082 Either partial factors on action or effect-of-action, not both. Delete the EFA and link to part 1. Similar change in all tables, even if the original comment were on clause 7

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- | | |
|---|--|
| a | Values of the partial factors for Verification Cases (VCs) 3 and 4 are given in prEN 1990. |
| b | Values of the partial factors for Sets M1 and M2 are given in prEN 1997-1:2022, Table 4.7. |
| c | Values in brackets are for accidental situations. |
| d | See prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.2. |
| e | For basal heave see Annex D |
| f | Use combination (e) except where specified otherwise in 5.6.6 (2) |

7.7 Serviceability limit states**7.7.1 General**

- (1) Where relevant, the assessment of design values of earth pressures should consider initial stresses in and the stiffness and strength of the ground and the stiffness of the structural elements.

7.7.2 Displacements

- (1) Limiting values of ground movement around retaining structures shall comply with prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2.5 and 9.3, considering the tolerance to displacements of supported structures and utilities within the zone of influence.
- (2) Ground movement around retaining structures, and their effects on supported structures and services, shall always be checked against comparable experience.
- (3) Determination of ground movement around retaining structures shall consider the sequence of work.
- (4) Vibrations caused by traffic loads or construction machinery close to the retaining wall should be considered when estimating ground movements around retaining structures.

NOTE Guidance on traffic loads is given in prEN 1991-2.

- (5) When linear ground behaviour is assumed, the stiffness adopted for the ground and structural materials should be defined according to the potential range of deformation and the potential stress paths.

NOTE When linear behaviour is assumed differential movements in the zone of influence of the retaining structure are usually under-estimated, as well as the effects of ground movements of adjacent structures.

7.8 Implementation of design**7.8.1 General**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10 shall apply to retaining structures.
- (2) The execution, and control of concrete gravity walls ~~should~~ shall comply with EN 13670.
- (3) The execution, and control of steel sheet pile walls ~~should~~ shall comply with EN 12063.
- (4) The execution, and control of diaphragm walls ~~should~~ shall comply with EN 1538.
- (5) The execution, and control of pile walls ~~should~~ shall comply with EN 1536, EN 14199, or EN 12699 depending on type of piles.

SC7 NOTE [#119]:
CR0027 Reference to execution standards
All specific references to execution standards changed to shall.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (6) The execution, and control of steel combined walls and high modulus walls ~~should~~shall comply with EN 12063.
- (7) The execution, and control of deep mixing and jet grouting walls ~~should~~shall comply with EN 14679 and EN 12716 respectively.

7.8.2 Inspection**7.8.2.1 General**

- (1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.3, the Inspection Plan should include, but is not limited to:
 - verification of ground and groundwater conditions, and of the location and general layout of the retaining structure and any adjacent settlement sensitive structure (above and below ground);
 - verification of the sequence of works, and control of ground excavation levels, as well as temporarily applied loads behind the retaining structure;
 - for gravity retaining structures, verification of the quality of foundation ground, including as necessary placement of a concrete screed or a drainage layer properly compacted.

7.8.2.2 Water flow and groundwater pressures

- (1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.3, the Inspection Plan should include, but is not limited to, measures to check:
 - adequacy of systems to ensure control of groundwater pressures in all aquifers where excess pressure could affect stability of slopes or base of excavation, including artesian pressures in an aquifer beneath the excavation;
 - disposal of water from dewatering systems;
 - depression of groundwater table throughout entire excavation to prevent boiling or quick conditions, piping and disturbance of formation by construction equipment;
 - diversion and removal of rainfall or other surface water;
 - efficient and effective operation of dewatering systems throughout the entire construction period, considering encrusting of well screens, silting of wells or sumps;
 - wear in pumps;
 - clogging of pumps
 - control of dewatering to avoid disturbance of adjoining structures or areas;
 - observations of piezometric levels;
 - effectiveness, operation and maintenance of water recharge systems, if installed; and
 - effectiveness of sub-horizontal borehole drains.
- (2) In addition to (1), the Inspection Plan should include, but is not limited to, measures to check:
 - groundwater flow and pressure regime;
 - effects of dewatering operations on groundwater table;
 - effectiveness of measures taken to control seepage inflow;
 - internal erosion processes and piping;
 - chemical composition of groundwater; and
 - corrosion potential.

7.8.3 Monitoring

- (2) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.4, the Monitoring Plan should include, but is not limited to:

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- settlements at established time intervals of adjoining structures or areas, more especially in the case of compressible or weak quality soil layers;
- evolution of existing cracks in adjacent structures;
- piezometric or groundwater levels under buildings or behind the structure, or in adjoining areas, especially if permanent dewatering systems are installed;
- deflection or displacement of retaining structures;
- behaviour of temporary or permanent support systems, such as anchors or struts; and
- the required degree of water tightness.

7.8.4 Maintenance

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.5 shall apply to retaining structures.

(2) ~~In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.5, for permanent retaining structures, the Maintenance Plan should include specifications relative to maintenance of sensitive devices, including anchors, drains and pumping wells.~~

SC7 NOTE [#120]:
CR0046 Implementation of design, testing, reporting. Delete unnecessary paragraph

7.9 Testing

(1) prEN 1997:2022, 11 ~~and prEN 1997-2:2022, 12~~ shall apply to retaining structures.

(2) The efficiency of any dewatering system ~~should shall~~ be tested before the beginning of excavation, in accordance with EN ISO 22282-4.

SC7 NOTE [#121]:
CR0027 Reference to testing standards
All specific references to testing standards changed to shall.

7.10 Reporting

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 12 shall apply to retaining structures.

SC7 NOTE [#122]:
CR0046

8 Anchors**8.1 Scope and field of application**

(1) This Clause shall apply to temporary and permanent anchors that transmit a tensile force from the anchor head through a free anchor length over a resisting element to a load resisting ~~ground formation of soil or rock.~~

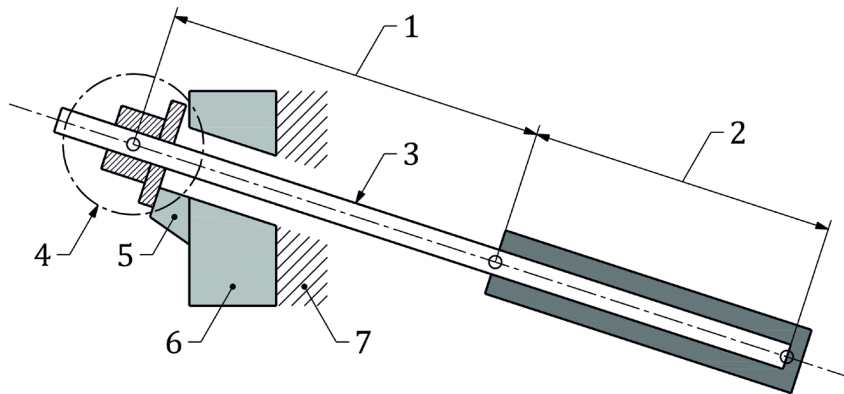
SC7 NOTE [#123]:
CR0010 Anchors and Rock bolts

NOTE 1 This includes anchors within the scope of EN 1537 and mechanical anchors with a free anchor length (such as screw, harpoon, and expander anchors).

NOTE 2 ~~Figure 8.1~~ ~~Figure 8.1~~ shows an anchor within the scope of this clause.

SC7 NOTE [#124]:
CR0036 suggest a reference to clause 10.5. But this were not added assuming that CR0010 is the common conclusion.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)



Key

- 1 free anchor length
- 2 ~~fixed anchored length~~resisting element (e.g. ~~fixed anchor length~~ or the grout body)
- 3 tendon
- 4 anchor head
- 5 load transfer block
- 6 anchored structure
- 7 ~~soil/rock~~ground

SC7 NOTE [#125]:
CR0010 Anchors and Rock bolts

SC7 NOTE [#126]
CR0036 also gave adjustments of the text. Kept the CR0010 version.

Figure 8.1 — Grouted anchor within the scope of Clause 8

(2) Tension elements without a free length shall be designed according to Clause 6 or Clause 10.

NOTE 1 For tension elements without a free length such as piles and micropiles see Clause 6

NOTE 2 For tension elements without a free length such as soil nails and rock bolts see Clause 10.

(3) Anchor walls providing fixity for dead-man anchors shall be designed according to Clause 7.

8.2 Basis of design

8.2.1 Design situations

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2.2 shall apply to anchors.

8.2.2 Geometrical properties

8.2.2.1 ~~General~~

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.3 shall apply to anchors.

(2) The required free anchor length shall be determined in the design of the anchored structure.

(3) The anchor head shall be designed to tolerate angular deviations complying with EN 1537.

(4) The anchor head shall be designed to allow the tendon to be stressed, proof-loaded, and locked-off and (if required) released, de-stressed, and re-stressed.

SC7 NOTE [#127]:
CR0165

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (5) The anchor head shall be designed to accommodate deformations and load variation that can occur during the design service life of the structure.
- (6) Measures shall be taken to avoid adverse interactions between anchors that are located close to each other.

NOTE Details are given in Annex E.

- (7) The resisting ground should be sufficiently distant from the anchored structure to avoid any adverse interaction between the two.
- (8) The orientation of the anchor should be chosen to enable self-stressing under deformation.
- (9) If self-stressing under deformation is not possible, the adverse effects of potential failure mechanisms shall be considered.
- (10) The orientation of the anchor should be chosen to optimize the transfer of load into the resisting ground.

8.2.3 Zone of influence

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.2.1 shall apply to anchors.

SC7 NOTE [#128]:
CR0165

8.2.4 Actions and environmental influences**8.2.4.1 General**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1 shall apply to anchors.

8.2.4.2 Permanent and variable actions

- (1) Design values of the anchor force and lock off load shall be obtained from the verification of limit states for the anchored structure.
- (2) Anchor forces required to support slopes, cuttings, and embankments shall comply with Clause 4.
- (3) Anchor forces required to support retaining structures shall comply with Clause 7.
- (4) ~~For uplift design values of the A~~ anchor forces required to support structures subjected to uplift shall be determined according to exceed the resistance required by prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.1.3.2.
- (5) The lock-off load shall not give rise to a limit state in the ground, in the anchored or in the supported structures.
- (6) It shall be verified that the lock-off load is sufficient to ensure that the anchor resistance can be restrictions without exceeding the serviceability limit state of both the anchored and adjacent structures.

SC7 NOTE [#129]:
CR0026 Uplift for Anchors Return to previous wording in relation to determining the anchor force

8.2.4.3 Cyclic and Dynamic actions

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022 4.3.1.3 shall apply to anchors.

8.2.4.4 Environmental influences

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022 4.3.1.5 shall apply to anchors.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (2) The potential adverse effect of chemical components of ground or groundwater according to EN 1537 shall be taken into account for design for durability.

8.2.5 Limit states**8.2.5.1 Ultimate Limit States**

- (1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.1, the following ultimate limit states shall be verified for all anchors:
- structural failure of the tendon or anchor head;
 - rupture at the interface between the tendon and the grout body;
 - rupture at the interface between the grout body or the resisting element and the resisting ground;
 - loss of anchor force by displacement of the resisting element due to creep, deformations or fall-out of ground behind;
 - limit states in anchored or adjacent structures, including those consequence of testing and pre-stressing;
 - excessive deformation of the anchored structure.

- (2) Potential ultimate limit states other than those given in (1) should be verified.

- (3) For a group of anchors, verification shall be based on the most critical failure surface.

NOTE Depending on spacing and the profile of ground strength, this can involve displacement of part of or the whole anchored ground body, often combined with pull-out of the distant ends of the anchors.

8.2.5.2 Serviceability Limit States

- (1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 9, the following serviceability limit states shall be verified for all anchors:
- deformation of the anchored structure;
 - increase of anchor load during the design service life;
 - loss of anchor force by displacement of the resisting element due to creep, deformations or fall-out of ground behind.

- (2) Potential serviceability limit states other than those given in (1) should be verified.

8.2.6 Robustness

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022 Clause 4.1.4 shall apply to anchors.

8.2.7 Ground investigation**8.2.7.1 General**

- (1) prEN 1997-2:2022, 5 shall apply to anchors.
- (2) The zone of ground into which tensile forces are transferred should be included in ground investigations.
- ~~(3) The ground investigation should determine the potential influence of difficulties caused by, but not limited to:~~

~~— potential obstructions to drilling;~~

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- the process of borehole drilling (drillability);
- abrasivity;
- anchor borehole instability;
- flow of groundwater in or out of the borehole;
- geometrical properties of discontinuities and weakness zones in ground;
- borehole axis deviations; and
- loss of grout from the borehole.

SC7 NOTE [#130]:
CR0152 - This text is moved to part 2. See CRs in part 2

SC7 NOTE [#131]: CR0147
Systematic revision of all clauses on minimum extent of field investigation

8.2.7.2 Minimum extent of field investigation

- (1) The depth and horizontal extent of the field investigation shall be sufficient to determine the ground conditions within the zone of influence of the structure according to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2.1.1. In addition to EN1997-2 Clause 5.4.3, the depth of investigation for anchors shall be determined.

NOTE The minimum depth d_{min} of the ground investigation is given in Table 8.1 unless the National Annex gives another value.

Table 8.1 — (NDP) Minimum depth of field investigation for anchors

Application	Minimum depth	Illustration
Anchors	$d_{min} = 2m$ from the lowest anchor downward $z_{min} = 2m$ from the end of the longest anchor	

(1)

- (2) The depth and horizontal extent of the field investigation should be sufficient to ensure that:

- the Ground Model within the zone of influence of the anchors is confirmed;
- no underlying stratum will affect the anchor design;
- groundwater conditions are well defined; and
- the geometry of discontinuities and of the weak zones in the zone of influence of the anchors are well defined.

8.2.8 Geotechnical reliability

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.2 shall apply to anchors.
- (2) Anchors shall be classified in GC2 or GC3.

8.3 Materials

8.3.1 Ground Properties

- (1) prEN 1997-2:2022, Clause 7 to 12 shall apply to anchors.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**8.3.2 Steel**

~~(1) Materials other than those specified in x.3 may be used provided they comply with a relevant material standard.~~

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.6 shall apply to anchors.

8.3.3 Grout

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.4 shall apply to anchors.

8.3.4 Other materials

~~(1) Materials other than those specified in 8.3 may be used provided they comply with a relevant material standard.~~

~~NOTE The relevant standard can be specified in the National Annex or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by appropriate parties. If a material other than steel is used for the anchor tendon, it shall be checked independently as specified by the relevant authority or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by the relevant parties.~~

SC7 NOTE [#132]:
CR0161

8.4 Groundwater~~8.3.5~~ **8.4.1 General**

~~(1)~~ prEN 1997-1:2022, 6 shall apply to anchors.

8.4.2 Groundwater control systems

~~(1) Clause 12 shall apply to anchors.~~

SC7 NOTE [#133]:
CR0164

~~(1)~~

~~8.4.3~~ **8.4.5 Geotechnical analysis**

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 7 shall apply to anchors.

(2) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 7, the geotechnical analysis shall address all limit state verifications listed in 8.2.5.

~~8.4.4~~ **8.5.6 Ultimate limit states**~~8.5.1~~ **8.5.1.6.1 General**

(1) The design value of the ultimate limit state resistance of an anchor shall satisfy Formula (8.1).

$$E_{d,ULS} \leq \min(R_{ad,ULS}; R_{td}) \quad (8.1)$$

where

$E_{d,ULS}$ is the design value of the effects of actions ~~at~~ for the ultimate limit state;

$R_{ad,ULS}$ is the design value of an anchor's geotechnical resistance at the ultimate limit state;

R_{td} is the design value of the tensile resistance of the structural element.

(2) $E_{d,ULS}$ shall be evaluated according to 4.5.4 and 7.6.6 and prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.1.3.

SC7 NOTE [#134]: CR0086
Subscripts and other minor
editorial changes.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

(3) $E_{a,ULS}$ shall include the effect of anchor lock-off load.

SC7 NOTE [#135]:
CR0049

8.5.28.6.2 Geotechnical resistance

(1) Anchors shall only be used if their geotechnical design and construction have been verified by:

- investigation or suitability tests; or
- comparable experience.

NOTE 1 Anchors are verified by investigation and suitability tests unless the National Annex states otherwise.

NOTE 2 Comparable experience is defined in prEN 1997-1:2022, 3.1.2.3

(2) Acceptance tests shall be carried out on all anchors.

(3) Investigation, suitability and acceptance tests on grouted anchors should comply with EN ISO 22477-5.

(4) In addition to (2), the measured value of the geotechnical resistance of a grouted anchor at the ultimate limit state shall be determined for each distinct geotechnical unit from a minimum of:

- three investigation or suitability tests, when using Test Method 1 specified in EN ISO 22477-5;
- two investigation tests and three suitability tests, when using Test Method 3 specified in EN ISO 22477-5.

(5) For non-grouted anchor types, the minimum number of tests shall comply with (4) unless otherwise specified by the relevant authority or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by the relevant parties.

(6) The measured value of the geotechnical resistance of a grouted anchor at the ultimate limit state ($R_{am,ULS}$) shall be obtained from the results of an anchor test using Formula (8.2):

$$R_{am,ULS} = \min(R_{am}(\alpha_{ULS}); P_p) \quad (8.2)$$

where:

$R_{am}(\alpha_{ULS})$ is the measured value of the anchor's geotechnical resistance complying with the ultimate limit state criterion, α_{ULS} ;

P_p is the proof load.

(7) For grouted anchors, the ultimate limit state criterion α_{ULS} in Formula (8.2) shall be the creep rate:

- α_1 for Test Method 1;
- α_3 for Test Method 3.

NOTE 1 The values of α_1 and α_3 are given in Table 8.4 (NDP), unless the National Annex gives different values.

NOTE 2 The load relating to the physical pull-out resistance can be higher than the value of the load corresponding to the creep rates given above.

(8) The measured value of the geotechnical resistance of a non-grouted anchor at the ultimate limit state ($R_{am,ULS}$) shall be obtained from the results of anchor test using Formula (8.3):

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

$$R_{am,ULS} = \min(R_{am}(C_{ad,ULS}); P_p) \quad (8.3)$$

where:

$R_{am}(C_{ad,ULS})$ is the measured value of the anchor's geotechnical resistance complying with the ultimate limit state criterion, $C_{ad,ULS}$;

P_p is the proof load.

(9) For non-grouted anchors, $C_{ad,ULS}$ should be specified by the relevant authority or, where not specified, be agreed for a specific project by the relevant parties.

NOTE For non-grouted anchors, $C_{ad,ULS}$ can be given in the National Annex.

(11) If the ultimate limit state criterion is not reached during a test, P_p shall be taken as $R_{am,ULS}$.

(12) The characteristic value of an anchor's geotechnical resistance at the ultimate limit state $R_{ak,ULS}$ shall be determined from Formula (8.4.4):

$$R_{ak,ULS} = \frac{(R_{am,ULS})_{\min}}{\xi_{ULS}} \quad (8.4)$$

where:

$(R_{am,ULS})_{\min}$ is the minimum value of $R_{am,ULS}$ measured in a number of tests;

ξ_{ULS} is a correlation factor taking into account the number of tests.

NOTE The value of ξ_{ULS} is 1.0 unless the National Annex gives a different value.

(13) The design value of an anchor's geotechnical ultimate limit state resistance $R_{ad,ULS}$ shall be determined from Formula (8.5.5):

$$R_{ad,ULS} = \frac{R_{ak,ULS}}{\gamma_{Ra,ULS}} \quad (8.5)$$

where:

$R_{ak,ULS}$ is the characteristic value of the anchor's geotechnical resistance at the ultimate limit state;

$\gamma_{Ra,ULS}$ is a partial factor on the anchor's geotechnical resistance at the ultimate limit state, given in 8.6.4.

8.5.3.6.3 Structural resistance

(1) The design value of the ultimate limit state resistance of the structural elements of an anchor shall comply with EN 1993-5 and with Formula (8.6.6):

$$E_{d,ULS} \leq R_{td} \quad (8.6)$$

where:

$E_{d,ULS}$ is the design value of the effects of actions at ultimate limit state (see formula 8.2);

R_{td} is the design value of the tensile resistance of the structural element.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

(2) The structural design of steel tendons under a proof load should comply with EN ISO 22477-5.

8.5.48.6.4 Partial factors

(1) Partial factors for the verification of anchors at the ultimate limit state shall be determined according to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.4.1, using the Resistance Factor Approach in combination with either Text Method 1 or Test Method 2.

NOTE 1 The National Annex can specify which Test Method to use.

NOTE 2 Values of $\gamma_{Ra,ULS}$ are given in Table 8.2 (NDP) for persistent, transient, and accidental design situation unless the National Annex gives different values.

Table 8.2 — (NDP) Partial factors for the verification of geotechnical resistance of anchors for fundamental (persistent and transient) and accidental design situations at the ultimate limit state

Verification of	Partial factor on	Symbol	Resistance factor approach (RFA)	
			Test Method 1	Test Method 3
Geotechnical resistance of an anchor	Geotechnical resistance at the ultimate limit state	$\gamma_{a,ULS}$	1,1 ^{a,b} (1,05) ^c	1,1 ^a (1,05) ^c
^a See Formula (8.58.5) ^b See Formulae (8.138.13) and (8.158.15) ^c Values in brackets are for accidental design situations				

SC7 NOTE [#136]: CR0136

8.68.7 Serviceability limit states

8.68.7.1 General

(1) If Test Method 3 is used to determine the ultimate limit state resistance of a grouted anchor, then its geotechnical resistance at the serviceability limit state should be verified in Suitability and Acceptance Tests against the critical creep load P_c determined in a previous Investigation Test.

NOTE In Test Method 1, the serviceability limit state of a grouted anchor is implicitly verified by verification of the ultimate limit state.

(2) If Test Method 3 is used, the anchor's design resistance ($R_{ad,SLS}$) shall comply with Formula (8.78.7):

$$E_{d,SLS} \leq R_{ad,SLS} \quad (8.7)$$

where:

$E_{d,SLS}$ is the design value of the effects of action of the maximum anchor force, including the lock-off load, and sufficient to prevent the serviceability limit state in the anchored structure;

$R_{ad,SLS}$ is the design value of the anchor's geotechnical resistance at the serviceability limit state.

SC7 NOTE [#137]: CR0086
Subscripts and other minor editorial changes.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**8.6.28.7.2 Geotechnical resistance**

- (1) If Test Method 3 is used, the measured serviceability limit state resistance $R_{am,SLS}$ of an anchor shall be determined from a minimum of two investigation tests in each geotechnical unit.
- (2) The measured geotechnical resistance of a grouted anchor at the serviceability limit state ($R_{am,SLS}$) shall be determined from Formula (8.88.8):

$$R_{am,SLS} = \min(R_{am}(\alpha_{SLS}); P_C; P_P) \quad (8.8)$$

where:

- $R_{am}(\alpha_{SLS})$ is the measured value of the anchor's geotechnical resistance complying with α_{SLS} ;
- α_{SLS} Is the serviceability limit state criterion for grouted anchors, given in 8.9.58.9.2;
- P_C is the critical creep load P_c evaluated in Test Method 3 of EN ISO 22477-5;
- P_P is the proof load.
- (3) The measured geotechnical resistance of a non-grouted anchor at the serviceability limit state ($R_{am,SLS}$) shall be determined from Formula (8.98.9):

$$R_{am,SLS} = \min(R_{am}(C_{ad,SLS}); P_C; P_P) \quad (8.9)$$

where:

- $R_{am}(C_{ad,SLS})$ is the measured value of the anchor's geotechnical resistance at complying with $C_{ad,SLS}$;
- $C_{ad,SLS}$ is the serviceability limit state criterion for non-grouted anchors;
- P_C is the critical creep load P_c evaluated in Test Method 3 of EN ISO 22477-5;
- P_P is the proof load.
- (4) For non-grouted anchors, $C_{ad,SLS}$ should be specified by the relevant authority or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by the relevant parties.

NOTE $C_{ad,SLS}$ can be given in the National Annex.

- (5) The characteristic value of the geotechnical resistance of an anchor at the serviceability limit state ($R_{ak,SLS}$) shall be determined from Formula (8.10):

$$R_{ak,SLS} = (R_{am,SLS})_{\min} \quad (8.10)$$

where:

- $(R_{am,SLS})_{\min}$ is the minimum value of $R_{am,SLS}$ measured in a number of tests.
- (6) The design value of the geotechnical resistance of an anchor at the serviceability limit state ($R_{ad,SLS}$) shall be determined from Formula (8.11):

$$R_{ad,SLS} = \frac{R_{ak,SLS}}{\gamma_{Ra,SLS}} \quad (8.11)$$

where:

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

$R_{ak,SLS}$ is the characteristic value of the anchor's geotechnical resistance at the serviceability limit state;

$\gamma_{Ra,SLS}$ is a partial factor on the anchor's geotechnical resistance at the serviceability limit state, given in 8.9.

8.6.38.7.3 Partial factors

- (1) Partial factors for the verification of anchors at the serviceability limit state shall be determined according to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.4.1, using the Resistance Factor Approach in combination with either Text Method 1 or Test Method 3

NOTE Value of partial factors is given in [Table 8.3](#) (NDP) unless the National Annex give different values.

Table 8.3 — (NDP) Partial factors for the verification of geotechnical resistance of anchors at the serviceability limit state

Verification of	Partial factor on	Symbol	Resistance factor approach (RFA)	
			Test Method 1	Test Method 3
Geotechnical resistance of an anchor	Resistance of a permanent anchor at the serviceability limit state	$\gamma_{Ra,SLS}$	Not used	1.2 ^a
	Resistance of a temporary anchor at the serviceability limit state			1.1 ^a
Suitability and Acceptance Tests	Resistance of a permanent anchor at the serviceability limit state	$\gamma_{Ra,SLS,test}$		1.25 ^b
	Resistance of a temporary anchor at the serviceability limit state			1.15 ^b
^a See Formula (8.118.14)				
^b See Formulae (8.138.13) and (8.158.15)				

8.78.8 Implementation of design**8.7.18.8.1 General**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10 shall apply to anchors.
- (2) Execution, supervision, inspection and monitoring of grouted anchors ~~should shall~~ comply with EN 1537.
- (3) Execution of non-grouted anchors should be as specified by the relevant authority or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by the relevant parties.
- (4) In addition to (2) the specifications shall be given in the Geotechnical Design Report and in the execution specification.
- (5) Prior to their usage, it should be demonstrated that the anchor components have the required performance and durability as specified by the relevant authority or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by the relevant parties.

SC7 NOTE [#138]:
CR0027 Reference to execution standards All specific references to execution standards changed to shall.

SC7 NOTE [#139]:
CR0046 Implementation of design, testing, reporting. Revise text under general so can delete under 8.8.2, 8.8.3, 8.8.4

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**8.7.2 ~~Supervision~~**

- (1) ~~prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.2 shall apply to anchors.~~
- (2) ~~In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.2, supervision of the installation and testing of anchors should comply with EN 1537.~~

8.7.3 ~~8.2~~ Inspection

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.3 shall apply to anchors.
- (2) Ground investigation may include additional observations of spoil from drilling or boring during execution of geotechnical structure.

~~(1)(3)~~

- (2) ~~In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.3, inspection of the installation and testing of anchors should comply with EN 1537.~~

8.7.4 ~~8.3~~ Monitoring

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.4 shall apply to anchors.
- (2) ~~In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.4, monitoring of grouted anchors should comply with EN 1537.~~

8.7.5 ~~8.4~~ Maintenance

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.5 shall apply to anchors.

8.8 ~~8.9~~ Testing**8.8.1 ~~8.9.1~~ General**

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 11 shall apply to anchors.
- (2) Testing of grouted anchors ~~should~~ shall comply with one of the test methods given in EN ISO 22477-5.

NOTE 1 Test Method to be used can be specified in the National Annex.

NOTE 2 Limiting values for creep in investigation, suitability and acceptance tests are given in ~~Table 8.4~~ Table 8.3 (NDP) unless the National Annex gives different values.

Table 8.4 — (NDP) Limiting criteria for investigation, suitability and acceptance tests at the ultimate and serviceability states

Test method	Parameter ^a	Anchor type	Investigation test α_{ULS}	Suitability test		Acceptance test	
				α_{ULS}	α_{SLS}	α_{ULS}	α_{SLS}
				(8.128.12)	(8.138.13)	(8.148.14)	(8.158.15)
1	α_1	All	2 mm	2 mm	Not used	2 mm	Not used
3	α_3	Temporary	5 mm	Not used	1,2 mm	Not used	2,5 mm
		Permanent			1,0 mm		1,5 mm

^a Creep rate per log cycle of time

SC7 NOTE [#140]:
CR0027 Reference to execution standards
All specific references to execution standards changed to shall.

SC7 NOTE [#141] CR0046
Implementation of design, testing, reporting. Revise text under general so can delete under 8.8.2, 8.8.3, 8.8.4

SC7 NOTE [#142]
CR0057 Delete the clause on supervision

SC7 NOTE [#143]:
CR0027 Reference to execution standards
All specific references to execution standards changed to shall.

SC7 NOTE [#144] CR0046
Implementation of design, testing, reporting. Revise text under general so can delete under 8.8.2, 8.8.3, 8.8.4

SC7 NOTE [#145]:
CR0154 add permission

SC7 NOTE [#146]:
CR0027 Reference to execution standards
All specific references to execution standards changed to shall.

SC7 NOTE [#147] CR0046
Implementation of design, testing, reporting. Revise text under general so can delete under 8.8.2, 8.8.3, 8.8.4

SC7 NOTE [#148]:
CR0027 Reference to testing standards
All specific references to testing standards changed to shall.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (3) Testing of non-grouted anchors should be carried out in accordance with EN ISO 22477-5, unless specified otherwise by the relevant authority or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by the relevant parties.

~~8.9.20.1.1~~ **Grout**

~~(1) The compressive strength of grout used for load transfer shall be verified by testing prior to the use of grout for anchor installation.~~

~~(2)(1) The testing of compressive strength of grout used for load transfer shall be conducted by two series of tests for every 20 m² of mixed grout.~~

~~(2)(1) Each series of tests shall comprise 3 samples.~~

SC7 NOTE [#149]:
CR0028 Table of content
Move section on grout to
end of the sub-clause and
change the heading

~~8.8.38.9.2~~ **Investigation tests**

- (1) The proof load in investigation tests should be estimated from the expected geotechnical resistance of the anchor at the ultimate limit state.

NOTE Limit values for creep at the proof load in investigation tests are given in 8.9.1

- (2) Grouted anchors with tendon bond lengths spaced less than 1,5 m centre to centre should be tested in groups of three anchors unless comparable experience has shown that the interaction has no quantifiable adverse effects.

- (3) Anchors for investigation tests should comply with EN ISO 22477-5.

~~8.8.48.9.3~~ **Suitability tests**

- (1) Suitability tests shall be used to verify that specified criteria are not exceeded at a proof load, P_P , determined from Formula (8.128.12) for Test Method 1 or (8.138.13) for Test Method 3:

$$P_P \geq \xi_{a,ULS,test} \cdot \gamma_{Ra,ULS} \cdot E_{d,ULS} \quad (8.12)$$

$$P_P \geq \xi_{a,SLS,test} \cdot \gamma_{Ra,SLS,test} \cdot E_{d,SLS} \quad (8.13)$$

where:

$E_{d,ULS}$	is the design value of the effects of actions at the ultimate limit state (see formula 8.2);
$E_{d,SLS}$	is the design value of the maximum anchor force, including the lock-off load, and sufficient to prevent the serviceability limit state in the anchored structure;
$\gamma_{Ra,ULS}$	is a partial factor on the anchor's geotechnical resistance at the ultimate limit state, given in 8.6.4;
$\gamma_{Ra,SLS,test}$	is a partial factor on the anchor's geotechnical resistance in suitability and acceptance tests at the serviceability limit state, given in 8.7.3;
$\xi_{a,ULS,test}$, $\xi_{a,SLS,test}$	are correlation factors, taking account of the number of suitability tests.

NOTE 1 The values of $\xi_{a,ULS,test}$ and $\xi_{a,SLS,test}$ are 1,0 unless the National Annex gives different values.

NOTE 2 Limit values for creep in suitability tests are given in 8.9.1

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (2) Unless comparable experience has shown that the interaction has no quantifiable adverse effects, grouted anchors with tendon bond lengths spaced at less than 1,5 m centre to centre, should be tested in groups of three anchors.
- (3) Grouted anchors for suitability tests should comply with EN ISO 22477-5.
- (4) The apparent tendon free length of a grouted anchor should comply with EN 1537.

8.8.58.9.4 Acceptance tests

- (1) Acceptance tests shall be carried out on all anchors prior to their lock off and before they become operational.
- (2) Acceptance tests shall be used to verify that specified limiting criteria are not exceeded at the proof load, P_p , given by Formulae (8.148.14) for Test Method 1 or (8.158.15) for Test Method 3:

$$P_p = \gamma_{Ra,ULS} \cdot E_{d,ULS} \quad (8.14)$$

$$(14) P_p = \gamma_{Ra,SLS,test} \cdot E_{d,SLS} \quad (8.15)$$

where:

$\gamma_{Ra,ULS}$ is a partial factor on the anchor's geotechnical resistance at the ultimate limit state, given in 8.6.4;

$\gamma_{Ra,SLS,test}$ is a partial factor on the anchor's geotechnical resistance in suitability and acceptance tests at the serviceability limit state, given in 8.7.3.

NOTE Limit values for creep in acceptance tests are given in 8.9.1

- (3) The apparent tendon free length of a grouted anchor shall comply with EN 1537.
- (4) For grouted anchors, where tendon bond lengths of a group of anchors cross at spacings less than 1,5 m (centre to centre), the pre-stress should be checked on selected anchors after completion of the lock-off process.

8.9.5 Testing of grout

(1) The compressive strength of grout used for load transfer shall be verified by testing prior to the use of grout for anchor installation.

(2) The testing of compressive strength of grout used for load transfer shall be conducted by two series of tests for every 20 m³ of mixed grout. The testing methods and frequency of grout properties verification should be defined in design, taking into account the characteristic of the project, grouting method, grout material and site conditions.

Each series of tests shall comprise 3 samples.

8.98.10 Reporting

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 12, shall apply to anchors.
- (2) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 12, reporting for grouted anchors should comply with EN 1537 and EN ISO 22477-5.
- (3) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 12, reporting for non-grouted anchors should be as specified by the relevant authority or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by the relevant parties.

SC7 NOTE [#150]: CR0028
Table of content Move section on grout to end of the sub-clause

SC7 NOTE [#151]: CR0081
Revised the wording

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

9 Reinforced fill structures

9.1 Scope and field of application

(1) This Clause shall apply to reinforced fill structures.

NOTE 1 Reinforced fill structures include those in Figure 9.1.

NOTE 2 Earthwork structures without reinforcement are covered by Clause 4 embankments.

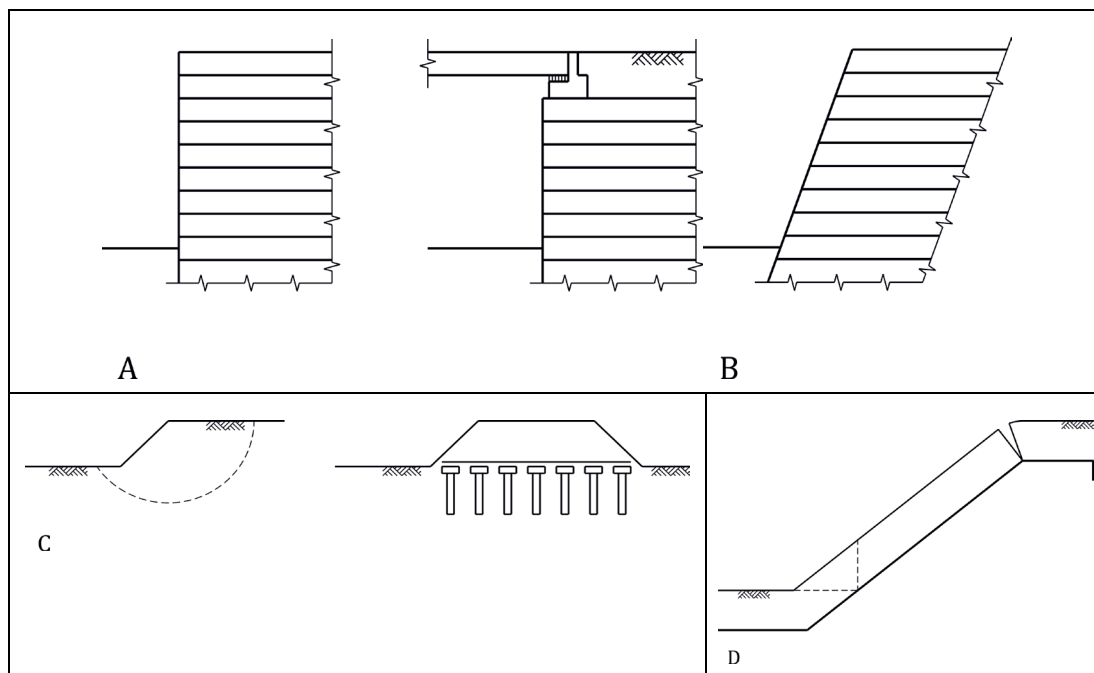
NOTE 3 Design of asphalt reinforcement of pavements, is not covered by this standard.

NOTE 4 Geotextile encased columns are covered in Clause 11.

SC7 NOTE [#152]: C
R0146 has been
implemented in this clause.
Changes marked with
track-change, without
specific mention of
CR0146.

For more information see
the Change Request

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)



Key

- A Reinforced wall and abutments
- B Reinforced slope
- C Basal reinforcement for embankments (including load transfer platforms over inclusions and areas prone to development of voids)
- D Venner reinforcement

Figure 9.1 — Reinforced fill structures within the scope of Clause 9

9.2 Basis of design

9.2.1 Design situations

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2.2 shall apply to reinforced fill structures.

9.2.2 Geometrical properties

9.2.2.1 General

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.3 shall apply to reinforced fill structures.

9.2.2.2 Reinforcing elements

(1) If the design of a reinforced fill structure is sensitive to deviations in the location of the reinforcing elements or other geometrical properties, the verification of limit states shall include determination of allowable construction tolerances.

NOTE The sensitivity depends on the types of reinforcement, reinforcing elements and facing used and on the chosen design method.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

9.2.2.3 Facing elements

- (2) If the design of the structure is sensitive to deviation in the location of the facing elements, the verification of limit states shall include determination of related allowable construction tolerances.

NOTE The sensitivity depends on the overall characteristics of each facing system. Guidance can be found in Tables C.1 to C.12 of EN 14475.

9.2.3 Zone of influence

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.2.1 shall apply to reinforced fill structures.

9.2.4 Actions and environmental influences

9.2.4.1 General

- (1) EN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1 shall apply to reinforced fill structures.

9.2.4.2 Permanent and variable actions

- (1) Design value of the force in the reinforcement elements shall be obtained from verification of limit states for the reinforced structure.
- (2) Traffic actions, where present, should be determined using the simplified geotechnical load models for geotechnical structures given in prEN 1991-2:2022, 6.9.3 and 8.10.3.
- (3) Seepage forces due to different groundwater levels behind and in front of a reinforced structure shall be considered as actions, in accordance with 9.4, as appropriate.

9.2.4.3 Cyclic and dynamic actions

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1.3 shall apply to reinforced fill structures.

9.2.4.4 Environmental influences

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1.5 shall apply to reinforced fill structures.
- (2) The effects of temperature on the durability due to chemical degradation of geosynthetic reinforcing elements shall be determined using the equivalent constant in-soil temperature, T_{eq} .
- (3) The effects of temperature on the creep of geosynthetic reinforcing elements shall be determined using the equivalent constant in-soil temperature, T_{eq} .
- (4) The value of T_{eq} may be specified by the relevant authority or, where not specified, agreed for a specific project by the relevant parties.
- (5) In the absence of a specified temperature or site-specific in-soil temperature data, the value of T_{eq} should be taken as either:
- a temperature midway between the average yearly air temperature and the average daily air temperature for the hottest month at the site; or
 - a temperature derived from a validated temperature-dependent kinetic degradation model applied to site-specific in-soil temperature range and variations.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (6) Measures should be taken to avoid adverse swelling or expansion of frost susceptible soils in the ground near the surface of reinforced structures.

NOTE Potential measures include selection of backfill material that is not frost susceptible, or inclusion of drainage, or insulation.

- (7) Chemical components of ground or groundwater that can adversely affect the durability of the reinforcement element or the resistance at the ground/reinforcement interface shall be considered.
- (8) Potential degradation of geosynthetic reinforcement by UV exposure shall be considered.

9.2.5 Limit states

9.2.5.1 Ultimate Limit States

- (1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 8, the following ultimate limit states shall be verified for all reinforced fill structures:

- rupture of the reinforcing element;
- rupture of any connection between a reinforcing element and the facing of the structure, caused by failure of one or more of the reinforcing element, facing element or connector;
- rupture of any seam or joint between the reinforcing elements themselves;
- failure along slip surfaces that pass wholly or partially through the reinforced block;
- failure at the interface between the fill and the reinforcing element beyond the assumed slip surface (pull-out);
- failure at the interface between the fill and the reinforcing element within the active zone of the assumed slip surface ('stripping');
- failure by sliding between the ground and the bottom reinforcing element;
- failure by sliding between the reinforced block and its foundation;
- structural failure of any facing element;
- failure of the connection between any facing elements;
- bearing failure of the formation;
- extrusion of any weak foundation soils.

- (2) Potential ultimate limit states other than those given in (1) should be verified.

NOTE Examples of ultimate limit states for internal stability for reinforced fill structures are shown in [Figure 9.2](#).

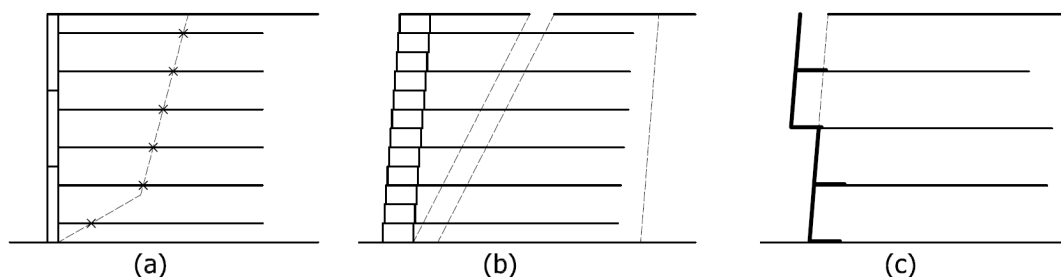


Figure 9.2 — Examples of ultimate limit states for internal stability for reinforced fill structures:
(a) Tensile failure, (b) Pull-out of reinforcement, and (c) Sliding along a fill-reinforcement interface.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

(3) In addition to (1), it shall be verified that failure of the reinforcement elements will not cause the reinforced fill structure to exceed any of the following ultimate limit states:

- failure by overall stability, determined in accordance with Clause 4.
- failure by loss of bearing capacity determined in accordance with Clause 5.
- failure by sliding determined in accordance with Clause 5.
- failure by loss of static equilibrium determined in accordance with Clause 7.

(4) The following ultimate limit states shall be verified for the facing system and all its connections:

- structural failure of the facing element;
- equilibrium failure of the facing element;
- connection failure between reinforcement and facing units (Figure 9.3.a);
- shear failure between face elements (bulging) (Figure 9.3.b);
- shear failure between face elements and reinforcements (Figure 9.3.c);
- toppling of top facing elements not connected to reinforcements (Figure 9.3.d);

rotation of large facing elements connected to reinforcements at one elevation only (Figure 9.3.e).

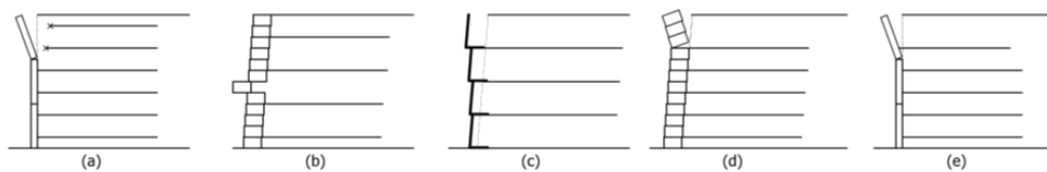


Figure 9.3 — Examples of ultimate limit states for internal stability for reinforced fill structures:
(a) connection rupture, (b) shear failure between face elements (bulging), (c) shear failure between face elements and reinforcements, (d) toppling of top facing elements not connected to reinforcements and (e) rotation of large facing elements connected to reinforcements at one elevation only.

9.2.5.2 Serviceability Limit States

(1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 9, the following serviceability limit states shall be verified for all reinforced structures:

- deformations of the reinforced fill structure itself;
- differential settlement along the facing due to subsoil deformation;
- differential movement between facing and reinforcing element;
- deformation of the reinforced fill structure, which can cause serviceability limit states of nearby structures or services that rely on it;
- bulging and deformation of the face;
- cracking or spalling of precast facing elements due to differential settlement or movement.

(5) Potential serviceability limit states other than those given in (1) should be verified.

9.2.6 Robustness

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.4 shall apply to reinforced fill structures.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

9.2.7 Ground investigation

9.2.7.1 General

- (1) prEN 1997-2:2022, 5 shall apply to reinforced fill structures.
- (2) Chemical properties of ground, groundwater and infiltrating water in contact with the reinforced fill structure should be determined to allow assessment of the durability of its structural elements (including reinforcing elements, seams and joints, and facing elements and their connectors).

NOTE Groundwater can be prevented from coming into contact with the structural elements of a reinforced fill structure by the inclusion of waterproof materials and interceptor filter drains.

9.2.7.2 Minimum extent of field investigation

- (1) In addition to EN1997-2 Clause 5.4.3, the depth of investigation for reinforced fill structure shall be determined.

NOTE The minimum depth d_{min} of the ground investigation is given in Table 9.1 unless the National Annex gives another value.

SC7 NOTE [#153]: CR0147
Systematic revision of all clauses on minimum extent of field investigation

Table 9.1 — (NDP) Minimum depth of field investigation for reinforced fill structures

Application	Minimum depth	Illustration
Abutments	Comply with 7.2.7.2	NONE
Reinforced slope, basal reinforcement and reinforced embankments	Comply with 4.2.7.2	NONE

9.2.8 Geotechnical reliability

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.2 shall apply to reinforced fill structures.

9.3 Materials

9.3.1 Ground properties

- (1) prEN 1997-2:2022, Clauses 7 to12 shall apply to ground behind and beneath reinforced fill structures.

9.3.2 Engineered fill

- (6) prEN 1997-2:2022, Clause 5.2 shall apply for engineered fill in reinforced fill structures.

NOTE For classification of engineered fill see EN 16907-2.

9.3.3 Geosynthetics

- (1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.3, geosynthetic reinforcing elements should comply with EN 13251.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (2) The characteristic tensile strength of geosynthetic reinforcement, T_k should be determined in accordance with EN ISO 10319.
- (3) When the strength of geosynthetic material is required for specific elongation, either total or relative between given times, the characteristic tensile strength including the creep reduction $T_{k,cr}$ shall be determined from isochronous creep curves.

NOTE Relative elongation between given times can be related to post construction elongation or specified design service life in voids overbridging application.

- (4) In addition to 0.1.1 (1), a reduction factor η_{gs} shall be applied to the tensile strength of geosynthetic reinforcing elements to account for loss of strength.
- (5) The representative tensile resistance $R_{t,rep,el}$ of a geosynthetic reinforcing element shall be determined from Formula (9.19.1):

$$R_{t,rep,el} = \eta_{gs} T_k \quad (9.1)$$

where:

T_k is the characteristic tensile strength of the reinforcing element see (2);

η_{gs} is a reduction factor accounting for anticipated loss of strength with time and other influences.

- (6) The reduction factor η_{gs} should account for the adverse effect of:
- tensile creep rupture or excessive deformation due to sustained static load over the design service life of the structure at the design temperature;
 - the adverse effects of mechanical damage during transportation, installation and execution;
 - weathering;
 - chemical and biological degradation of the reinforcing element over the design service life of the structure at the design temperature;
 - intense and repeated loading over the design service life of the structure (fatigue); and
 - joints and seams between geosynthetic reinforcing elements..

- (7) The value of the reduction factor for tensile strength of geosynthetic reinforcement, η_{gs} shall be determined from Formula (9.29.2):

$$\eta_{gs} = \eta_{cr} \cdot \eta_{dmg} \cdot \eta_w \cdot \eta_{ch} \cdot \eta_{dyn} \cdot \eta_{js} \quad (9.2)$$

where:

η_{cr} is a factor accounting for the adverse effect of tensile creep due to sustained static load over the design service life of the structure at the design temperature;

η_{dmg} is a factor accounting for the adverse effects of mechanical damage during transportation, installation and execution;

η_w is a factor accounting for the adverse effects of weathering;

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

η_{ch} is a factor accounting for the adverse effects of chemical and biological degradation of the reinforcing element over the design service life of the structure at the design temperature;

η_{dyn} is a factor accounting for the adverse effects of intense and repeated loading over the design service life of the structure (fatigue);

η_s is a factor accounting for the adverse effects of joints and seams between reinforcing elements.

NOTE 1 The values of η_{cr} , η_{dmg} , η_w , and η_{ch} are the reciprocals of the reduction factors specified in ISO TR 20432, as RF_{CR} , RF_{ID} , RF_W , and RF_{CH} , respectively.

NOTE 2 The value of η_{dyn} is the reciprocal of the reduction factor specified in EBGeo as A_5 .

NOTE 3 The value of η_{con} is the reciprocal of the reduction factor specified in EBGeo as A_3 , based on tests complying with EN ISO 10321.

NOTE 4 Values of η_{cr} , η_{dmg} , η_w , and η_{ch} are given in ISO TR 20432 and values of η_{dyn} are given in EBGeo, unless the National Annex gives different values.

(8) The value of η_{cr} may be modified to allow for the nature of short term or rapid loading or to limit total or post-construction elongation.

NOTE Guidance on the magnitude of these modifications is given in ISO TR 20432.

9.3.4 Steel

(1) Reinforcement in the form of strips, bars or rods, welded wire ladders and meshes shall comply with EN 10025-2, EN 10025-3, EN 10025-4 or EN 10080, as appropriate for the type of steel used.

(2) The nominal yield strength f_y for unprotected steel used in reinforced fill structures shall be not more than 500 MPa.

(3) The nominal yield strength f_y for protected (galvanized) steel used in reinforced fill structures shall be not more than 600 MPa.

NOTE Strengths of steels are limited for durability reasons and the risk of embrittlement. The susceptibility of steel to hydrogen embrittlement and stress corrosion cracking is influenced by the microstructure of the steel as well as the strength of the steel.

(4) The provisions on ductility of prEN 1993-1-1:2022, 5.2.2, shall apply to all elements.

(5) Alternative to (4), reinforcing steel manufactured to EN 10080 that complies with Class B of prEN 1992-1-1:2021 Table 5.5 may be used.

NOTE Typical steels used that meet the requirements of this document are given in Annex F9.

(6) If a steel reinforcing element is galvanised, the hot dip galvanized coating shall comply with EN ISO 1461.

(7) Reinforcing elements made from stainless steel or aluminium alloys shall only be used if they comply with a standard specified by the relevant authority or, where not specified, agreed for a specific project by appropriate parties.

(8) The design tensile resistance of steel reinforcing elements in reinforced fill structures $R_{td,el}$ shall be determined from Formula (9.189.18):

SC7 NOTE [#154]: CR0009
AdHoc group Steel within
TC250

SC7 NOTE [#155] Are
already added to the
version sent to TC250 to
prepare CCMC version.
Minor adjustments made

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

$$R_{td,el} = A_r f_{yd} \quad (9.3)$$

where:

f_{yd} is the design yield strength of the steel:
for structural steel complying with EN 10025 (all parts), $f_{yd} = f_y / \gamma_{M0}$, where f_y is the characteristic yield strength of the steel and γ_{M0} is a partial factor;
and
for reinforcing steel complying with EN 10080, $f_{yd} = f_{0.2k} / \gamma_s$ where $f_{0.2k}$ is the characteristic proof strength at 0.2 % strain of the steel and γ_s is a partial factor;

A_r is the reduced gross cross-sectional area of the reinforcing element at the weakest section, allowing for the effects of potential corrosion.

NOTE The values of γ_{M0} and γ_s are given in 9.6.2.6.

(9) The design tensile resistance of steel reinforcing elements at terminations and connections $R_{td,con}$ in reinforced fill structures shall be determined from Formula (9.4):

$$R_{td,con} = \min(k_t A_{s,con} f_{ud}; A_r f_{yd}) \quad (9.4)$$

where:

f_{ud} is the design tensile strength of the steel;
for structural steel complying with EN 10025 (all parts), $f_{ud} = f_u / \gamma_{M2}$ where f_u is the characteristic tensile strength of the steel and γ_{M2} is a partial factor; and
for reinforcing steel complying with EN 10080, $f_{ud} = f_{tk} / \gamma_t$ where f_{tk} is the characteristic tensile strength of the steel and γ_t is a partial factor

$A_{s,con}$ is the net reduced cross-sectional area of the reinforcing element, allowing for the effects of potential corrosion, at the termination or connection;

k_t (≥ 1) is a calibration factor accounting for the influence of the termination on the measured breaking strength of the element.

NOTE 1 Values of γ_{M0} and γ_s are given in 9.6.2.6.

NOTE 2 Values of f_u and f_{tk} are given in EN1993-1-1

(10) The ultimate resistance of terminations and connections shall comply with prEN 1993-1-8.

(11) The value of k_t should be determined by testing that is certified by a Technical Assessment Body.

(12) In the absence of a value determined by testing, the value of k_t in Formula (9.4) may be taken as:

- for sections with smooth holes (i.e. holes without notches), including holes fabricated by drilling or water jet cutting, $k_t = 1,0$;
- for sections with rough holes (i.e. holes with notches), including holes fabricated by punching or flame cutting, $k_t = 0,9$; or
- for sections with threads, $k_t = 0,9$.

(13) The cross-sectional area of steel reinforcing elements shall be reduced by an amount based on the potential average loss of thickness Δe around the exposed surface caused by corrosion in the ground, as shown in Figure 9.2.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

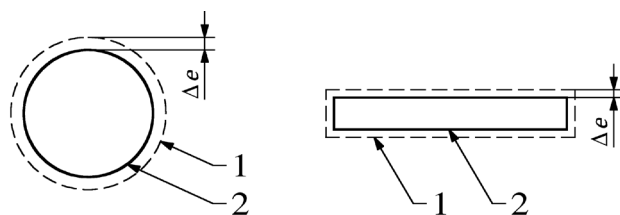


Figure 9.4 — Loss of thickness due to corrosion resulting in reduced cross-sectional area

Key

- 1 Original section
- 2 Section after corrosion

(14) For soils and fills that comply with the electro-chemical properties of Table B.1 of EN 14475:2006, the value of Δe shall be determined from Formula (9.59.5):

$$\Delta e = k_{cc} \max(AT^n - e_z; 0) \quad (9.5)$$

where:

- A is the loss of metal (including zinc) per face over the first year;
- T is the design service life of the structure in years;
- n is an exponent accounting for reduction in corrosion rate in time;
- e_z is the initial local zinc coating thickness (minimum 70μm); and.
- k_{cc} is a corrosion concentration factor, accounting for concentrated areas of corrosion and depending on the steel manufacturing process.

NOTE 1 For steel in surrounding soils that comply with the electrochemical properties of Table B.1 of EN 14475:2006, values for A and n are given in in ~~Table 9.2 — (NDP)~~ ~~Table 9.2 — (NDP)~~ unless the National Annex gives different values.

NOTE 2 Values of k_{cc} are given in Table ~~9.39.3~~ (NDP), unless the National Annex give different values

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

Table 9.2 — (NDP) Corrosion parameters for fill steel reinforcement

Steel	A (μm)		n	
	Land-based	Fresh water	Land-based ^a	Fresh water ^b
Galvanized ^c	25	40	0,65	0,60
Non-galvanized			0,80	0,75
^a Land-based = without influence of groundwater or surface water				
^b Fresh water = installed fresh water or regularly submerged [EN 14490]				
^c Hot-dip galvanisation per EN ISO 1461, with a minimum local coating thickness of 70μm				

Table 9.3 — (NDP) Corrosion concentration factor, k_{cc}

Steel	Strip thickness ^a (mm)	Bar diameter (mm)	Corrosion concentration factor k_{cc} ^{b,c}	
			For steel reinforcing element (depending on the strength distribution across it section)	
Galvanized	4-6	6-18	1,7	2,0
	> 12	> 40	1,0	1,0
Non-galvanized	4-6	6-18	2,5	3,0
	> 12	> 40	1,0	1,0
^a For strips 6-12 mm thick and bars 18-40 mm in diameter, interpolate between the values given ^b Some manufacturing methods result in steel properties varying across the section with higher strengths towards the outer surface. This can affect tensile resistance disproportionally. ^c Annex F.9 for examples of steels with uniform and non-uniform strength distributions.				

(15) The value of k_{cc} may be determined by testing, provided the test data is certified by a Technical Assessment Body and the value of k_{cc} is not less than that given for steel with a uniform strength distribution.

(16) For soils and fills that do not comply with the electro-chemical properties of Table B.1 of EN 14475:2006, the value of Δe shall be determined by tests in the specific ground conditions.

(17) The reduced cross-sectional area of a steel reinforcing element A_r shall not be less than 50 % of its initial cross-sectional area

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

9.3.5 Polymeric coated steel woven wire meshes

- (1) Reinforcement in the form of polymeric coated woven wire mesh should comply with EN 10223-3.
- (2) Polymeric coated steel woven wire meshes should be treated with a zinc-aluminium alloy coating (Zn95Al5 or Zn90Al10) conforming to EN 10244-2.
- (3) The minimum coating unit weight shall comply with Table 2 of EN 10244-2:2009 and be further protected by a:
 - PVC coating conforming to EN 10245-2; or
 - PE coating conforming to EN 10245-3; or
 - PET coating conforming to EN 10245-4; or
 - PA coating conforming to EN 10245-5.
- (4) The characteristic tensile strength of polymeric coated steel woven wire mesh reinforcement shall be determined in accordance with EN ISO 10319.
- (5) The representative tensile resistance $R_{t,rep,el}$ of a polymeric coated woven wire mesh reinforcing element shall be determined from Formula (9.6):

$$R_{t,rep,el} = \eta_{pwm} T_k \quad (9.6)$$

where:

T_k is the characteristic tensile strength of the reinforcing element;

η_{pwm} is a reduction factor accounting for anticipated loss of strength with time and other influences.

- (6) The value of the reduction factor for tensile strength of steel woven wire meshes, η_{pwm} shall be determined from Formula (9.7):

$$\eta_{pwm} = \eta_{dmg} \cdot \eta_{cor} \quad (9.7)$$

where:

η_{dmg} is a reduction factor accounting for the adverse effects of mechanical damage during transportation, installation, and execution;

η_{cor} is a reduction factor accounting for the adverse effects of degradation of the element by corrosion over the design service life of the structure.

NOTE 1 The value η_{dmg} can be assessed by testing in accordance with EN 17738, as the ratio of the tensile strength of damaged specimens divided by the tensile strength of the undamaged specimens. η_{cor} is determined by testing standard to be developed.

NOTE 2 The value of η_{dmg} can have a value lower than 1.0 if the steel wires get damaged during execution. Damage to the coating does not decrease the tensile strength in the short term and is accounted for in the determination of η_{cor} , as it will induce corrosion of the exposed wire.

- (7) The determination of η_{cor} shall account for the long term effect of corrosion of the steel wires due to the local loss of protection caused by mechanical and chemical damage to the polymeric coatings, exposing the wires (with or without zinc-aluminium alloy) to the surrounding environment.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

NOTE The polymeric and a zinc-aluminium alloy coating have no structural function, since their only purpose is to protect the metallic wires.

(8) The value of η_{cor} may be determined by testing steel wires with damaged coatings according to EN 17738.

NOTE The value of η_{cor} is based on the residual strength of the product ignoring the wires that are exposed and assumed to be ineffective due to loss of polymeric coating. This assumes that the coating does not degrade chemically such that its protective function is lost over the design service life.

9.3.6 Facings

(1) The structural resistance of facing elements of concrete, steel, masonry, and timber shall comply with EN 1992 (all parts), EN 1993 (all parts), EN 1996 (all parts) and EN 1995 (all parts), respectively.

(2) The design strength of facing elements may also be determined by testing.

(3) EN 206 shall apply to concrete facing panels.

(4) EN 771-3 shall apply to concrete facing blocks.

(5) EN 14487-1 shall apply to sprayed concrete.

(6) EN 10080 shall apply to reinforcing steel mesh used in or as a facing.

(7) EN 10079 and EN 10080 shall apply to welded wire mesh used as a facing.

(8) EN 10218-2 and EN 10223-3 shall apply to woven wire mesh used as a facing.

(9) EN ISO 1461 or EN 10244-2 shall apply to any galvanizing of the facing.

(10) EN 10245 (all parts) shall apply to any organic coating of the wire mesh.

(11) EN 13251 shall apply for any geosynthetic materials used as a facing.

(12) Depending on the facing system, the longterm strength of the facing system, facing element and connector, shall be determined taking into account the material and the surrounding environment,

NOTE 1 Examples of the device or assembly connecting the reinforcement to the facing elements include be steel plates and bolts; steel rods; polymeric bodkins, combs, or pins; and polymeric loops and toggles.

NOTE 2 Depending on the materials, the facing elements may be affected by mechanical damage (abrasion, etc.) or environmental damage (UV on polymers, corrosion on steel, etc.).

(13) The durability of the facing material and all connections should be considered over the design service life.

9.3.7 Other materials

(1) Materials other than those specified in 9.3 may be used provided they comply with a relevant material standard.

SC7 NOTE [#156]: CR0161

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

9.3.8 NOTE The relevant standard can be specified in the National Annex or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by appropriate parties.

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.6 shall apply to reinforcing elements in reinforced fill structures.
- (2) Determination of the loss of strength of reinforcing elements for fills shall, for the structures intended design service life, take account of the long-term effects of sustained load in reinforcement (creep) and long-term changes in fill properties.
- (3) In addition to (1) the potential damage of the reinforcement during transport, storage and installation shall be considered.

9.4 Groundwater

9.4.1 General

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 6, shall apply to reinforced fill structures.

9.4.2 Groundwater control system

- (1) Clause 12 shall apply to reinforced fill structures.

9.5 Geotechnical analysis

9.5.1 General

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 7 shall apply to reinforced fill structures.
- (2) The external and compound stability of a reinforced fill structure, should be analysed according to Clauses 4, 5, or 7, taking into account the beneficial effect of any reinforcing elements.
- (3) The internal stability of a reinforced fill structure shall be analysed according to the type of reinforced fill structure.
- (4) Horizontal and vertical deformations of a reinforced fill structure including differential displacements between the reinforced fill and the facing system (rigid, semi-flexible and flexible facing systems, see EN14475), should be analysed.
- (5) The compound stability of reinforced slopes, walls, and bridge abutments may be verified using a method not given in 9.5.2.1(1) provided it has been validated against comparable experience.
- (6) Verification of the compound stability of a reinforced fill structure shall include the potential beneficial effect of any reinforcing elements.

9.5.2 Mode of failure for reinforced fill structures

9.5.2.1 Reinforced slopes, walls, and bridge abutments

- (1) The internal stability of reinforced slopes, walls, and bridge abutments should be verified using one or more of the following methods:
- coherent gravity method;
 - tie-back wedge method;
 - multiple wedge method;

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- slope stability methods.

NOTE References for some of these methods are given in Annex F.3.

- (2) In addition to (1), the internal stability of reinforced fill structures may be verified using a numerical method provided the method has been calibrated for the specific reinforced fill system and validated for the specific design situation.
- (3) Methods other than those given in (1) may be used, provided they have been validated in accordance with prEN 1997-1, 7.1.1.
- (4) As part of the verification of internal stability, the local stability of the facing system of reinforced slopes, walls, and bridge abutments should be verified using a methods specific to the reinforced soil system.
- (5) In addition to (4), the local stability of the facing system may be verified using a numerical method provided the method has been calibrated for the specific reinforced fill system and validated for the specific design situation.

9.5.2.2 Basal reinforcement for embankments

- (1) When analysing potential excessive deformation of the embankment, resistance to foundation extrusion shall be verified.
- (2) Potential excessive deformation due to consolidation or creep of soil should be verified.
- (3) Resistance to horizontal sliding over the basal reinforcement shall be verified.

NOTE More information is in Annex F.4.

- (4) Temporary roads and/or working platforms with basal reinforcement over low strength fine soil shall be analysed as low height embankments.
- (5) If the height of the embankment prevents uniform distribution of concentrated loads above the reinforcing element, local bearing resistance shall be verified according to Clause 5.

9.5.2.3 Load transfer platforms over discrete inclusions

- (1) Load transfer platforms may be used over discrete inclusions to allow bigger spacing and limit differential deformation on embankment surface.
- (2) Discrete inclusions shall be designed according to Clause 11.
- (3) When analysing embankment edges outside the inclusion zone, analyses according to 9.5.2.2 shall be performed.
- (4) The load distribution from an embankment through the load transfer platform should be analysed using one or more of the following methods:
 - Hewlett and Randolph method ;
 - EBGeo method ;
 - Concentric Arches method;
 - numerical methods.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

NOTE Details of these methods are given in Annex F.5.

- (5) Load transfer through a load transfer platform may be analysed using a method not given in (4) provided it has been validated against comparable experience.

9.5.2.4 Reinforcement over areas prone to development of voids

- (1) Overbridging systems that include reinforcing elements may be used over areas prone to subsidence to limit differential deformation on surface.
- (2) The structure shall be designed to identify the location of any new void readily and quickly and to ensure the void can be remediated within the specified short-term design period.
- (3) In persistent design situations, it shall be verified that the reinforcement satisfies the long-term strain criteria required to ensure that the surface deformations remain within limiting design value of the deformation and that the supporting ground around the void will remain stable for the design life of the structure.
- (4) Loads in reinforcing elements should be determined assuming that all of the following failure mechanisms, depending on the ratio of the structure's height above the void (H) to the diameter of the void (D):
- failure of the bridging zone without lateral support, which generally applies to $H/D \leq 1$;
 - failure of the bridging zone with lateral support, which generally applies to $H/D > 1$;
 - failure below developed arch in stabilised soil, which generally applies to permanent design situations.

NOTE Details of these methods are given in Annex F.6.

- (5) Loads in reinforcing elements may be determined using a method not given in (5) provided it has been calibrated and validated against comparable experience.

9.5.2.5 Veneer stability

- (1) It shall be verified that the resistance of reinforcing elements along the underlying slope is greater than the load effect generated by the cover soil sliding over the weakest linear slip surface.

NOTE The reinforcement is in direct contact to the cover soil and the active soil mass.

- (2) The loads shall be determined using the plane of least frictional resistance in the veneer cover package.
- (3) The stability of the veneer layer subject to traffic load shall be verified for a transient design situation.
- (4) The stability of the anchorage at the top of the veneer, and any intermediate anchorages down the slope, shall be verified.
- (5) The stability of the veneer shall be verified considering the formation of a water table inside the veneer soil.

NOTE Further details are given in Annex F.7.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

9.5.3 Resistance of reinforcing elements

9.5.3.1 General

- (1) The determination of the tensile strength of reinforcing elements shall comply with 9.3
- (2) Where the reinforcing element carries shear loads, the structural resistance to shear shall be determined according to the relevant Eurocode for combined axial, shear, and bending actions.

9.5.4 Pull-out resistance

9.5.4.1 General

- (1) The resistance of a reinforcing element to pull-out from the fill shall be verified both from the point of maximum tension, or the intersection point between the reinforcement and the verified failure line, towards non-connected ends.
- (2) The representative pull-out resistance ($R_{rep,po}$) of a reinforcing element shall be determined from Formula (9.89-8):

$$R_{rep,po} = \int_0^{L_{po}} P(x) \cdot \tau_{po}(x) \cdot dx \quad (9.8)$$

where:

$P(x)$ is the length of the perimeter of the reinforcing element at point x along the pull-out length of the reinforcing element;

τ_{po} is the representative shear resistance against pull-out along the soil-reinforcement interface at point x ;

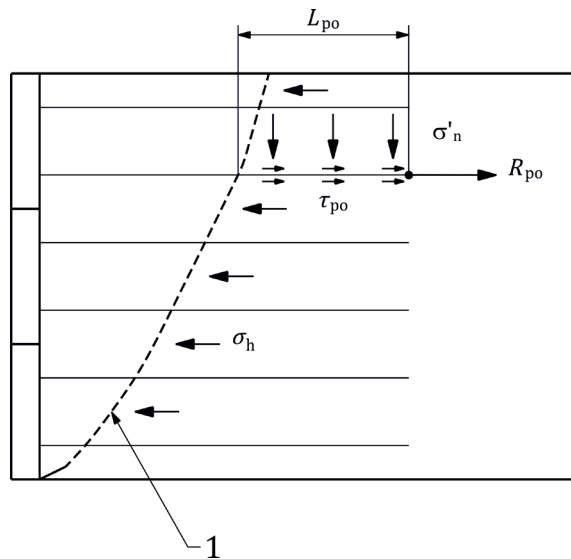
L_{po} is the length of the reinforcing element beyond the failure surface (or line of maximum tension) where pull-out stresses are mobilized (the pull-out resistance length).

NOTE Pull-out resistance can be influenced by dynamic action.

- (3) The interaction between multiple layers should be considered.
- (4) If the reinforcing element is situated between two different soils the properties of the weaker should be used for determination for the representative pull-out resistance.

NOTE [Figure 9.5](#) gives an example of pull-out analysis of the reinforcing element embedded in the resistant zone.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)



Key

- 1 potential failure surface or assumed location of maximum reinforcement tension
- R_{po} pull-out resistance
- τ_{po} shear resistance against pull-out
- L_{po} length of the reinforcing element in the resisting zone beyond the failure surface
- σ'_n normal effective stress acting on the reinforcing element

Figure 9.5 — Example of pull-out analysis at the embedded end of reinforcing elements

- (5) The pull-out resistance shall be based on documented tests in comparable situations or from project-specific tests.
- (6) The pull-out resistance from the face of the structure should be determined considering any mechanical connection resistance between the facing and the reinforcing element as determined according to 9.5.6.

9.5.4.2 Sheet reinforcement for fill

- (1) For sheet reinforcement (geogrids and geotextiles), the value of τ_{po} at point x in Formula (9.89.8) shall be determined from Formula (9.99.9):

$$\tau_{po} = k_{po} \sigma'_n \tan \varphi \quad (9.9)$$

where:

- φ is the angle of friction of the surrounding ground or engineering fill;
- σ'_n is the normal effective stress acting on the reinforcing element at point x;

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

k_{po} is a pull-out factor determined in laboratory pull-out tests in representative conditions, from comparable experience, or from field tests.

(2) If validated by comparable experience, cohesion may be added to Formula (9.99.9).

9.5.4.3 Discrete fill reinforcement

(1) For discrete fill reinforcement (strips and ladders), the value of τ_{po} in Formula (9.89.9) shall be determined from Formula (9.109.10):

$$\tau_{po} = \mu_{po} \sigma'_n \quad (9.10)$$

where, in addition to the symbols given for Formula (9.99.9):

μ_{po} is the coefficient of friction determined in laboratory tests in representative conditions or from field tests.

(2) If validated by comparable experience, cohesion or passive resistance may be added to Formula (9.109.10).

9.5.5 Resistance in direct shear

(1) The representative resistance to direct shear ($R_{k,ds}$) shall be determined from Formula (9.11):

$$R_{rep,ds} = B \int_0^{L_{ds}} \tau_{ds}(x) \cdot dx = B \int_0^{L_{ds}} f_{ds} \sigma'_n(x) \cdot dx \quad (9.11)$$

where:

B is the breadth of the reinforcing element;

τ_{ds} is the resistance to direct shear along the soil-reinforcement interface;

x is distance along the length of the reinforcing element;

L_{ds} is the total length of the reinforcing element along which direct shear stresses are mobilized;

φ is the angle of friction of the surrounding ground;

f_{ds} is a direct shear factor determined from direct shear tests or comparable experience;

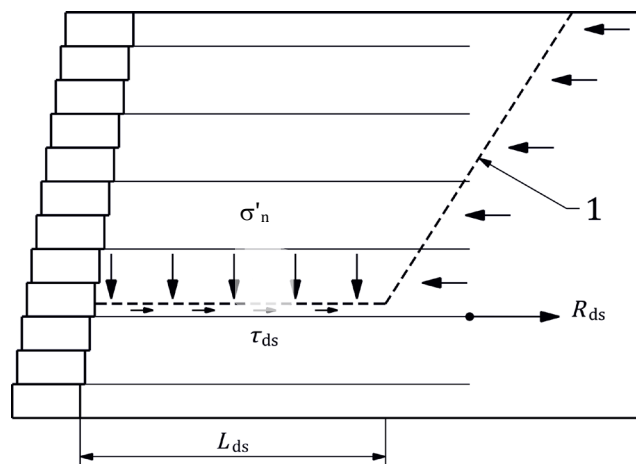
σ'_n is the normal effective stress acting on the reinforcing element at x .

NOTE The vertical effective stress is a good approximation for the normal effective stress provided the inclination of the reinforcing element is less than 10° from horizontal.

(2) If validated by comparable experience, cohesion may be added to Formula (9.99.9).

NOTE Figure 9.6 gives an example of horizontal sliding analysis of a reinforced fill structure. The symbols are defined in Formula (9.11).

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)



Key

- 1 potential failure surface
- R_{ds} resistance to direct shear

Figure 9.6 — Example of horizontal sliding analysis of a reinforced fill structure

- (3) Laboratory determination of the of the interface shear strength between fill and geosynthetic or polymeric-coated steel woven wire mesh reinforcement should comply with EN ISO 12957 (all parts) with respect to the position of the reinforcing element in the reinforced structure.
- (4) The value of f_{ds} for geosynthetic and polymeric coated steel woven wire meshes reinforcements shall comply with EN ISO 12957-1 for direct shear or EN ISO 12957-2 for shear along an inclined plane.
- (5) Mobilized resistance between the base of the reinforced fill structure and the subsoil, shall be determined according to Clause 5.

9.5.6 Resistance of connections between reinforcing elements and facings

- (1) The resistance of the connection between the facing and reinforcing element shall be determined by testing the specific connection or by calculation.
- (2) If it is determined by calculation, the representative tensile resistance of a geosynthetics or polymeric coated steel woven wire meshes ($R_{rep,con}$) at the mechanical connection with facing elements shall be determined from Formula (9.129.12):

$$R_{rep,con} = \eta_{el,con} T_k \quad (9.12)$$

where:

- T_k is the characteristic tensile strength of the reinforcing element;
- $\eta_{el,con}$ is a reduction factor accounting for anticipated loss of strength with time and from other influences at the connection.

- (3) The reduction factor $\eta_{el,con}$ shall be calculated from Formula (9.139.13) for geosynthetics or Formula (9.149.14) for polymer steel woven wire meshes:

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

$$\eta_{el,con} = \eta_{gs}\eta_{con,c} \quad (9.13)$$

$$\eta_{el,con} = \eta_{pwm}\eta_{con,c} \quad (9.14)$$

where:

$\eta_{con,c}$ is a reduction factor accounting for the reduction of resistance due to the connection;

η_{gs} , η_{pwm} are reduction factors accounting for the durability of the material (see F.8.).

(4) For steel reinforcing elements, if the determination is by calculation, $R_{rep,con}$ shall comply with prEN 1993-1-8.

(5) The reduction factor η_{con} should take into account the following potential sources of strength reduction:

- local mechanical damage;
- local environmental damage; and
- modification of the reinforcement to accommodate the connection system.

(6) For connector components, $R_{rep,con}$ shall be determined according to the Eurocode relevant to the material used in the component..

(7) For the resistance of the facing element at connection, $R_{rep,con}$ shall be determined according to the relevant Eurocode to the material used in the facing.

(8) When the resistance is limited by pull-out or direct shear capacity between the reinforcement and facing elements, $R_{rep,con}$ shall be determined by testing.

(9) Where the reinforcing element is assumed to carry shear loads, the shear resistance of connection between facing and reinforcing element shall be determined according to the relevant Eurocode for combined axial, shear, and bending actions.

9.6 Ultimate limit states

9.6.1 General

(1) The design value of the ultimate limit state resistance of a reinforcement element shall comply with formula (9.159-15)

$$E_d \leq \min(R_{t,d,el}, R_{d,po}, R_{d,ds}) \quad (9.15)$$

where:

E_d is the maximum value of the design value of the effects of actions at the ultimate limit state (see 9.2.3.2);

$R_{t,d,el}$ is the design value of the structural resistance of the reinforcement element;

$R_{d,po}$ is the design value of interface resistance between fill and reinforcement elements (pull-out);

$R_{d,ds}$ is the design value of direct shear mobilised along the interface between the fill or ground and the reinforcing element;

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (2) The design value of the ultimate limit state resistance of a connection between the reinforcing element and the facing shall comply with formula (9.169.16)

$$E_d \leq R_{d,con} \quad (9.16)$$

where:

E_d is the design value of the effects of actions at the connection at the ultimate limit state;

$R_{d,con}$ is the design value of the resistance at the connection.

NOTE The values of E_d and $E_{d,con}$ is determined separately from one another.

- (3) The structural resistance of geosynthetic facing elements shall comply with 9.5.6.

9.6.2 Verification by the partial factor method

9.6.2.1 Rupture of the reinforcing elements (tensile)

9.6.2.1.1 Geosynthetics

- (1) The design tensile resistance ($R_{t,d,el}$) of a geosynthetic reinforcing element shall be determined from Formula (9.179.17):

$$R_{t,d,el} = \frac{R_{t,rep,el}}{\gamma_{Rd,gs} \gamma_{M,gs}} \quad (9.17)$$

where:

$R_{t,rep,el}$ is the representative tensile resistance of the reinforcing element;

$\gamma_{M,gs}$ is a partial factor, given in 9.6.2.6;

$\gamma_{Rd,gs}$ is a model factor accounting for additional uncertainty owing to extrapolation of measured strengths to the design service life, as given in ISO TR 20432, where it has the symbol f_s .

9.6.2.1.2 Steel

- (1) The design resistance of steel reinforcement shall comply with 9.3.4.

9.6.2.1.3 Polymeric coated steel woven wire mesh

- (1) The design tensile resistance ($R_{td,el}$) of polymeric-coated woven wire mesh reinforcing element shall be determined from Formula (9.189.18):

$$R_{td,el} = \frac{R_{t,rep,el}}{\gamma_{Rd} \gamma_{M,pwm}} \quad (9.18)$$

where:

$R_{t,rep,el}$ is the representative tensile resistance of the reinforcing element;

$\gamma_{M,pwm}$ is a partial factor, given in 9.6.2.6;

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

γ_{Rd} is a model factor accounting for additional uncertainty owing to extrapolation of measured strengths to the design service life, as given in ISO TR 20432, where it has the symbol f_s .

9.6.2.2 Failure at the interface between the fill and the reinforcing elements (pull-out)

- (1) When using the Material Factor Approach, the design pull-out resistance ($R_{d,po}$) of a reinforcing element shall be determined from Formula (9.199.19) for sheet reinforcement or Formula (9.209.20) for discrete reinforcement:

$$R_{d,po} = \int_0^{L_{po}} P(x) \cdot \tau_{d,po}(x) \cdot dx = \int_0^{L_{po}} P(x) \cdot k_{po} \cdot \frac{\tan \varphi_{rep}}{\gamma_{tan\varphi}} \cdot \sigma'_n \cdot dx \quad (9.19)$$

or

$$R_{d,po} = \int_0^{L_{po}} P(x) \cdot \tau_{d,po}(x) \cdot dx = \int_0^{L_{po}} P(x) \cdot \frac{\mu_{po}}{\gamma_{tan\varphi}} \cdot \sigma'_n \cdot dx \quad (9.20)$$

where, in addition to the symbols defined in 9.5.4.2 and 9.5.4.3:

$\tau_{d,po}$ is the design shear resistance against pull-out along the soil-reinforcement interface;

$\gamma_{tan\varphi}$ is a partial factor, given in 9.6.2.6;

- (2) When using the Resistance Factor Approach, the design pull-out resistance ($R_{d,po}$) of a reinforcing element shall be determined from Formula (9.219.21):

$$R_{d,po} = \frac{R_{rep,po}}{\gamma_{R,po}} \quad (9.21)$$

where:

$R_{rep,po}$ is the representative pull-out resistance of the reinforcing element;

$\gamma_{R,po}$ is a partial factor, given in (2).

9.6.2.3 Failure due to sliding in direct shear along interface

- (1) When using the Material Factor Approach, the design resistance to direct shear along the interface between the fill or ground and the reinforcing element ($R_{d,ds}$) shall be determined from Formula (9.229.22):

$$R_{d,ds} = B \int_0^{L_{ds}} \tau_{d,ds}(x) \cdot dx = \int_0^{L_{ds}} f_{ds} \cdot \frac{\tan \varphi_{rep}}{\gamma_{tan\varphi}} \cdot \sigma'_n \cdot dx \quad (9.22)$$

where, in addition to the symbols defined in 9.5.4.2 and 9.5.4.3:

$\tau_{d,ds}$ is the design resistance to direct shear along the interface between the ground and the reinforcing element;

φ_{rep} is the representative angle of friction of the surrounding ground;

$\gamma_{tan\varphi}$ is a partial factor, given in 9.6.2.6.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (1) When using the Resistance Factor Approach, the design resistance to direct shear along the interface between the fill or ground and the reinforcing element ($R_{d,ds}$) shall be determined from Formula (9.239-23):

$$R_{d,ds} = \frac{R_{rep,ds}}{\gamma_{R,ds}} \quad (9.23)$$

where:

$R_{rep,ds}$ is the representative resistance to direct shear;

$\gamma_{R,ds}$ is a partial factor, given in 9.6.2.6.

9.6.2.4 Rupture of the connections between reinforcing elements and facings

- (1) The design tensile resistance of the structural elements forming the connection with the facing ($R_{d,con}$) shall be determined from Formula (9.249-24):

$$R_{d,con} = \min \left(\frac{R_{rep,con,el}}{\gamma_{R,con,el}}; \frac{R_{rep,con,c}}{\gamma_{R,con,c}}; \frac{R_{rep,con,f}}{\gamma_{R,con,f}} \right) \quad (9.24)$$

where:

$R_{rep,con,x}$ is the representative tensile resistance at the connection of component 'x', where:
'el' denotes components of the connection system (steel plates and bolts, steel rods, polymeric bodkins, combs, pins, polymeric loops and toggles, etc.). at the connection;
'c' denotes the connector at the connection;
'f' denotes facing elements at the connection.

$\gamma_{R,con,x}$ are partial factors for specific components 'x' of the connection, given in 9.6.2.6;

- (2) For steel reinforcing elements, if the resistance is determined by calculation, $R_{d,con}$ shall comply with EN 1993-1-8.

9.6.2.5 Failure of facing elements

- (1) The bending and shear resistance to bulging between facing elements shall be verified to prevent bulging of the facing between reinforcement and facing connections.
- (2) When the connection relies purely on friction, the shear resistance between facing elements and reinforcement shall be verified.
- (3) The stability against toppling of the facing elements not connected to ground reinforcements above the top layer of reinforcement shall be verified.
- (4) Facing elements shall conform to the standard relevant to the per material they are made from.
- (5) The durability of the facing material itself and all connections for the design service life shall be verified.

NOTE 1 The connection strength of mechanical connections between facing elements and reinforcing elements, and/or between consecutive facing elements depends on the type and material of the connection and on the tensile load distribution along the reinforcing element.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

NOTE 2 The stability of a frictional connection between facing elements and reinforcing element and/or between consecutive facing elements depends on the shear resistance between facing elements and reinforcements and between consecutive facing elements.

(3) .

9.6.2.6 Partial factors

(1) Partial factors for the verification of reinforced fill structures at the ultimate limit state shall be determined according to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.4.1, using either the Material Factor Approach or the Resistance Factor Approach.

NOTE The National Annex can specify which Factor Approach to use.

NOTE Values of the partial factors are given in Table 9.3 (NDP) for persistent and transient design situations unless the National Annex gives different values.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Table 9.4 — (NDP) Partial factors for the verification of resistance of reinforced fill structures for fundamental (persistent and transient) design situations

Verification of	Partial factor on		Symbol	Material factor approach (MFA)	Resistance factor approach (RFA)
Overall and compound stability	See Clause 4				
Bearing resistance and sliding	See Clause 5				
Overturning	See Clause 7				
Internal stability	Actions, effect of actions		γ_F, γ_E	VC3 ^a	VC1 ^a
	Ground properties		γ_M	M2 ^b	Not factored
Pull-out and direct shear	Pull-out resistance of reinforcing element		$\gamma_{R,po}$	Not factored	1,25
	Resistance to direct shear along interface		$\gamma_{R,ds}$	Not factored	1,25
Rupture of reinforcing element	Tensile resistance of	geosynthetic reinforcement	$\gamma_{M,re}$	1,1	
		structural steel per EN 10025-2 or EN 10025-4	γ_{M0}	specified in prEN 1993-1-1	
			γ_{M2}	specified in prEN 1993-1-1	
		reinforcing steel per EN 10080	γ_S	specified in prEN 1992-1-1	
			γ_t	1,25	
		polymeric coated steel wire mesh reinforcement	$\gamma_{M,pwm}$	1,25	
Rupture of connections to facing	Tensile resistance at connection	Reinforcing element	$\gamma_{R,con,el}$	As specified for rupture of reinforcing element	
		Connector	$\gamma_{R,con,c}$	1,35	
		Facing element	$\gamma_{R,con,f}$	As specified in relevant material Eurocode	
^a Values of the partial factors for Verification Cases (VCs) 3 and 4 are given in prEN 1990.					
^b Values of the partial factors for Sets M1 and M2 are given in prEN 1997-1:2022, Table 4.7.					

SC7 NOTE [#157]: CR0009 AdHoc group steel in TC250 revised part of table

SC7 NOTE [#158]: CR0146 give additional clarification and revised the table. CR0146 supersede CR0009.

9.7 Serviceability limit states

9.7.1 General

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 9 shall apply to reinforced fill structures.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (1) Verification of serviceability limit state due to loading of the geotechnical structure (reinforced fill structure, subsoil and retained ground) should comply with Clauses 4, 5, and 7.
- (2) It shall be verified that the deformation of the geotechnical structure and its components (both separately and in combination) is within the limiting values..

NOTE The type of facing, if any, often determines the amount of deformation that the structure can withstand. Guidance for typical values for different facing types is given in EN 14475.

9.7.2 Serviceability limit states of reinforcing element

- (1) Elongation of the reinforcing elements both in the short and long term shall comply with specified limiting values.

NOTE The serviceability limits for on post construction internal strains due to creep are usually taken as < 0.5 % for bridge abutments and < 1 % for retaining walls.

9.7.3 Serviceability limit states of facing element

- (1) Clause 10 shall apply to reinforced fill structures.
- (2) Post-construction horizontal movements and deformations of the facing of structures, both in the short and long term, shall comply with the limiting values given in the specification.
- (3) The bulging of segmental block and flexible facing systems shall be limited to ensure compliance with the specification.
- (4) The deformations of the structure face shall be limited to avoid spalling and cracking of facing panels, blocks, or sprayed concrete.
- (5) Bulging at the toe of a reinforced veneer system shall be limited to values given in the specification.

9.8 Implementation of design

9.8.1 General

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10 shall apply to reinforced fill structures.
- (2) The execution and control of reinforced fill structures shall comply with EN 14475.
- (3) The execution specification shall include level of the excavation with construction tolerances.
- (4) Groundwater control measures shall be specified in accordance with Clause 12.
- (5) The execution specification shall state requirements on properties of the fill needed to fulfil the verification of the limit states.

9.8.2 Inspection

- (1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.3, the Inspection Plan shall include, but is not limited to:
 - verification of the quality of foundation ground, including as necessary placement of a concrete screed or a drainage layer properly compacted;
 - verification of excavation levels within the specified tolerances;
 - verification of properly compacted fill, if used;

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- verification of the type, number, and arrangement of reinforcing elements;
- verification of the quality of the assembly (seams and joints) of parts of the reinforcing elements;
- verification of facing system alignment/reinforcement connections;
- verification of the connections of reinforcing elements with facing;
- verification of adequate performance of any drainage system installed.

9.8.3 Monitoring

9.8.3.1 General

(1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.4, the Monitoring Plan should include, but is not limited to:

- behaviour of temporary support systems;
- monitoring of the behaviour of reinforcement element;
- lateral and vertical displacements and distortions.

9.8.4 Maintenance

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.5 shall apply to reinforced fill structures.

9.9 Testing

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 11 shall apply to reinforced fill structures.

9.10 Reporting

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 12 shall apply to reinforced fill structures.

(2) The Geotechnical Design Report shall state requirements on properties of the fill needed to fulfil the verification of the limit states.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

10 Reinforced ground structures

10.1 Scope and field of application

(1) This clause shall apply to the design of rock supported and soil nailed structures.

NOTE 1 Ground reinforcing elements in this Clause include rock bolts, soil nails and facing (sprayed concrete; wire mesh, and other facing elements).

NOTE 2 Soil Nails and rock bolts consist of different types of reinforcement according to the method of construction, such as a solid steel bar, hollow bar, expansion shell, with grout, with resin.

NOTE 3 Soil nails are passive elements and are not pre-stressed.

NOTE 4 See Clause 8 for anchors

NOTE 5 Other stand-alone safety nets, wire meshes, rock fall fences, snow fences or avalanche protections are not covered by this clause.

NOTE 6 Reinforced ground structures in underground openings (e.g. tunnels and underground structure) are not covered by this clause.

NOTE 7 Faces supported by piles and/or anchors are not covered by this clause. See Clause 6, 7 and 8.

(2) This Clause shall apply to the verification of ultimate limit states, serviceability limit states, durability and robustness of the reinforced ground structures described in (1)..

NOTE The verification of rock supported structures is limited in this Clause to the verification of the rock bolt.

(3) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, Clauses 4, 5, 6, 7,8 and 9 of this document apply, as appropriate for the geotechnical structure being designed.

10.2 Basis of design

10.2.1 Design situations

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2.2 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.

10.2.2 Geometrical properties

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.3 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.

(2) Accessibility of drilling and installation equipment shall be taken into account in determining the geometrical properties of the reinforcing elements.

10.2.3 Zone of Influence

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.2.1 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.

10.2.4 Actions and environmental influences

10.2.4.1 General

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.

SC7 NOTE [#159]:
CR0209 has been agreed and added to this draft. Changes marked with track-change.

SC7 NOTE [#160]:
CR0010 Anchors and Rock bolts
Revised Scope

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

10.2.4.2 Permanent and variable actions

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1.2 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.
- (2) The design value of the force in the reinforcement elements shall be obtained from verification of limit states for the reinforced structure.
- (3) Traffic actions, where present, should be determined using the simplified geotechnical load models for geotechnical structures given in prEN 1991-2:2022, 6.9.3 and 8.10.3.
- (4) Seepage forces due to difference in groundwater levels behind and in front of a reinforced ground structure shall be considered as actions, in accordance with 10.4.
- (5) Freeze-thaw forces due to difference in weather conditions behind and in front of a reinforced ground structure shall be considered as actions, in accordance with 10.4.

10.2.4.3 Cyclic and dynamic actions

- (2) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1.3 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.

10.2.4.4 Environmental influences

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1.5 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.
- (2) Chemical or mineral components of ground or groundwater that can adversely affect the durability of the reinforcing element, facing or the resistance at the ground/grout interface shall be accounted for in the verification of durability.

10.2.5 Limit states

10.2.5.1 Ultimate Limit States

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 8 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.
- (2) In addition to (1), it shall be verified that failure of the reinforcing elements will not cause the reinforced ground structure to exceed any of the following ultimate limit states:
 - failure by overall or local stability determined in accordance with Clause 4;
 - failure by loss of bearing resistance determined in accordance with Clause 5;
 - failure by sliding determined in accordance with Clause 5;
 - failure by loss of equilibrium determined in accordance with Clause 7;
 - failure by loss of stability of the facing.
- (3) In addition to (1), the following ultimate limit states shall be verified:
 - rupture of the reinforcing element;
 - structural failure of any facing element;
 - failure at the interface between the ground and the reinforcing element (pull-out);
 - failure at the interface between the tendon and the grout (if present);
 - rupture of the connection between reinforcing elements and the facing (punching or tearing of the facing around the headplate);
 - failure by loss of resistance beneath the reinforcing element headplate (punching);
 - loss of force or resistance by displacement of the resisting element due to creep;
 - loss of force or resistance by deformations or loss of ground behind.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

(4) Potential ultimate limit states other than those given in (2) and (3) should be verified.

10.2.5.2 Serviceability Limit States

(1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 9, the following serviceability limit states shall be verified:

- bulging and deformation of the facing;
- deformation adversely affecting the function, comfort or appearance;
 - deformation causing damage to existing structures;
 - cracking or spalling of any precast facing panels, blocks or sprayed concrete;

(2) Potential serviceability limit states other than those given in (1) should be verified.

(3) If the reinforced ground structures consist of multiple types of elements, the resistance of each element type and the combined reinforcing resistance shall be verified.

10.2.6 Robustness

(1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2.2, the appropriate sub-clauses on robustness in Clauses 4, 5, 6, 7 and 9 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.

(2) Specification of measures to further enhance robustness of a reinforced structure in rock should include;

- installation of rock bolts prior to blasting, to avoid creation of adversely orientated fractures, opening or enlarging existing discontinuities;
- installation of rock bolts before excavation, to cater for potential adversely orientated discontinuities.

(3) A progressive failure of the structure due to the collapse of a single reinforcement element shall be prevented.

10.2.7 Ground investigation

10.2.7.1 General

(1) prEN 1997-2:2022, 5 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.

(2) Chemical properties of ground and groundwater in contact with the reinforced ground structure should be determined to allow assessment of the durability of its structural elements (including reinforcing elements, facing systems and any connections).

10.2.7.2 Minimum extent of field investigation

(1) In addition to EN1997-2 Clause 5.4.3, the depth of investigation for ground reinforcing structures shall be determined.

NOTE The minimum depth d_{min} of the ground investigation is given in Table 10.1 unless the National Annex gives another value.

SC7 NOTE [#161]:
CR0010 Anchors and
Rock bolts
Deleted wording on rock
anchors

SC7 NOTE [#162a]:
CR0152 moved to part 2.
For CR see part 2

SC7 NOTE [#162b]:
CR0147 Systematic
revision of all clauses on
minimum extent of field
investigation

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Table 10.1 — (NDP) Minimum depth of field investigation for ground reinforcing structures

Application	Minimum depth	Illustration
Rock bolts	Comply with 8.2.6.2	None
Soil Nails	Comply with 8.2.6.2	None
Reinforced slope, cutting	Comply with 4.2.7.2	None

(1)

10.2.8 Geotechnical reliability

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.2.3 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.

10.3 Materials

10.3.1 Ground properties

(2) prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.1 and EN 1997-2 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.

SC7 NOTE [#163]:
CR0165

10.3.2 Grout

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.4 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.

(2) The water/cement ratio should not exceed 0,45 for sub-horizontal rock bolts, and 0,5 for inclined rock bolts.

SC7 NOTE [#164]:
CR0165

10.3.3 Steel

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.6 and EN 1993-1-1, 5.1 and 5.2 shall apply to ground reinforcing elements.

(2) Material properties of reinforcing steels and prestressing steels shall comply with EN 1997-1, 5.5 and EN 1992-1-1, 5.2 and 5.3..

(3) In addition to (1) steel used as tension elements in grouted soil nails or rock bolts shall comply with EN 1992-1-1, 5.2.

(4) In addition to (1) to (5) steel used as tension elements soil nails or rock bolts shall comply with EN 1993-5, 5.4.2. and 5.4.3

10.3.4 Plain and reinforced concrete

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.5 shall apply to plain and reinforced concrete.

SC7 NOTE [#165]:
CR0159

10.3.5 Steel fibres

(1) Steel fibres in sprayed concrete should comply with EN 14487-1.

(2) Fibres of other materials in sprayed concrete may be used.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

10.3.6 Coatings

- (1) For steel reinforcing elements, the hot dip galvanized coating to steel should comply with EN ISO 1461.
- (2) For zinc and zinc-aluminium alloy coated steel wire meshes the coating should comply with EN 10244-2.
- (3) Epoxy coating should comply with EN 13438.
- (4) Polymeric coated steel should comply with EN 10245 (all parts).

NOTE Non-metallic coatings can suffer from abrasion that effects the durability of the reinforcing element

10.3.7 Concrete panels and other facing elements

- (1) Concrete facing panels should comply with prEN 1992-1-1.
- (2) Precast products should comply with EN 15258.
- (3) Concrete facing blocks should comply with EN 771-3.
- (4) Facing elements made of geosynthetics or wire mesh products other than defined in 10.3.8 shall comply with the corresponding standard, defined in 9.3.
- (5) Facing elements of steel, masonry, or timber shall comply with prEN 1993-1-1, prEN 1996-1-1, and EN 1995-1-1, respectively.

10.3.8 Wire mesh

- (2) Facing elements made of woven steel wire meshes, shall comply with 9.3.5
- (3) Facing elements made of welded wire mesh, shall comply with EN 10223-8.
- (4) The characteristic tensile strength of steel woven wire mesh (polymeric coated or not) facings shall be determined in accordance with EN ISO 10319.
- (5) The characteristic tensile strength of steel woven wire mesh (polymeric coated or not) facings reinforced with ropes during production shall be determined in accordance with a standard specified by the relevant authority or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by the appropriate parties.
- (6) The coating of the wire mesh facing elements should account for the exposure conditions, including the possibility of oxidation-reduction (redox) phenomena in the soil.

NOTE Corrosion by chemical or electrochemical action can lead to the deterioration of metal when directly exposed to the air. Annex A of EN 10223-3 can be used to determine the assumed working life for wire mesh products as a function of both the adopted coating and the site environmental level. See also 10.3.10.

- (7) As an alternative to (5), stainless steel may be used.
- (8) When reinforcing ropes are applied, the characteristic tensile strength of steel woven wire meshes (polymeric coated or not) and ropes shall be determined according to ISO 10319 for steel meshes and EN 12385 for ropes.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

NOTE The characteristic tensile strength of the system of the wire mesh reinforced with ropes can be determined in accordance with a standard specified by the relevant authority or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by the appropriate parties.

- (9) <REQ> The representative tensile resistance $R_{t,rep,el}$ of steel woven wire mesh facings shall be determined in accordance to Formula (9.6) and (9.7).

NOTE d_{mg} and c_{or} in Formula 9.7 have different values if the woven steel mesh is exposed to the air, placed in soil, or embedded in sprayed concrete or other materials. Guidance for determination of d_{mg} and c_{or} is given in 9.3.5.

10.3.9 Other materials

- (1) Materials other than those specified in 10.3 may be used provided they comply with a relevant material standard.

SC7 NOTE [#166]:
CR0161

NOTE 1 The relevant standard can be specified in the National Annex or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by the appropriate parties. NOTE 2 For reinforcing elements made of fibres other than steel fibres, the resistance is reduced with time and its shear strength is limited.

SC7 NOTE [#167]:
CR0209

10.3.10 Durability

- (1) prEN 1997-1:202, 4.1.6 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.
- (2) EN 1993-5, 6.1, 6.3, 6.4 shall apply to rock bolts and soil nails unless noted otherwise below.
- (3) Steel reinforcing elements should be protected against corrosion in accordance with EN 14490, unless otherwise stated below
- (4) The design service life for steel reinforcing shall be achieved by using one or more of the following measures:
- use of additional steel thickness as corrosion allowance;
 - grout, mortar or concrete protection;
 - grouted duct;
 - protective surface coating;
 - appropriate steel material;
 - use of stainless steel (see EN 1993-1-4).
- (5) For steel reinforcing elements made of different steel grades in direct contact, and when there is a risk of stray currents or potential oxyreduction, electrical isolation between the contacting elements should be considered.
- (6) For woven steel wire meshes exposed to the air, the selection of the metallic and/or polymeric coating to achieve the required design service life shall be made on the basis of the environmental aggressivity of the site (see EN 10223-3, Table A.1 or EN 10244-2).
- (7) For welded steel wire meshes exposed to the air, the selection of the metallic/polymeric coating to achieve the required design service life shall be made on the basis of the environmental aggressivity of the site (see EN 10223-8).
- (8) For aggressive environments class (pH <3.5 or corrosivity environment classification from C1 to CX,) stainless steel according to EN 1993-1-4 should be used for steel ground reinforcing elements.

NOTE In these cases no type of coating (metallic or not) is effective

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (9) Galvanic steel corrosion of different connecting elements shall be prevented.
- (10) For connecting elements, the corrosion protection shall be at least equivalent as for the other steel elements.
- (11) Attention should be given to the continuity of the corrosion protection at connecting elements
- (12) If a steel reinforcing element is galvanised, the hot dip galvanized coating shall comply with EN ISO 1461.
- (13) For soil nails corrosion protection shall comply with EN 14490
- (14) For rock bolts corrosion protection should comply with EN 14490.

NOTE Soil aggressivity conditions can be assessed using other classification systems than recommended in EN 14490, e.g. exposure classes according to EN 206.

- (15) As an alternative to (13) and (14), where the corrosion protection is provided by sacrificial thickness allowance, ground-specific loss of steel thickness (Δe) should be determined according to prEN 1993-5:2019, Tables 6.1 and 6.2.

NOTE 1 Values of $\Delta e/2$ for black steel elements without any corrosion protection measures for different service lives are given in prEN 1993-5:2019, Tables 6.1 and 6.2.

NOTE 2 The design values given in prEN 1993-5:2019, Tables 6.1 and 6.2 are values of uniform corrosion and do not consider potential localised corrosion for carbon steels nor potential pitting corrosion.

- (16) If steel with yield strength $f_y > 600$ MPa is used, the corrosion protection shall be comply with EN 1537.

NOTE The susceptibility of a steel to hydrogen embrittlement and stress corrosion cracking is influenced by the microstructure of the steel as well as strength of the steel.

- (17) For other steel elements corrosion protection provided by grout or cement cover, surface coating or use for stainless steel may comply with EN 14490.

- (18) The selection of an appropriate system of measures for durability should consider:

- the feasibility for inspection and maintenance;
- variation of corrosion along the nail/bolt due to variation in ground conditions;
- local corrosion at connections.

10.4 Groundwater

10.4.1 General

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 6 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.
- (2) The reinforced ground structure shall be designed to withstand potential water pressures or freeze-thaw forces.
- (3) In case a groundwater control system is implemented, its functioning and its robustness shall be accounted for when defining design water pressures.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

10.4.2 Groundwater control systems

- (1) Clause 12 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.
- (2) For drainage systems in reinforced ground structures EN 14490 shall apply.
- (3) For rock supported structures additional or amended provisions to EN14490 may be used.

SC7 NOTE [#168]:
CR0164

SC7 NOTE [#169]:
CR0165

10.5 Geotechnical analysis

10.5.1 General

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 7 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.
- (2) The stability of a reinforced ground structure shall be analyzed according to Clauses 4, 5, or 7, taking into account the beneficial effect of any reinforcing elements.
- (3) The stability of reinforced ground structures should be verified using one or more of the following methods:
 - limit equilibrium methods;
 - slope stability methods;
 - multiple wedge method.
- (4) The selected method in (3) shall adequately address all the relevant limit states in 10.2.5.
- (5) In addition to (3), the stability of reinforced ground structures may be verified using a numerical method provided the method has been calibrated for the specific reinforced ground system and validated for the specific design situation.
- (6) Methods other than those given in (3) may be used, provided they have been validated in accordance with prEN 1997-1, 7.1.1.
- (7) The facing of the structure reinforced with soil nails or rock bolts and its connections shall be verified.
- (8) The verification of the serviceability limit state of horizontal and vertical displacement of a reinforced ground structure shall comply with 4, 5, or 7.

SC7 NOTE [#170]: The note were revised into permission to be consistent with clause 9. MFA, RFA is for clause 10.6 ULS

NOTE Displacements of reinforced ground structures are normally verified using prescriptive rules.

10.5.2 Rock support

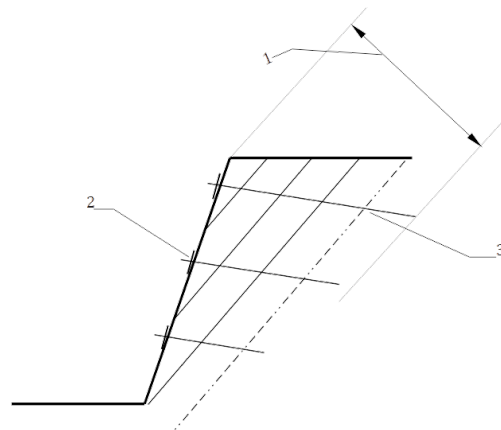
10.5.2.1 General

- (1) The design should include, but is not limited to:
 - type of element;
 - connection to an external structure (where relevant);
 - grout;
 - rock bolt head (bearing plate/nut)
 - effects of corrosion and corrosion protection needs; and
 - type of loading.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (2) The orientation of the rock bolt shall be determined in relation to the geometrical properties of the discontinuities and weathered zones and to the direction of the action imposed on the rock bolt.
- (3) The length, spacing, type and diameter of the rock bolts shall be determined by the structure's geometrical properties, rock mass quality, the geometry and strength of discontinuities and the and the occurrence of weathered zones.

NOTE Figures 10.1 and 10.2 give an illustration of two different rock supported structures; a slope and a rock block.

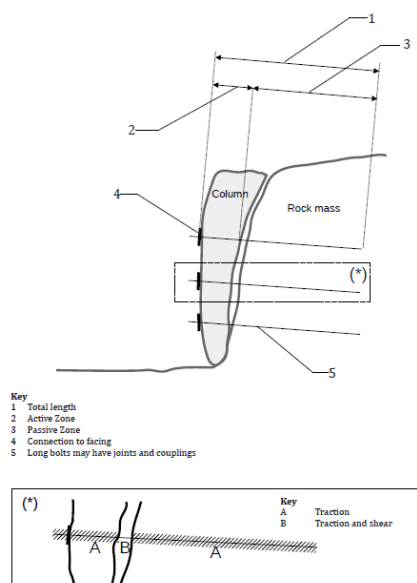


Key

- 1 Reinforced zone
- 2 Rock bolt head (bearing plate/nut)
- 3 Rock bolt with potential coupling

Figure 10.1 — Example of a slope supported with rock bolts.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)



Key

- 1 total length
- 2 active zone
- 3 passive zone
- 4 connection to facing
- 5 long bolts may hav joints and couplings
- A Traction
- B Traction and shear

Figure 10.2 — Example of a rock block supported with rock bolts.

(4) Tensioning of rock bolts may be applied.

NOTE Tensioning avoids superficial loosening and is usually between 25 and 50 kN.

(5) In case of tensioning or pre-stressing, its influence both on the tendon elements and on the ground shall be addressed.

(6) In design of facing systems, the ductility of the facing systems should be considered.

NOTE Frequently the ductility of the facing system governs the design of the facing more than its resistance.

(7) For design of a reinforced ground structure the shear strength of rock discontinuities should be determined according to EN 1997-2, 8.3.2.

(8) The representative value of the shear strength along a discontinuity should be determined using a conversion factor, according to EN 1997-1 4.3.2.1 (8).

NOTE The value of conversion factor is 1.0 unless the National Annex specifies a different value.

SC7 NOTE [#171]:
CR0010 Anchors and
Rock bolts
Deleted Rock anchors

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

10.5.2.2 Resistance at the interface of the rock bolt (pull-out)

- (1) The minimum total length of a rock bolt shall include a sufficient length in the rock to achieve adequate resistance.
- (2) The rock bolt length where interface shear resistance is mobilized shall be sufficient to avoid pull-out of the interface between the bolt and the surrounding grout or rock and/or failure at the interface between the grout and the rock.
- (3) The pull-out resistance from the active zone may be increased by an resistance mobilized at the connecto to the facing or bearing plate.
- (4) The pull-out resistance (R_{po}) should be determined from Formula (10.140.1)

$$R_{po} = \int_0^{L_{po}} P(x) \cdot \tau_{po}(x) \cdot dx \quad (10.1)$$

where:

P is the perimeter of the interface area, either drilled hole or the rock bolt;
 τ_{po} is the interface shear resistance against pull-out along the bolt-grout, bolt-rock or grout-rock interface;

L_{po} is the length of the element beyond potential failure surfaces, where pull-out stresses are mobilized.

- (5) The representative value of the pull out resistance ($R_{po;test;rep}$) should be determined directly from investigation tests or verified by suitability tests.

NOTE From suitability tests, a lower bound of the pull-out resistance is obtained, as the rock bolt is usually not tested to failure.

- (6) In addition to (5) the representative value of the pull out resistance ($R_{po;calc;rep}$) may be determined from formula (10.140.1) using τ_{po} determined from comparable experience.
- (7) For rock supported structures in GC3, the pull out resistance shall be determined from investigation tests or verified by suitability tests.
- (8) Representative values of the shear resistance between the tendon of the reinforcing element and the grouted body should be determined according to EN 1992 unless investigation tests or suitability tests are performed.
- (9) The perimeter of the contact between the rock bolt and the rock mass, P , should be determined as a nominal value with consideration of rock bolt type and the rock mass properties.
- (10) The perimeter of a grouted rock bolt may be determined as a nominal value of the perimeter of the drilled hole before installation.
- (11) Visual inspection of the grouting shall be undertaken to verify that the hole is full of grout.

SC7 NOTE [#172]:
CR0010 Anchors and
Rock bolts

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

10.5.2.3 Resistance of the facing system

10.5.2.3.1 Wire mesh

- (1) Wire mesh solutions may be used, to support loosened rock, spalling rock or rock blocks or superficial soil.

NOTE Wire meshes are usually placed at the surface and can be directly exposed to the air or embedded in sprayed concrete or other materials.

- (2) Wire mesh shall be designed to be fixed to the ground extending into the passive zone.

NOTE Soil nails, rock bolts (see clause 10) or tension piles (see clause 6) are used to fix the wire mesh.

- (3) Wire mesh solutions may be used to support soil or fill in combination with geotextile or other membranes.
- (4) Wire mesh solutions may be reinforced with steel ropes, to obtain a composite reinforcement with improved performances properties.
- (5) The resistance of the wires, ropes and connections of the wires in the wire mesh shall be verified.
- (6) The allowance of any small rock piece or debris to fall through the mesh opening shall define the type of mesh and size of mesh aperture.
- (7) The design resistance of a connection to adjacent wire mesh panels and to rock bolts or soil nails ($R_{con,d}$) shall be verified.
- (8) If the wire mesh is connected to bolts or nails, the head plates shall be appropriately sized with respect to the size of the mesh aperture and load transmission. .
- (9) The bearing and shear resistance of the head plate shall be verified.
- (10) The shear resistance of the wire mesh around the head plate shall be verified.
- (11) If the wire mesh is connected to or embedded in sprayed concrete, the wire mesh verification shall comply with the verification of the sprayed concrete.

10.5.2.3.2 Sprayed concrete

- (1) The thickness, concrete strength class and reinforcement of the sprayed concrete shall be defined according to the pressure and deformation imposed by the soil, rock blocks or rock mass, grade of jointed rock mass, weathered zones and weakness of the rock mass, to prevent the relevant limit states listed in 10.2.5
- (2) The minimum thickness of the sprayed concrete should consider the execution restrictions.
- (3) The minimum thickness should be defined taking into account the adverse effect of geometric tolerances and variation in the surface unevenness.
- (4) The bearing and shear resistance of the head plate shall be verified.

10.5.2.3.3 Other facing elements

- (1) The connection resistance of the rock bolt to the facing element shall be verified.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

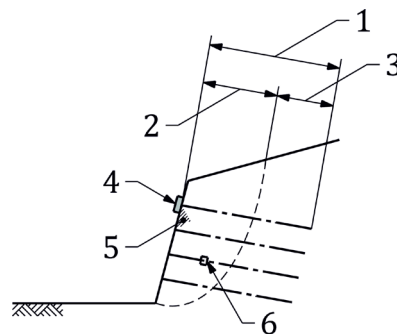
- (2) Other facing elements should be analysed according to 9.5.
(3) The bearing and shear resistance of the head plate shall be verified.

10.5.3 Soil nailed structures

10.5.3.1 Resistance at the interface of the soil nail (pull-out)

- (1) The resistance of a soil nail due to pull-out from the ground shall be verified for both the part of the soil nail in front and behind the potential critical failure surface.

NOTE Figure 10.3 gives an illustration of a soil nailed wall/cutting.



Key

- 1 Total length
- 2 Active zone
- 3 Passive zone
- 4 Connection to facing
- 5 Stability between nails and facing
- 6 Long nails may have joints and couplings

Figure 10.3 — Example of a wall/cutting reinforced with soil nails.

- (2) The pull-out resistance ($R_{rep,po}$) of a soil nail shall be determined from Formula (10.2)

$$R_{po} = \int_0^{L_{po}} P(x) \cdot \tau_{po}(x) \cdot dx \quad (10.2)$$

where:

- P is the length of the perimeter of the soil nail along the pull-out length of the soil nail;
- τ_{po} is the interface shear resistance against pull-out along the ground-soil nail interface;
- L_{po} is the total length of the soil nail in the zone, where pull-out resistance are mobilised.

NOTE 1 Pull-out resistance can be influenced by dynamic actions.

NOTE 2 The interface shear resistance can vary along the nail depending on the soil conditions

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (3) Representative value of pull-out resistance between tendon of the reinforcing element and the grouted body shall be verified.

NOTE The failure between core and grouted body can be neglected for soil nails with the threaded bar fulfilling the minimum relative rib thread according to EN 1992-1-1.

- (4) The perimeter of the soil nail, P , should be determined as a nominal value with consideration of nail type and ground properties.

NOTE For soil nails that is not circular e.g. L-shape or grouted soil nails, the perimeter is estimated based on assumed shape of the failure surface enclosing the soil nail.

- (5) The perimeter of a grouted soil nail may be determined as a nominal value of the perimeter of the drilled hole for installation.

- (6) The pull-out resistance shall be determined by testing directly from investigation tests or verified from suitability tests or by calculation.

NOTE 1 Investigation test is used to confirm the ultimate interface friction in the passive zone, active zone or the entire length of the nail.

NOTE 2 From the suitability test the lower bound is obtained as the soil nail is usually not tested to failure.

- (7) In case of determination by calculation, the value of τ_{po} in Formula (10.2)(10.2)(10.2)(10.2) shall be determined from Formula (10.3)(10.3):

$$\tau_{po} = \mu_{po} \cdot \sigma'_n \quad (10.3)$$

where:

σ'_n is the normal effective stress acting on the soil nail at point x ;

μ_{po} is the coefficient of friction determined in laboratory tests in representative conditions or from field tests.

- (8) For soil nails in GC3, the pull-out resistance shall be determined from investigation tests or verified by suitability tests.

- (9) Where the representative interface shear resistance value τ_{po} is derived in accordance with (7) the soil nail test frequency shall comply with 10.9.

- (10) The performance of the production soil nails at the proof load shall be demonstrated by acceptance tests, see 10.9.2.1

- (11) The representative pull-out resistance from the active zone may be increased by any resistance at the connection to the facing.

10.5.3.2 Resistance of facing system

- (4) For wire mesh in soil nailed structure 10.5.2.3.1 shall apply.

- (5) For sprayed concrete in soil nailed structure 10.5.2.3.2 shall apply.

- (6) Soil nailed structures with the sprayed concrete shall be designed to resist the earth pressure from the ground.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (7) <PER> In case of sprayed concrete, for the design of the facing of a ground structure reinforced with soil nails. the earth pressure from the ground $e_{d,ah}$ may be derived from the maximum design nail head force $N_{d,Head}$ according to Formula (10.4):

$$e_{d,ah} = \frac{N_{d,Head}}{(S_h \cdot S_v)} \quad (10.3)$$

where:

S_h S_v are the distances between the soil nails in horizontal and vertical direction respectively.

- (8) For other facing elements used for soil nailed structures 10.5.2.3.3 shall apply.

10.6 Ultimate limit states

10.6.1 General

10.6.1.1 Rock bolts and soil nails

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2 shall apply to rock bolts and soil nails
- (2) The design value of the ultimate limit state resistance of a soil nail or a rock bolt shall along its entire length satisfy Formula (10.4)

$$E_d \leq \min(R_{d,po}, R_{d,el}, R_{d,con}) \quad (10.4)$$

where:

E_d is the maximum value of the design value of the effects of actions (see 10.5.1);

$R_{d,po}$ is the design value of a rock bolts or soil nail interface resistance (pull-out);

$R_{d,el}$ is the design value of the structural resistance of the rock bolt or soil (equal to the tension resistance $R_{td,el}$ and the shear resistance $R_{sd,el}$ nail and any joints/couplings that is part of it;

$R_{td,con}$ is the design value of the resulting resistance of the connection of the rock bolt or soil nail to the facing.

- (9) When the length in the active zone is insufficient to provide the resistance needed, the transfer of load to the head plate may be taken into account.

10.6.1.2 Wire mesh

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2 shall apply to wire mesh.

10.6.1.3 Sprayed concrete

- (2) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2 shall apply to sprayed concrete.
- (3) For verification of reinforced sprayed concrete EN 1992 (relevant parts) shall apply.
- (4) For the specifications and conformity of sprayed concrete EN 14487-1 should apply.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

10.6.1.4 Other facing elements

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2 shall apply to other facing elements.
 - (2) The structural resistance of geosynthetic facing elements shall comply with 9.6.2.5.
 - (3) The structural resistance of facing elements of concrete, steel, masonry, and timber shall comply with EN 1992 (all parts), EN 1993 (all parts), EN 1996 (all parts) and EN 1995 (all parts), respectively.
 - (4) The design strength of facing elements may be determined by testing.
- NOTE Guidance about design assisted by testing is given in EN 1990, Annex D.
- (5) The bending and shear resistance to bulging between connections shall be verified.
 - (6) The stability against toppling of the facing elements not connected to ground reinforcements above the top layer of reinforcement shall be verified.
 - (7) The punching resistance of the facing shall be verified.
 - (8) The flexural resistance and reinforcement detailing of concrete, steel, and other hard facings shall be verified.
 - (9) The durability of the facing material itself and all connections for the design service life shall be verified.

10.6.2 Verification by partial factor method

10.6.2.1 Rock support

10.6.2.1.1 Rock bolts

- (1) Partial factors for the verification of rock bolts at the ultimate limit state shall be determined according to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.4.1, using the Resistance Factor Approach.
- (2) The design structural resistance (tensile resistance $R_{td,el}$ and shear resistance $R_{sd,el}$) of steel shall comply with 10.6.2.2.1.2.
- (3) For rock bolts loaded in tension and shear the angle between loading action direction and the angle of rock bolt installation shall be considered.
- (4) The design value of the pull-out resistance ($R_{d,po}$) shall be determined from Formula (10.5~~10.5~~).

$$R_{d,po} = \frac{R_{po;test;rep}}{\gamma_{R,po}} = \frac{1}{\gamma_{R,po}} \min \left\{ \frac{R_{po;mean}}{\xi_{mean}}; \frac{R_{po;min}}{\xi_{min}} \right\} \quad (10.5)$$

where:

- $R_{po,mean}$ is the mean pull-out resistance measured for a set of investigation or suitability tests;
- $R_{po,min}$ is the minimum pull-out resistance measured for a set of investigation or suitability tests;
- ξ_{mean} is the correlation factor for the mean of the calculated values obtained by investigation tests or suitability tests;

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

ξ_{\min} is the correlation factor for the minimum of the calculated values obtained by investigation tests or suitability tests;

$\gamma_{R,po}$ is a partial factor, given in Table 10.1.

NOTE The correlation factors ξ_{mean} and ξ_{\min} are given in ~~Table 10.1~~ (NDP) unless the National Annex gives different values.

Table 10.1 — (NDP) Correlation factor for rock bolts and soil nails

Correlation factor	Number of							
	1	2	3	4	5	7	10	20
ξ_{mean}	1,4	1,3	1,2	1,1	1,05			
ξ_{\min}	1,4	1,2	1,05	1,0	1,0			

(5) As an alternative to (4) the design pull-out resistance ($R_{d,po}$) may be determined from Formula (10.6) (10.6)

$$R_{d,po} = \frac{R_{rep,po,calc}}{\gamma_{R,po} \cdot \gamma_{Rd}} \quad (10.6)$$

where:

$R_{rep,po,calc}$ is the representative pull-out resistance determined by calculation;

$\gamma_{R,po}$ is a partial factor, given in ;

γ_{Rd} model factor.

NOTE The value of the model factor γ_{Rd} is 1,5 unless the National Annex gives a different value.

Table 10.2 — (NDP) Partial factors for the verification of resistance of rock bolts for persistent and transient design situations

Verification of	Partial factor on	Symbol	Resistance Factor Approach (RFA)
Structural resistance of reinforcing element and any connections.	Steel		See prEN 1993-1
Geotechnical resistance, mobilised at the interface between rock bolt, grout and/or rock.	Pull-out	$\gamma_{R,po}$	1,5

10.6.2.1.2 Facing systems

10.6.2.1.2.1 Wire mesh

(1) Partial factors for the verification of wire mesh at the ultimate limit state shall be determined according to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.4.1, using the Resistance Factor Approach.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

(2) The design tensile resistance ($R_{td,el}$) of steel woven wire mesh facings of the wires shall be determined from Formula (9.18)

(6) The design connection resistance ($R_{d,con}$) of a wire mesh shall be determined from Formula (10.7)

$$R_{d,con} = \frac{R_{rep,con}}{\gamma_{R,con}} \quad (10.7)$$

where:

$R_{rep,con}$ is the representative connection resistance of the wire mesh to its connection element or rock bolt;

$\gamma_{R,con}$ is a partial factor, given in ;

10.6.2.1.2.2 Sprayed concrete

(1) prEN 1992 (all parts) shall apply for verification of sprayed concrete.

10.6.2.1.2.3 Other facing elements

(1) For verification of facing elements of concrete, steel, masonry, or timber EN 1992, EN 1993, EN 1996, and EN 1995 (all parts) shall apply where relevant.

(2) For verification for other facing elements 9.6 should apply.

10.6.2.2 Soil nailed structures

10.6.2.2.1 Soil nails

10.6.2.2.1.1 Failure at the interface between the ground and the soil nail (pull-out)

(1) The pull-out resistance of a soil nail shall be verified using Formula (10.8)

$$E_d \leq R_{d,po} \quad (10.8)$$

where:

E_d is the maximum value of the design value of the effects of actions;

$R_{d,po}$ is the design pull-out resistance of the soil nail.

(2) The Material factor Approach (MFA) shall only be used in combination with the Ground Model Method.

(3) When using the Material Factor Approach, the design pull-out resistance ($R_{d,po}$) of a soil nail shall be determined from Formula (10.9):

$$R_{po;d} = \frac{1}{\gamma_{Rd}} \int_0^{L_{po}} P(x) \cdot \tau_{po;d}(x) \cdot dx = \frac{1}{\gamma_{Rd}} \int_0^{L_{po}} P(x) \cdot \frac{\mu_{po}}{\gamma_{tan\phi}} \cdot \sigma'_n(x) \cdot dx \quad (10.9)$$

where:

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

P	is the length of the perimeter of the soil nail at point x along the pull-out length of the soil nail;
$\tau_{po;d}$	is the design shear resistance against pull-out along the ground-soil nail interface;
L_{po}	is the total length of the soil nail in the zone, where pull-out resistance is mobilised.
μ_{po}	is the coefficient of friction determined in laboratory tests or from field tests.

$\gamma_{tan\phi}$ is a partial factor, given in EN1997-1, Table 4.7

σ'_n	is the normal effective stress acting on the soil nail at point x ;
γ_{Rd}	is a model factor given in Table 10.2 (NDP)

(4) When using the Resistance Factor Approach, the design pull-out resistance ($R_{po;d}$) of a soil nail shall be determined from Formula (10.10).

$$R_{po;d} = \frac{R_{po;rep}}{\gamma_{R,po} * \gamma_{Rd}} \quad (10.10)$$

where:

$R_{po;rep}$ is the representative pull-out resistance of the reinforcing element;

$\gamma_{R,po}$ is a partial factor, given in Table 10.3

γ_{Rd} is a model factor given in Table 10.2 (NDP)

NOTE Values of γ_{Rd} are given in [Table 10.3](#) (NDP) for verification by testing or calculations unless the National Annex gives different values.

Table 10.3 — (NDP) Model factor γ_{Rd} for verification of soil nails pull-out resistance by calculations or testing

Verification of soil nail pull-out resistance by		Model factor γ_{Rd}
Testing only ^a		1,0
Calculation based on ground properties determined from field and laboratory tests Ground model method ^b	Investigation, suitability and acceptance tests	1,2
	Acceptance tests only	1,4
	No testing	1,6
Calculation based on ground resistance profiles determined from correlations with field test results or ground properties from field or laboratory tests Model Pile method ^b	Pressuremeter test, or Cone penetration test, or Profiles of ground properties based on other field or laboratory tests	1,4
^a The methodology of clause 6.6.1.6 (as for micropiles) can be used for determination of representative pull-out resistance designed by testing ($R_{rep}=R_{test}$)		

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

^b The methodology of clause 6.6.1.6 (as for micropiles) can be used for determination of representative pull-out resistance designed by calculation based on ground resistance profiles determined from correlations with field test results or ground properties from field or laboratory tests ($R_{rep}=R_{calc}$)

- (1) For design by calculation using the Ground Model Method, the representative value of resistance of a single soil nail $R_{po;rep}$ shall be determined from Formula (10.2)10.2, using representative values.
- (2) For design by calculation using the Model Pile Method, the representative value of resistance of a single nail $R_{po;rep}$ shall be determined from Formula (10.11)10.11:

$$R_{rep;po} = \min \left\{ \frac{R_{calc;mean}}{\xi_{mean}}; \frac{R_{calc;min}}{\xi_{min}} \right\} \quad (10.11)$$

where:

$R_{calc;mean}$	is the mean pull-out resistance calculated for a set of profiles of field test results;
$R_{calc;min}$	is the minimum pull-out resistance calculated for a set of profiles of field test results;
ξ_{mean}	Is the correlation factor for the mean of the calculated values;
ξ_{min}	is the correlation factor for the minimum of the calculated values.

- (3) For design by testing, the representative value of resistance of a single nail $R_{rep;po}$ shall be determined from Formula (10.13):

$$R_{rep;po} = \min \left\{ \frac{R_{test;mean}}{\xi_{mean}}; \frac{R_{test;min}}{\xi_{min}} \right\} \quad (10.12)$$

where:

$R_{test;mean}$	is the mean pull-out resistance measured for a set of investigation tests;
$R_{test;min}$	is the minimum pull-out resistance measured for a set of investigation tests;
ξ_{mean}	is the correlation factor for the mean of the calculated values obtained by investigation tests;
ξ_{min}	is the correlation factor for the minimum of the calculated values obtained by investigation tests.

NOTE The correlation factors ξ_{mean} and ξ_{min} are given in Table 10.1Table 10.1 (NDP) unless the National Annex gives different values.

- (2) The design pull-out resistance should be verified by suitability or acceptance tests according to 10.9.2.

10.6.2.2.1.2 Rupture of the soil nail (tensile and shear)

- (1) The design tensile resistance ($R_{td,el}$) of steel soil nails shall comply with prEN 1993-5, 8.11 considering any anticipated loss of strength with time.

NOTE For grouted soil nails the same rules apply as for grouted tension piles as specified in EN 1993-5.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (2) The design shear resistance ($R_{sd,el}$) of steel soil nails shall comply with prEN 1993-1-1:2022, 8, considering any anticipated loss of strength with time.

NOTE For grouted soil nails /reinforcing steel partial factor γ_s applies unless the National Annex gives different values

- (3) If it can be proven, with comparable experience, that the contribution from the shear resistance of the nail to the total resistance of the soil nail is significant, the shear resistance may be added as contribution.
- (4) Where the corrosion protection is provided by sacrificial thickness allowance, the reduced cross-sectional area shall be determined from 10.6.5.2.
- (5) When the design includes shear and bending effects of the soil nail, the structural resulting resistance shall be determined according to the prEN 1993-1-1:2022, 8.2.10 for combined axial, shear, and bending actions.

NOTE For grouted soil nails/reinforcing steel partial factor γ_s (see Table 10.3) applies unless the National Annex gives different values

10.6.2.2.1.3 Tensile resistance of connections, joints and couplings

- (1) The design tensile resistance of a connection, joint or coupling ($R_{d,con}$) shall be verified for the same design load as the soil nail itself.
- (2) For steel soil nails, $R_{d,con}$ shall comply with prEN 1993-1-1:2022, 8.

NOTE For grouted soil nails/reinforcing steel partial factor γ_s (see Table 10.3) applies unless the National Annex gives different values

10.6.2.2.2 Facing systems

- (1) For the verification of the wire mesh in soil nailed structures, 10.6.2.1.2.1 shall apply.
- (2) <REQ> For the verification of sprayed concrete in soil nailed structures, 10.6.2.1.2.2 shall apply.
- (3) <REQ> For the verification of other facing elements in soil nailed structures, 10.6.2.1.2.3 shall apply.

10.6.2.3 Partial factors

- (1) Partial factors for the verification of rock supported structures and soil nailed structures at the ultimate limit state shall be determined according to EN 1997-1, 4.4.1, using either the Material Factor Approach or Resistance Factor Approach.

NOTE The National Annex can specify which Factor Approach is to be used.

NOTE Values of the partial factors are given in [Table 10.4](#) ~~Table 10.4~~ (NDP) for persistent and transient design situations unless the National Annex gives different values.

Table 10.4 — (NDP) Partial factors for the verification of resistance of rock supported structures and soil nailed structures for persistent and transient design situations

Verification of	Partial factor on	Symbol	Material factor approach (MFA)	Resistance factor approach (RFA)
-----------------	-------------------	--------	--------------------------------	----------------------------------

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Overall and compound stability	See Clause 4			
Bearing resistance and sliding	See Clause 5			
Overturning	See Clause 7			
Internal stability, facing,	Actions and Effects of Actions	F, E	VC3 ^a	VC1 ^a
	Ground and fill properties	M	M2 ^b	Not factored
Geotechnical resistance, mobilised at the interface between rock bolt /soil nail and ground	Pull-out resistance	R _{po}	Not factored	1,25
Structural resistance of rock bolt and soil nail and any connections	structural steel per EN 10025, EN 10210, EN 10219	γ _{M0} ^c , γ _{M2} ^c	As specified in EN 1993-1-1	
	Reinforcing steel per EN 10080, pre-stressing steel per EN 10138	γ _s	As specified in EN 1992-1-1	
Wire mesh	Tensile resistance of steel wires or ropes		As specified in EN 1993-1-11	
	Tensile resistance of wire mesh	γ _{Rd,pwm} γ _{M,pwm}	As specified in 9.6.2.1.3	
	Connection of adjacent wire mesh panels	γ _{R,con}	1,35	
	Connection to rock bolts and soil nails ^d		As specified in EN 1993-1-1	
Sprayed concrete	Structural resistance of sprayed and any connections		As specified in EN 1992-1-1	
Other facing elements	Structural resistance of other facing elements and any connections		Not factored	

^a Values of the partial factors for Verification Cases(VCs) 1 and 3 are given in prEN 1990:2021

^b Values of the partial factors for Set M2 are given in prEN 1997-1:2022, Table 4.7

^c For grouted soil nails/reinforcing steel partial factor γ applies

^d The general rules of EN 1993-1-1 apply for the verification of shearing and punching at the interface of the head plate and the wire mesh

10.6.3 Verification by prescriptive rules

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.5 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.
- (2) If prescriptive rules are used for verification, the inspection plan shall include quality measures to ensure that the installed bolts, soil nails, wire mesh and sprayed concrete fulfil the limitations specified for the prescriptive rule.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

10.6.4 Verification by testing

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.6 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.

NOTE For testing see 10.5.5.

- (4) When wire mesh is to be verified by testing, also its connection should be tested.

10.6.5 Verification by Observational Method

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.7 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.

- (2) The spacing, length and diameter of rock bolts and soil nails shall be modified if adverse ground or groundwater conditions or geometry are encountered

NOTE the rock quality or weakness or weathered zone causing potential failure as they have been assessed during the investigations and the design, determines the rock bolt dimensions. These evolve at each stage of the works in progress, after the exact patterns of the rock mass appear or the effects of this pattern is measured during the constant surveying of the works.

- (1) The extent and locations of the wire meshes to be installed in relation to the observed conditions at site should be part of the verification by the Observational Method.
- (2) The extent and thickness of the sprayed concrete to be installed in relation to the observed conditions at site should part of the verification by the Observational Method.

10.7 Serviceability limit state

10.7.1 General

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 9 shall apply to reinforced ground structures

10.7.2 Serviceability limit state of the geotechnical structure

- (1) Verification of serviceability limit state of the reinforced ground structure including the ground within the zone of the influence should comply with Clauses 4, 5, and 7.
- (2) It shall be verified that the deformation of the reinforced ground structure is within the limiting values for the used facing elements.

10.7.3 Serviceability limit state of the reinforced ground structure itself

- (1) Total and differential deformation of the reinforced ground structure both vertically and horizontally shall comply with the specified limiting values.
- (2) Internal deformation of the reinforced ground structure shall comply with the specified limiting values.

10.7.4 Serviceability limit state of reinforcing element

- (1) Elongation of the reinforcing elements both in the short and long term shall comply with specified limiting values.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

10.7.5 Serviceability limit states of facing system

- (1) The bulging of the facing systems shall be limited to ensure compliance with the specification.
- (2) The deformations of the structure face shall be limited to avoid spalling and extensive cracking of facing panels, blocks or sprayed concrete.

10.8 Implementation of design

10.8.1 General

10.8.1.1 Overall aspects

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, Clause 10 shall apply to reinforced ground structures
- (2) In addition to (1) EN 14490 shall apply to soil nailed structures’.
- (3) Grouted rock bolts without bearing plates shall be grouted over their full length of the rock bolt.
- (4) Grouted rock bolts should be installed in groundwater-controlled rock conditions.
- (5) For a rock support with a rear discontinuity maintained by dowelling with multiple bolts, the deviation of the rock bolt from the theoretical axis should be checked to ensure the equal contribution of all the bolts.
- (6) Seepages or ground water flow from exposed faces should be controlled in accordance with Clause 12.
- (7) If groundwater-controlled rock conditions cannot be achieved, additional measures should be used.

10.8.1.2 Wire mesh

- (1) Ground conditions shall be inspected at site by geotechnical mapping.
- (2) Structures with loosened rock hanging on to the wire mesh should be checked.
- (3) If the wire mesh is connected to bolts or nails, the bearing plates shall be visually inspected to ensure that they are fully connected to the mesh and bearing on the ground surface.
- (4) If the wire mesh is not fully connected, further inspection, assessment and measures shall be designed and implemented.
- (5) If the wire mesh is embedded in sprayed concrete, the requirement specified for sprayed concrete in 10.8.1.3 shall apply.

10.8.1.3 Sprayed concrete

- (1) The ground surface shall be inspected on adhesion bondage between ground and sprayed concrete.
- (2) Sprayed concrete shall be specified to be installed in dry or controlled water conditions to avoid reduction of adhesion.

NOTE EN 14490 gives specific guidance regarding shotcrete and drainage installation

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (3) Seepage of water in exposed faces should be checked to be within specified limits before execution of sprayed concrete.
- (4) Preparation of the ground surface, according (2) and (2) may be omitted, if transient design situations demand for immediate spraying of concrete.

10.8.2 Inspection

- (1) In addition to EN 1997-1, 10.3 , the Inspection Plan should include, but is not limited to:
 - verification of excavation levels and excavated face within the specified tolerances;
 - verification of the type, number, and arrangement of reinforcing elements;
 - verification of the quality of the assembly of the reinforcing elements;
 - verification of facing system alignment;
 - verification of the connections of soil nail or rock bolt with facing;
 - verification of adequate performance of any drainage system installed.

10.8.3 Monitoring

- (1) In addition to EN 1997-1, 10.4, the Monitoring Plan should include, but is not limited to:
 - monitoring of the behaviour of reinforcement element;
 - lateral and vertical displacements and distortions of the reinforced ground structures.

10.8.4 Maintenance

- (1) EN 1997-1, 10.5 shall apply to reinforced ground structures

10.9 Testing

10.9.1 Rock bolts

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, Clause 11 shall apply to rock bolts.
- (2) Rock bolts should be tested using one or more of the following:
 - Investigation test
 - Suitability tests
 - Acceptance tests
 - Quality tests

NOTE 1 Investigation tests are considered as sacrificial rock bolt test done prior to installation of the production rock bolts to define τ_{po} .

NOTE 2 Suitability tests are done during the execution to confirm that the pull-out resistance used during the design will be adequate in particular ground conditions.

NOTE 3 Acceptance tension load tests are used to demonstrate that production rock bolt installation methods and the ground conditions encountered result in rock bolts with satisfactory load displacement characteristics.

NOTE 4 The acceptance criteria for rock bolts can be specified in the National Annex or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by the relevant parties.

NOTE 5 Quality tests could be used to confirm the proper installation of rock bolts, as defined in execution standards or recommendations.

SC7 NOTE [#173]:
CR0010 Anchors and
Rock bolts

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

NOTE 6 An example of a quality test for grouting is visual inspection.

NOTE 7 Examples of non-destructive in situ quality tests, are acoustic or ultrasonic testing by RBT (Rock Bolt Tester) tests.

NOTE 8 EN ISO 22477-6 testing of soil nails and rock bolts are under preparation. As long as this standard is not published, a National Annex can refer to other technical specifications, e.g. EN 14490, Annex C.

- (2)
- (3) Acceptance tests, investigation tests and visual inspection of grouting shall be used to confirm an adequate installation and to control the quality of the grout.
- (4) The minimum number of acceptance tests and quality test should be determined depending on the type, size, Geotechnical Category, and condition of the structure to be supported.

NOTE 1 The minimum number of tests can be given in the National Annex, or where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by the relevant parties.

NOTE 2 The minimum number of investigation test and suitability tests is given in [Table 10.5](#) (NDP), unless the national annex give different values.

Table 10.5 — (NDP) Minimum number of investigation and suitability tests for rock bolts.

Geotechnical Category	Investigation tests	Acceptance tests	Visual inspection of grouting
GC2	minimum of 3	minimum 1 %, with a minimum of 3.	Minimum 75 % of the grouted bolts.
GC3	minimum of 5	minimum 2 %, with a minimum of 5.	Minimum 100 % of the grouted bolts.

SC7 NOTE [#174]:
CR0010 Anchors and Rock bolts

SC7 NOTE [#175]:
CR0010 Anchors and Rock bolts

- (5) If a load test is conducted on a production rock bolt and the bolt fails before the proof load is achieved, consideration should be given to downgrading the resistance.

NOTE Additional rock bolts can be installed to provide sufficient resistance and long-term stability.

- (6) <RCM> Quality test on the grout should comply with EN 12390-2.
- (7) <RCM> The test rock bolts should be evenly distributed throughout the structure.
- (8) <RCM> An investigation test should be performed for the part of the rock bolt, which has to provide the design pull-out resistance.

10.9.2 Soil nailed structures

10.9.2.1 Pull-out resistance of a soil nail

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022,11 shall apply to soil nails.
- (2) Testing of soil nails shall comply with EN ISO 22477-6

NOTE 1 As long as this standard is not published, a National Annex can refer to other technical specifications, e.g. EN 14490, Annex C.

SC7 NOTE [#176]: CR0027
Reference to testing standards
All specific references to testing standards changed to shall.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

NOTE 2 Investigation tests are in EN 14490 referred to as sacrificial nail test.

NOTE 3 Suitability tests are done during the execution to confirm that the pull-out resistance used during the design will be adequate in the particular ground conditions.

NOTE 4 Acceptance tests are in EN 14490 referred to as production nail test.

NOTE 3 Limiting values for acceptance criteria in investigation and acceptance tests are given in Table 10.4(NDP), unless the National Annex gives different values.

(3) Acceptance test shall be used to confirm an adequate installation

(4) The required number of acceptance tests should be defined depending on the type of soil nails, Geotechnical Category and condition of the structure to be supported.

NOTE The minimum number of investigation and acceptance test is given in Table 10.4 (NDP), unless the national annex gives different values.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Table 10.4 — (NDP) Minimum number of investigation and acceptance tests for soil nails

Geotechnical Category	Investigation tests	Acceptance tests
GC2	Minimum 1 test per distinct geotechnical unit, with a total of minimum 3 test per site.	Minimum 2 % of the production nails, with a minimum of 3 nails.
GC3	Minimum 2 test per distinct geotechnical unit, with a total of minimum 5 test per site.	Minimum 3 % of the production nails, with a minimum of 5 nails.

(1) The acceptance criteria for soil nails shall be defined prior to the execution as established by the relevant authority or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by the relevant parties

NOTE Limiting values for acceptance criteria for investigation, suitability and acceptance tests are given in Table 10.6 (NDP), unless the National Annex gives different values or if no other national standard or guidance agreed by the parties have been stated.

Table 10.4 — (NDP) Acceptance criterion for investigation, suitability and acceptance test of Soil nails.

Acceptance criteria	Investigation or suitability test	Acceptance test
Creep rate ^a at maximum proof load, P_p	2 mm	2 ^c mm
Maximum measured extension of the head of the test nail at the proof load, P_p	\geq the elastic extension of L_{db} ^b	\geq the elastic extension of L_{db} ^b
^a The creep rate is defined as $(s_2 - s_1) / \log(t_2 / t_1)$, where s_1 and s_2 are the measured nail displacement at time 1 and time 2 respectively. [time 2 > time 1] ^b L_{db} is the debonded length of the test nail. If no specific part is debonded, the length L_{db} denotes the equivalent elastic length of the test nail. ^c The creep rate is related to the proof load P_p ; for values of P_p lower than $R_{rep,po}$, a lower value of creep rate acceptance criterion should be considered		

- (1)
- (1) For investigation tests the target proof load, P_p , should be estimated from the expected representative pull-out resistance (see Formula (10.2)10.2).
- (2) The representative pull-out resistance is determined as maximum test load in the investigation test, where the creep rate does not exceed the acceptance criterion.
- NOTE Values of the acceptance criterion for different tests are given in Table 10.4 (NDP).
- (3) The acceptance criteria of the creep rate may be adjusted to a smaller value in the design.
- (4) The test nails should be evenly distributed throughout the structure.
- (5) Investigation test should be performed for the part of the soil nail, which has to provide the design pull-out resistance.
- (6) The proof load for acceptance tests, P_p shall be at least equal to the design value of the effect of actions E_d (see Formula (10.4)10.4)).

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (7) The design pull-out resistance has been verified with the acceptance test when the specified creep rate in Table 10.4 (NDP) is not exceeded at the value of P_p .

NOTE The value of the proof load P_p can be specified in the National Annex

- (8) Acceptance test may be performed on the production nails full length, without debonding a specific test part of the nail.
- (9) If load tests are conducted on production soil nails and the nails fail before P_p is achieved consideration shall be given to downgrading the resistance.

NOTE Additional soil nails can be installed to provide sufficient resistance and long-term stability

10.9.2.2 Face stability test

- (1) If the execution involves excavation, the face stability should be checked in accordance with EN 14490.
- (2) If the stability of the face can be verified by comparable experience, the face stability check may be omitted.

10.9.3 Wire mesh

- (1) Testing shall comply with EN 1997-1, 11, clause 9 or EN 14490 if applicable.

10.9.4 Sprayed concrete

- (1) EN 1997-1, 11 shall apply to sprayed concrete
- (2) EN 14487 and EN 14488 should apply.
- (3) Nominal sprayed concrete thicknesses shall be verified.

NOTE Thicknesses may be verified by surface scanning before and after constructing or by measuring it in small, drilled holes through the sprayed concrete.

10.9.5 Other facing elements

- (4) Testing shall comply with EN 1997-1, Clause 11, clause 9 or EN 14490 if applicable.

10.10 Reporting

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, Clause 12 shall apply to reinforced ground structures.

11 Ground improvement

11.1 Scope and field of application

- (1) This Clause shall apply to ground improvement for the following geotechnical structures:
- slopes, cuttings, and embankments (see Clause 4);
 - spread foundations (see Clause 5);
 - retaining structures (see Clause 7).
- (2) Ground improvement design shall be classified according to ~~Table 11.6~~ Table 11.6:

SC7 NOTE [#177]:
CR0200 has been implemented in this clause. Changes marked with track-change, without specific mention of CR0200.

SC7 NOTE [#178]:
CR0022 Definition and application rigid inclusion Added paragraphs but not change order of paragraph (1) and (2) to be consistent with other clauses.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- diffused ground improvement (classes AI and AII); or
- discrete ground improvement (classes BI and BII).

NOTE 1 Examples of ground improvement techniques for these two families are given in Annex G.

NOTE 2 Groundwater control techniques are addressed in Clause 12.

Table 11.6 — Classification of ground improvement

Class	Family	
	A – Diffused	B – Discrete
I	AI – Diffused with no unconfined compressive strength The improved ground has an increased shear strength or stiffness higher than that of the original ground. The improved ground can be modelled as a ground with improved properties.	BI – Discrete with non-rigid inclusions Inclusions, installed in the ground, with higher shear capacity and stiffness compared to the surrounding ground. The unconfined compressive strength of the inclusion is not measurable.
II	AII – Ground improvement zone with unconfined compressive strength The improved ground is modified from its original natural state, has a measurable unconfined compressive strength and is significantly stiffer than the surrounding ground. Usually, it comprises a composite of a binder and ground.	BII – Discrete with rigid inclusions Rigid inclusions, installed in the ground, with unconfined compressive strength significantly stiffer than the surrounding ground. The inclusions can be an engineered material such as timber, concrete/grout or steel or a composite of a binder and ground.

(3) For techniques belonging to **class BII**, one of the following conditions should be satisfied:

- structural loads are transferred from the foundation slab or embankment through a load transfer platform into the improved ground (see Figure 11.1a); or
- in absence of load transfer platform, there is no structural connection between the improved ground and the foundation slab or embankment (see Figure 11.1b).

NOTE BII rigid inclusions include those in Figure 11.1

SC7 NOTE [#179]:
CR0139 and CR0200

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

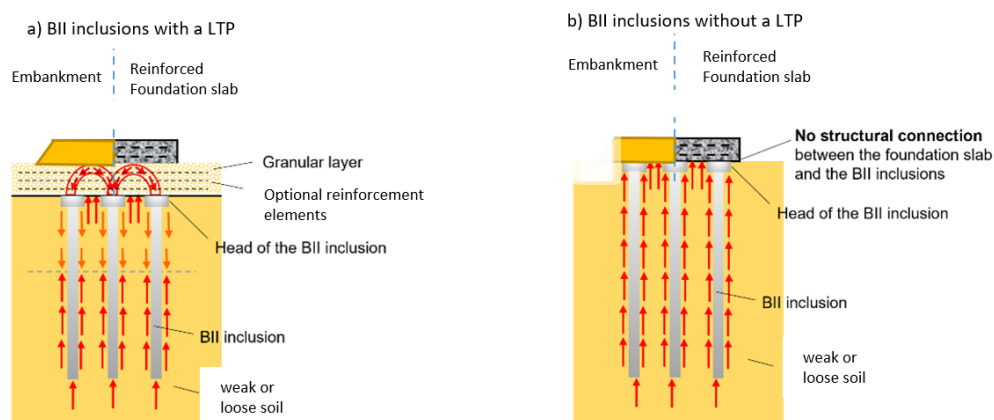


Figure 11.1— Rigid inclusion (BII) concepts covered by clause 11

a) Embankment or reinforced foundation slab with a LTP (Load transfer Platform)

b) Embankment or reinforced foundation slab without a LTP (Load transfer Platform)

- (4) In the absence of a load transfer platform, additional verifications may be considered during the design and the execution according to the design situations.

NOTE Examples of verifications are stress concentrations at the top of the inclusions and internal forces into the foundation slab.

- (5) In the absence of a load transfer platform, foundations supported by a single element of class BII shall comply with Clause 6.

11.2 Basis of design

11.2.1 Design situations

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2.2 shall apply to ground improvement.
- (2) For ground improvement subject to alteration over time, design of temporary works shall specify the maximum design service life or specify any extensions to the period of temporary use.

NOTE Some forms of ground improvement might not have sufficient design service life for a temporary use which could be extended. An example would be the use of some chemical grouts which deteriorate relatively quickly.

11.2.2 Geometrical properties

- (1) In addition to prEN 1990:2021 6.3 and 8.3.7, and pr1997-1:2022, 4.3.3, minimum deviation Δa of geometrical properties shall be considered in ground improvement design.
- (2) The geometrical properties of the ground improvement shall be specified by the relevant execution standard.

NOTE 1 In the absence of a relevant execution standard geometrical properties can be specified in the National Annex.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

NOTE 2 When no national choices are made, the values of geometrical properties can be specified by a relevant authority.

- (5) In the absence of specification according to (2) the geometrical properties shall be based on comparable experience or, in the absence of comparable experience, on the results of trials.

11.2.3 Zone of influence

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.2.1 shall apply to ground improvement.

11.2.4 Actions and environmental influences

11.2.4.1 General

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1 shall apply to ground improvement
- (2) In addition to (1) relevant clauses of prEN 1997-3:2022 shall apply to ground improvement.
- (3) The ground improvement technique should be selected considering the following:
- the design situation and load variation;
 - thickness and properties of the ground or fill material;
 - water pressure in the various strata;
 - nature, size and position of the structure to be supported by the ground;
 - prevention of damage to adjacent structures or services during execution;
 - whether the ground improvement is temporary or permanent;
 - in terms of anticipated deformations, the relationship between the ground improvement technique and the construction sequence;
 - the effects on the environment including pollution by deleterious substances or changes in groundwater level;
 - the durability of the improved ground;
 - any long term deterioration of the ground.

11.2.4.2 Cyclic and dynamic actions

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1.3 shall apply to ground improvement.
- (2) Sub-clause 6.2.3.3 in this document shall apply to rigid inclusion.

11.2.4.3 Actions due to ground displacement

- (1) The adverse effects of vertical and horizontal ground movement on ground improvement inclusions shall be considered.
- (2) A sensitivity analysis should be carried out to determine for each design situation whether the upper or lower representative improved ground property is the least favourable.

11.2.4.4 Downdrag

- (1) For Class II ground improvement, downdrag shall be considered at the perimeter of the improved ground zone.
- (2) The calculation of the maximum drag force shall consider the following:

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- the shear resistance at the interface between the soil and the improved ground zone;
- downward movement of the ground due to self-weight compression;
- any surface load around the improved ground zone; or
- changes in groundwater levels.

SC7 NOTE [#180]:
Editorial: Use improved ground zone.

(3) An upper bound to the drag force on a ground improvement zone may be determined from the weight of the surcharge or change in groundwater level causing the movement, considering any changes in groundwater pressure due to groundwater lowering, consolidation or execution.

(4) Interaction calculations should take account of the displacement of the improved groundzone relative to the surrounding moving ground.

NOTE 6.5.2.2 in this document provides guidelines to assess the drag force.

11.2.4.5 Heave

- (1) Where heave of the ground results in transfer of load to the improved ground zone, it shall be considered as an action.
- (2) If improved ground zone is subject to heave that results in tensile forces or stresses, the installation of reinforcement should be considered.

11.2.4.6 Transverse loading

- (1) Transverse actions originating from ground movements, vehicles, or other sources around or above a ground improvement zone shall be included in the verification of limit states.
- (2) Transverse loading of discrete ground improvement should be evaluated by considering the interaction between the ground improvement inclusion, treated as stiff or flexible beams, and the moving soil mass.
- (3) If improved ground zone is subject to transverse loading that results in tensile forces or stresses exceeding the material's tensile strength, the installation of reinforcement shall be considered.
- (4) Potential extrusion of low strength fine soil around or between discrete ground improvement inclusions should be considered.

11.2.4.7 Environmental influences

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1.5 shall apply to ground improvement.

11.2.5 Limit states

11.2.5.1 Ultimate Limit States

- (1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.1, ultimate limit states for ground improvement shall be as for:
 - slopes, cuttings, and embankments (see Clause 4);
 - spread foundations (see Clause 5);
 - retaining structures (see Clause 7).
- (2) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.1, the following ultimate limit states shall be verified:
 - bearing resistance failure below the ground improvement inclusion or zone;

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- uplift or insufficient tensile resistance of the improved ground zone;
- failure in the ground due to transverse loading of the improved ground zone;
- failure of the ground improvement inclusion or zone in compression, tension, bending, buckling or shear;
- combined failure in the ground and in ground improvement inclusion or zone;
- limit states caused by changes in groundwater conditions or groundwater pressures (see 11.4).

(3) Potential ultimate limit states other than those given in (1) and (2) should be verified.

11.2.5.2 Serviceability Limit States

(1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 9, serviceability limit states for ground improvement shall be as defined for:

- slopes, cuttings, and embankments (see Clause 4);
- spread foundations (see Clause 5);
- retaining structures (see Clause 7).

(2) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 9, the following serviceability limit states shall be verified for all ground improvement:

- ground improvement zone or inclusion settlement and differential settlements;
- heave;
- transverse movement;
- movement or distortion of the supported structure caused by ground improvement zone movement.

(3) Potential serviceability limit states other than those given in (1) and (2) should be verified.

11.2.6 Robustness

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.4 shall apply to ground improvement.

11.2.7 Ground investigation

11.2.7.1 General

(1) prEN 1997-2:2022, 5 shall apply to ground improvement.

(2) The ground investigation should determine potential obstacles for the execution of the geotechnical structure and its elements by drilling or boring, including, but not limited to:

- obstruction to drilling and boring;
- drillability of the ground;
- abrasivity;
- driveability;
- borehole stability;
- potential flow of groundwater in or out of a borehole;
- geometrical properties of discontinuities and weakness zones;
- borehole axis deviations; and
- potential loss of concrete and grout from the borehole

SC7 NOTE [#181]:
CR0152 decided that this text shall be in part 2. Deleted in this and other clauses.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

11.2.7.2 Minimum extent of field testing

- (1) In addition to EN1997-2 Clause 5.4.3, the depth of investigation for ground improvement shall be determined.

NOTE The minimum depth d_{\min} of the ground investigation is given in Table 11.3 unless the National Annex gives another value.

Table 11.7 — (NDP) Minimum depth of field investigation for ground improvement

Ground improvement Class	Minimum depth, d_{\min}	Illustration
AI	5 m	NONE
AII	5 m	NONE
BI	$\max(5 \text{ m} ; 3B_i)$	NONE
BII	$\max(5 \text{ m} ; 3B_{ri})$	NONE
d_{\min} is depth below treatment depth B_i is the equivalent diameter of the non-rigid inclusion (class BI), B_{ri} is the equivalent diameter of the rigid inclusion (class BII)		

- (2)

11.2.8 Geotechnical reliability

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.2 shall apply to ground improvement.
- (2) Ground improvement shall be classified as either Geotechnical Category GC2 or GC3.

11.3 Materials

11.3.1 Ground properties

- (1) prEN 1997-2:2022, Clause 7 to 12 shall apply to ground improvement.
- (2) Ground improvement parameters shall be adjusted to account for potential deterioration of the ground improvement over its design service life.

11.3.2 Improved ground properties

11.3.2.1 Class I ground improvement

- (1) The determination of the representative values of the improved ground properties shall comply with prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.2.
- (2) Representative values of the improved ground properties shall be verified by comparison with values determined from tests, see 11.9.

SC7 NOTE [#182]:
CR0147 Systematic
revision of all clauses on
minimum extent of field
investigation

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (3) To avoid degradation, material used for Class BI inclusion shall be sufficiently durable and chemically inert according to the anticipated ground and groundwater conditions during execution and design service life.
- (4) The specification of material for Class BI inclusions should allow it to be compacted to form a dense inclusion fully interlocked with the surrounding ground.

11.3.2.2 Class II ground improvement

- (1) The determination of the representative values of the improved ground properties shall comply with prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.2.
- (2) Representative values of the improved ground properties shall be verified by comparison with values determined from tests, see 11.9.
- (3) The representative values for the properties of concrete, wood, and steel inclusions shall be determined in accordance with prEN 1992-1-1, EN 1995-1-1, and prEN 1993-1-1, respectively.

11.3.2.3 Weight density

- (1) For ground improvement in Class I, the improved or modified weight density should be estimated from empirical data, comparable experience, reduction in volume or field testing.
- (2) For Class II ground improvement, the improved or modified weight density should be determined as the weight density of the untreated soil or based on comparable experience.
- (3) The weight density in (2) should be verified by testing, see 11.9.

11.4 Groundwater

11.4.1 General

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 6 shall apply to ground improvement.

11.4.2 Groundwater control systems

- (1) Clause 12 shall apply to ground improvement.

SC7 NOTE
[#183]: CR0164

11.5 Geotechnical analysis

11.5.1 General

- (1) An analysis of the interaction between structure, improved ground and ground should be carried out to verify that the ultimate and serviceability limit states are not exceeded.
- (2) The method of analysis selected should consider the stiffness ratio of discrete inclusions to the surrounding ground.

11.5.2 Diffused ground improvement design (AI and AII classes)

- (1) For Class AI and AII ground improvement techniques the resulting modified ground properties should be used in the verification of the corresponding structure in accordance with:

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- slopes, cuttings, and embankments (see Clause 4);
- spread foundations (see Clause 5);
- retaining structures (see Clause 7).

NOTE 1 Design of slopes, cuttings and embankments, spread foundations and retaining structures with the use of AI and AII techniques is similar to the design of these geotechnical structures without the use of any ground improvement technique. Different sets of ground properties are used for the improved ground.

NOTE 2 For AI, the behaviour of the improved ground can be conveniently modelled by conventional ground models. In order to follow this method, the designer can evaluate the change of ground properties (i.e. cohesion, friction angle, stiffness, permeability, etc.) and can consequently define the “improved representative values” for the material properties.

- (2) For material of Class AII, ultimate limit states shall be verified by demonstrating that design effects of actions do not exceed the stress envelope.

NOTE See Annex G.4 for further guidance.

11.5.3 Discrete ground improvement design (BI and BII classes)

- (1) Where Class BI or BII ground improvement is used to support or retain a structure an interaction calculation model shall include:

- the consideration of the interaction effects between the ground, discrete inclusions, and the overlying structure, embankment, or load transfer platform;
- a verification of the structural resistance of the individual BII inclusions;

NOTE The interaction effects relevant for Class BII ground improvement are similar to those relevant for a piled raft (see Figure 11.2), whereby a load transfer platform causes additional interaction effects impacting the load distribution between rigid inclusions and supporting ground and causing negative skin friction in the upper part of the rigid inclusions.

- (2) Where Class BI or BII ground improvement is used to support or retain a structure an interaction calculation model shall include:

- the derivation of the neutral plane for Class BII corresponding to the point where the inclusion settlement equals the ground settlement (see Figure 11.2);
- the derivation of the distribution ratio to determine the proportion of the load applied to individual discrete inclusions.

SC7 NOTE [#184]: CR0187
Splitted previous (1) into
two different paragraph.
Numerical models.

- (3) For BII rigid inclusions subject to compression, buckling shall be considered.

NOTE Guidance on buckling is given in Annex C.13

- (4) When one of the following conditions are met, verification of buckling may be omitted:

- inclusion diameter $B_{ri} > B_{ref}$;
- all soil layers have an undrained shear strength of $c_u > c_{u,ref}$;
- thickness of the soft layers where $c_u > c_{u,ref}$ in total stress analyses, is smaller than h_{ref} .

NOTE $r_{ref} = 0,3\text{m}$, $h_{ref} = 1,0\text{ m}$ and $c_{u,ref} = 15\text{ kPa}$ unless the National Annex gives other values.

- (5) The structural resistance of BII rigid inclusion shall be verified according to the relevant standard for the material installed.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (6) If no such standard exists, for material with unconfined compressive strength, ultimate limit states may be verified by demonstrating that design effects of actions (stresses) do not exceed the material's stress envelope.

NOTE See Annex G.4. for further guidance.

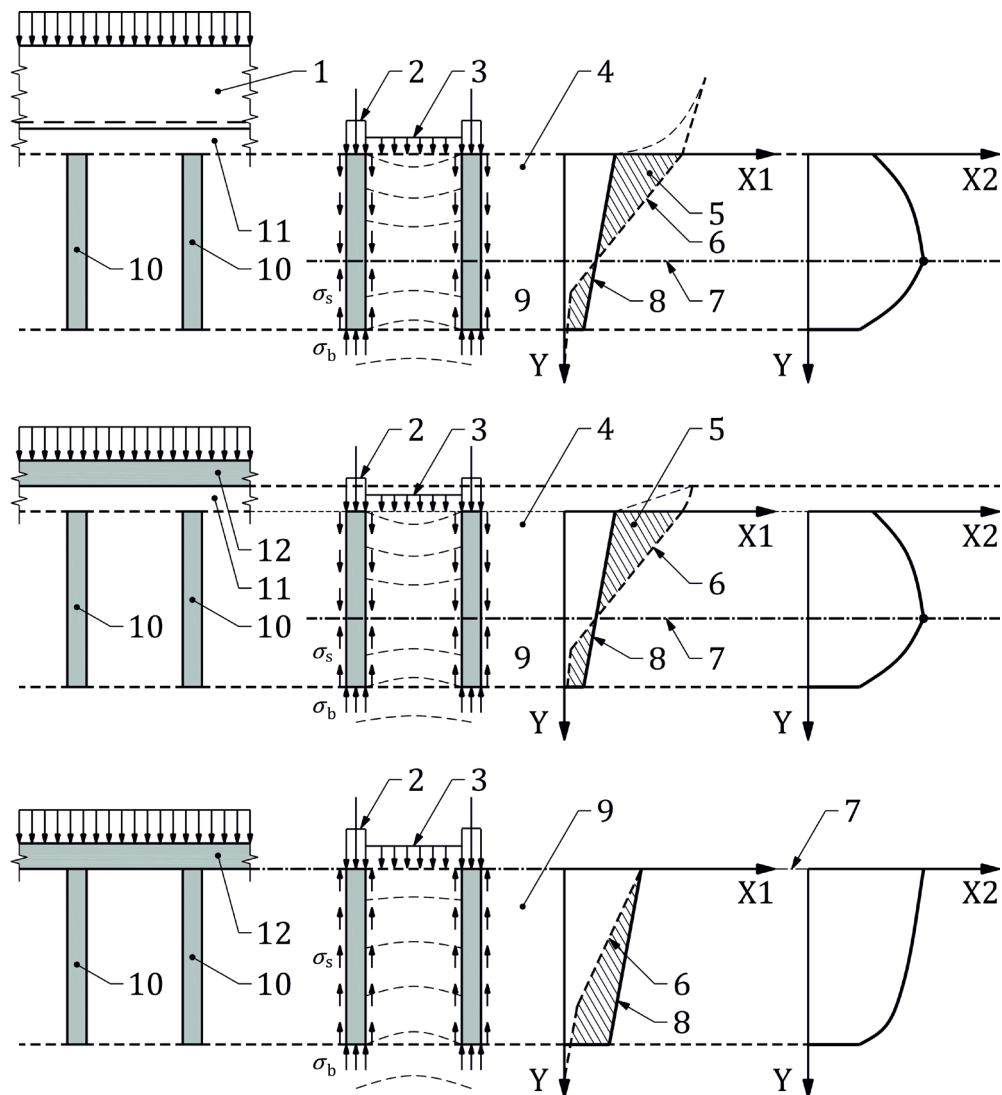
- (7) Analysis of inclusions may be based on numerical modelling including a nonlinear stress-strain model for the ground and the interactions between ground and inclusions.

- (8) The load distribution within the load transfer platforms incorporating tensile elements should be analysed.

NOTE Examples of suitable methods are given in Annex G.5.

- (9) For embankments, when analysing embankment edges outside the inclusion zone, analyses according to 9.5.2.2 shall be performed.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)



Key

X1	Settlement	6	S ground
X2	Inclusion axial force	7	Neutral plane
Y	Depth	8	S inclusion
1	Embankment	9	Positive skin friction
2	σ inclusion	10	Inclusion
3	σ ground	11	Load transfer platform
4	Negative skin friction	12	Structure (e.g. raft)
5	Differential settlement		

Figure 11.2 — Interaction effects of a ground improvement with rigid inclusions

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

11.5.4 Unconfined compressive strength of Class II ground improvement

(1) The characteristic value of the unconfined compressive strength of improved ground, $q_{uk,imp}$, should be determined, according to EN 1997-1, 4.3.2.2, as the P fractile of the dataset of the relevant statistical distribution.

NOTE 1 The value of P is 10% unless the National Annex gives a different value.

NOTE 2 The characteristic value can be determined from the cumulative frequency curve of the dataset.

(2) The nominal value of unconfined compressive strength of improved ground $q_{u,nom,imp}$ should be determined as the minimum of the following values:

- the minimum value of all results of the UCS tests,
- the arithmetic average value of all results of the UCS tests multiplied by a constant reduction value α ,
- a maximum value $q_{u,max}$.

NOTE 1 The value of α is 0.7, unless the National Annex gives a different value

NOTE 2 The value of $q_{u,max}$ is 12 MPa, unless the National Annex gives a different value.

(3) If N or more samples are tested, the representative value of unconfined compressive strength ($q_{u,rep,imp}$) of improved ground shall be determined from Formula (11.1):

$$q_{u,rep,imp} = \eta_t \cdot \eta_c \cdot \eta_{qu} \cdot q_{uk,imp} \quad (11.1)$$

where:

- $q_{u,rep,imp}$ is the representative value of the unconfined compressive strength of the improved ground;
- $q_{uk,imp}$ is the characteristic value of the unconfined compressive strength of the improved ground;
- η_t is a reduction factor accounting for the difference in time between testing (typically 28 days) and when the improved ground is exposed to the designed stresses;
- η_c is a reduction factor accounting for long term effects;
- η_{qu} is a reduction factor accounting for difference between the unconfined compressive strength and the operational strength of the improved ground

NOTE 1 The value of N is 10 unless the National Annex gives a different value.

NOTE 2 For hydraulic binders and cement- c is 0.85 unless the National Annex gives a different value.

NOTE 3 The value of η_{qu} is 0,65 for hydraulic binders and cement-based materials, unless the National Annex gives a different value.

(4) The value of η_t should be determined directly from testing for the specific type of ground improvement, for the specific ground and for the specific hydraulic binder or cementitious material.

NOTE An indicative range for η_t as a function of the time is given in Annex G.6.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

(5) If fewer than N samples are tested, the representative value of unconfined compressive strength ($q_{u,rep,imp}$) of improved ground shall be determined from Formula (11.2):

$$q_{u,rep,imp} = \eta_t \cdot \eta_c \cdot \eta_{qu} \cdot q_{u,nom,imp} \quad (11.2)$$

Where in addition to Formula 11.1:

$q_{u,nom,imp}$ is the nominal value of the unconfined compressive strength of the improved ground.
(5)

11.6 Ultimate limit states

11.6.1 General

- (1) The ultimate limit states in 11.2.5.1 shall be verified.
- (2) Methods used to verify ultimate limit states for different class and family of ground improvement should be selected according to ~~Table 11.8~~ **Table 11.8**.

NOTE ~~Table 11.8~~ **Table 11.8** (NDP) gives appropriate verification methods unless the National Annex gives different methods.

Table 11.8 — (NDP) Methods used to verify ultimate limit states of ground improvement

Class	Family	
	A – Diffused	B – Discrete
I	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Determine improved ground properties according to 11.3 and prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.2 2. Verify ULS according to 11.2.4, 11.5.2 and appropriate clauses of prEN 1997-3:2022 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Determine properties of non-rigid inclusion according to 11.3 and prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.2 2. Verify ULS of the system using separate ground and inclusion properties; 3. Verify ULS according to 11.2.4, 11.5.3 and appropriate clauses of prEN 1997-3:2022 4. Verify compression and shear resistance in inclusion and soil according to 11.2.3 and 11.2.4. (bulging, etc.) 5. For Geotextile Encased Inclusion, determine the strength of the reinforcing element of according to 9.6
II	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Determine improved design ground properties according to 11.3 2. Verify ULS according to 11.2.4 with calculation methods in 11.5.2 3. Verify structural resistance 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Determine improved design ground properties of the rigid inclusion according to 11.3 and especially 11.3.2.2 2. Verify ULS according to 11.2.4 with calculation method in 11.5.3. 3. Verify structural resistance of the rigid inclusions

(3) Load transfer platforms over inclusions should be designed with the partial factors of Table 11.5.

(4) For reinforced load transfer platforms, the tensile resistance of the reinforcing elements should be designed according to Clause 9.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

11.6.2 Design value of unconfined compressive strength of Classes AII and BII ground improvement

(1) The design value of unconfined compressive strength (q_{ud}) of improved ground shall be determined from Formula (11.3):

$$q_{ud} = \frac{q_{u,rep,imp}}{\gamma_M} \quad (11.3)$$

where:

- $q_{u,rep,imp}$ is the representative value of the unconfined compressive strength of the improved ground;
- γ_M is a partial material factor given in 11.6.4;

11.6.3 Design resistance of Class BI and BII ground improvement

(1) The design resistance of Class BI ground improvement ($R_{d,sys}$) should be determined from Formula (11.4):

$$R_{d,sys} = \frac{R_{rep,sys}}{\gamma_{R,sys}\gamma_{Rd,sys}} \quad (11.4)$$

where:

- $R_{rep,sys}$ is the representative value of the total resistance of the ground improvement system with inclusions;
- $\gamma_{R,sys}$ is a partial resistance factor for the inclusion system, given in 11.6.4;
- $\gamma_{Rd,sys}$ is a model factor.

NOTE 1 The values of $\gamma_{R,sys}$ is given in Table 11.4(NDP) for persistent and transient design situations unless the National Annex gives a different value.

NOTE 2 The values of γ_{Rd} is given in Table 6.3

NOTE 3 The value of γ_{Rc} is given in Table 6.7.

NOTE 4 The value for γ_g is taken equal to $\gamma_{R,raft} = 1.4$, unless the National Annex gives a different value.

(2) The design resistance of Class BII ground improvement ($R_{d,sys}$) should be determined from Formula (11.5):

$$R_{d,sys} = \kappa_1 \frac{\sum_i^n R_{ri,i}}{\gamma_{Rd}\gamma_{Rc}} + \kappa_2 \frac{R_g}{\gamma_g} \quad (11.5)$$

where:

- $R_{ri,i}$ is the representative value of the vertical resistance of the i -th rigid inclusion;
- R_g is the representative value of the vertical resistance of the ground after treatment;
- κ_1, κ_2 are distribution factors accounting for the load distribution between the inclusions and the ground;

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- γ_{Rc} is a partial resistance factor for the rigid inclusion system;
 γ_g is a partial resistance factor for the ground after treatment;
 γ_{Rd} is a model factor.

NOTE 1 The values of γ_{Rd} is given in Table 6.3

NOTE 2 The value of γ_{Rc} is given in Table 6.7.

NOTE 3 The value for γ_g is taken equal to $\gamma_{R,raft} = 1.4$, unless the National Annex gives a different value.

NOTE 4 The value of κ_1 is 0.8 and κ_2 is 1.0 unless the National Annex gives different values.

- (3) The representative resistance of a rigid inclusion R_{ri} shall be determined according to clause 6, depending on the technique used to carry out the rigid inclusion.
- (4) The verification of geotechnical limit states for individual inclusions may be omitted provided it is verified that the system is able to redistribute loads without itself exceeding an ultimate or serviceability limit state.

NOTE The limit value of the geotechnical resistance of a group of rigid inclusions is not the same as the sum of that of the single columns as group effects and further interaction effects as shown in figure 11.2 can alter the overall resistance.

11.4 Partial factors

- (1) Partial factors for the verification of structures using BI and BII ground improvement technique at the ultimate limit state shall be determined according to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.4.1, using either the Material Factor Approach or the Resistance Factor Approach.

NOTE 1 The National Annex can specify which Factor Approach to us.

NOTE 2 Values of the partial factors for BI and BII techniques are given in ~~Table 11.9~~ ~~Table 11.9~~ (NDP) for persistent, transient and accidental design situations unless the National Annex gives different values.

- (2) The design strength of concrete, wood and steel inclusion shall be determined in accordance with prEN 1992-1-1, prEN 1995-1-1 and prEN 1993-1-1, respectively.
- (3) The bearing resistance for the load transfer platform shall be verified for two cases:
- using the value of the angle of friction at critical state, ϕ_{cs} ; and
 - using the peak value of the angle of friction, ϕ_{peak} .

Table 11.9 — (NDP) Partial factors for the verification of ultimate resistance of ground improvement for fundamental (persistent and transient) design situations

Verification of	Partial factor on	Symbol	Material factor approach (MFA), both combinations (a) and (b)		Resistance factor approach (RFA)
			(a)	(b)	
Overall stability	See Clause 4				
Compressive resistance of	Actions , effects-of-actions ^a	γ_F , γ_E	VC1 or VC4	VC3	Refer to other clauses as appropriate

SC7 NOTE [#188]:
CR0082 Revision only partial factor on action OR effects-of-action. No link to EFA

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Verification of	Partial factor on	Symbol	Material factor approach (MFA), both combinations (a) and (b)		Resistance factor approach (RFA)
			(a)	(b)	
diffused ground improvement (AI and AII)	Ground properties ^{b,c}	γ_M	M1	M2	
Axial compressive resistance of discrete inclusions (BI and BII)	Actions ,effects-of-actions ^a	γ_F, γ_E	VC1 or VC4	VC3	VC1 or VC4 ^e
	Ground properties ^{b,c}	γ_M	M1	M2	Not factored
	Overall system resistance	$\gamma_{R,sys}$	Not factored		1,4 ^d
Transverse resistance of discrete and diffused ground improvement	Actions ,effects-of-actions ^a	γ_F, γ_E	VC1 or VC4	VC3	VC1 or VC4 ^e
	Ground properties ^{b,c}	γ_M	M1	M2	Not factored
	Transverse resistance	γ_{Re}	Not factored		Refer to other clauses s appropriate
^a Values of the partial factors for Verification Cases (VCs) 1, 3, and 4 are given in prEN 1990.					
^b Values of the partial factors for Sets M1 and M2 are given in prEN 1997-1:2022.					
^c Including the material properties if any improved ground					
^e Always use VC1 except for the computation of the effects of actions due to an embankment.					

11.7 Serviceability limit states

- (1) Serviceability limit states of geotechnical structures on improved ground shall be verified according to all relevant clauses of prEN 1997-3:2022.

11.8 Implementation of design

11.8.1 General

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10 shall apply to ground improvement.
- (2) The execution of ground improvement techniques shall comply with an appropriate standard, as specified by the relevant authority or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by the relevant parties.
- (3) Where no execution standard exists, the method of execution control shall be specified in the Execution specification.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

11.8.2 Inspection

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.3 shall apply to ground improvement.
- (2) Where ground improvement is to be installed within ground that contains chemicals or materials, that might prevent improvement of the ground properties, inspection tests shall be carried out to ensure that the required improved ground properties are achieved.
- (3) Inspection tests may be based on:
 - laboratory testing of improved ground samples;
 - laboratory testing of binders utilising groundwater;
 - other testing to determine specific properties.
- (4) Where materials are to be used for which there is no European testing standard available, inspection tests shall be carried out as specified by the relevant authority or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by the relevant parties.
- (5) Installation parameters for the ground improvement should be monitored and recorded either in real time using bespoke instrumentation or manually by site personnel in agreement with the corresponding execution standard.

SC7 NOTE [#189]:
CR0198

11.8.3 Monitoring

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.4 shall apply ground improvement.

11.8.4 Maintenance

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.5 shall apply ground improvement.
- (2) Where the ground improvement is exposed to the effects of the environment, which can cause deterioration of performance over time, the design shall specify the maintenance activities and protection of the ground improvement against deterioration and loss of resistance.

NOTE Some ground improvement, for example, jet grout or soil mix retaining walls can be negatively exposed to freeze/thaw and wet/dry cyclic effects so need to be protected.

11.9 Testing

11.9.1 General

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 11 shall apply to ground improvement.
- (2) The types of testing should be determined according to the ground improvement technique.

NOTE Execution standards usually contain lists of typical tests relevant to the specific techniques.

- (3) Tests before or at the beginning of execution may be conducted, comprising:
 - extraction and testing of ground samples to verify the suitability of the foreseen ground treatment; or
 - extraction and testing of improved ground samples; or
 - execution of trial elements for verification of geometry; or
 - execution of trial elements with extraction and testing of samples of treated soil; or

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- trial execution and verification by field testing or load testing.

(4) Typical control tests may include:

- For class AI: investigation of treated ground in accordance with prEN 1997-2:2022 to verify ground properties;
- For class AII: testing on extracted treated ground samples to verify unconfined compressive strength and other properties;
- for class BI: field testing inside and/or in between inclusions, dummy footing test on improved ground (individual inclusion and surrounding ground), zone load test on a group of inclusions (group of inclusions and surrounding ground);
- for class BII: load test on isolated rigid inclusions, zone load test on a group of rigid inclusions (group of rigid inclusions and surrounding ground,) UCS test on rigid inclusion material.

(5) The minimum frequency and type of control test shall be given by the execution standard or by the relevant authority or, where not specified, as agreed by the relevant parties for a specific project.

11.9.2 Material control tests

(1) Material control tests shall be performed to verify that representative properties of the improved are achieved.

NOTE The minimum frequencies for material control test for each ground improvement class are given in Table 11.5 (NDP) unless the National Annex gives different values.

(2) The minimum number of control test should be determined based on local experience, ground conditions the applied ground improvement technique.

(3) Sampling should be performed according to relevant execution standard.

(4) The unconfined compressive strength should be determined on cylindrical undisturbed samples with a height to diameter ratio of two.

(5) Where the sample dimensions differ, a scale factor may be applied.

NOTE For prisms and cylinders with $h:d = 1$ the scale factor is 0.8, unless the National Annex give a different value.

(6) After conducting all UCS tests on suitable samples, the results of the test specimens with unmixed soil inclusions larger than one-sixth of the diameter of the test specimen may be excluded.

(7) In addition, no more than 15% of the results of the tested specimens from one specific site may be excluded.

(8) If undisturbed sampling is impractical, the strength may be determined by documented correlations from other in-situ tests.

(9) The stiffness of ground improvement materials should be determined either from laboratory tests on undisturbed samples, documented correlations, or by monitoring of deformation.

(10) The achieved improved ground properties including the coefficient of variation shall be documented in the Geotechnical Design Report.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

Table 11.10 — (NDP) Testing frequency for ground improvement (control tests)

Ground Improvement Class	Type of test	Number of tests	
AI	Field and laboratory testing to the full depth of the zone of treatment	As per prEN 1997-2:2022 Clause 5.4.3	
AII	UCS tests on extracted treated-ground samples	In absence of a material standard the following applies: 1 test per 125 m ³ (minimum of 4 tests) per treated geotechnical unit, conducted on samples representative of the whole treatment depth	
BI	Field and laboratory testing to the full depth of the zone of treatment, inside the inclusions and in-between.	As per prEN 1997-2:2022 Clause 5.4.3	
BII	UCS test on extracted samples of treated ground or installed material.	In absence of a material standard the following applies: 1 test per 125 m ³ (minimum of 4 tests) of rigid inclusion volume, conducted on samples representative of the whole treatment depth.	

11.10 Reporting

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 12 shall apply to ground improvement.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

12 Groundwater control measures

12.1 Scope and field of application

12.1.1 General

- (1) This clause shall apply to groundwater control measures, aiming to prevent limit states in the geotechnical structure.
- (2) This clause shall apply to the following geotechnical structures:
 - embankments, slopes, cuttings (Clause 4);
 - spread foundations (Clause 5);
 - piled foundations (Clause 6);
 - retaining structures (Clause 7);
 - reinforced fill structures (Clause 9);
 - reinforced ground structures (Clause 10); and
 - ground improvement (Clause 11).
- (3) This clause should apply to dams and levees but excludes the verification of water retention for those structures.

NOTE For dams and levees additional provisions are needed.

- (4) Measures for groundwater control should be classified according to Table 12.1

Table 12.1 — Classification of measures for groundwater control

Class	Measures	Objective	Examples
1	Adjustment of hydraulic conductivity	Reduce leakage through ground.	Grouting, soil mixing, leakage prevention using natural clay layer.
2	Dewatering/infiltration	Control groundwater and/or surface water.	Drains, wells.
3	Impermeable barriers	Prevent (i.e. cut off) the flow of groundwater.	Sheet pile, jet grouting, plastic and geosynthetic barriers, ground freezing

12.2 Basis of design

12.2.1 Design situation

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2.2 shall apply to measures for groundwater control.
- (2) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.2.2, the design situations for groundwater control measures shall include, but are not limited to:
 - temporary or permanent nature of the groundwater control;
 - impact within in the zone-of-influence due to the groundwater control measures.

SC7 NOTE [#190]:
CR0132, CR0133,
CR0134 This clause has
been updated according
to the three agreed
change requests.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

12.2.2 Geometrical properties

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.3 shall apply to measures for groundwater control.

12.2.3 Zone of influence

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.2.1 shall apply to measures for groundwater control.

12.2.4 Actions and environmental influences

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.3.1 shall apply to measures for groundwater control.

12.2.5 Limit states

- (1) prEN 1990:2021, 8.4.1 shall apply to measures for groundwater control.
- (2) The serviceability limit state of the groundwater control measures shall be verified proving that the effect as required by the limiting design values is fulfilled.
- (3) The impact on the ultimate limit and serviceability limit states of the geotechnical structure and the environment due to execution of the groundwater control measures shall be analysed.

12.2.6 Robustness

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.4 shall apply to measures for groundwater control.

12.2.7 Ground investigation

12.2.7.1 General

- (1) In addition to prEN 1997-2:2022, 5, provisions for groundwater and geohydraulic properties prEN 1997-2:2022, 11, shall apply.
- (2) The extent of the ground investigation shall include the zone of influence of the groundwater control measures.
- (3) Ground investigations should provide, but not be limited to provide the following parameters:
- grain size distribution of the soil;
 - geometry cavities, and fractures in the rock mass;
 - strength and stiffness parameters of the ground;
 - groundwater and piezometric levels;
 - hydraulic conductivity of the ground;
 - chemical content of groundwater.
- (4) Long term measurement of groundwater and surface level within the zone of influence should be performed.
- (5) In the absence of reliable values of hydraulic conductivity within the zone of influence, pumping tests may be performed as a part of the ground investigation.

12.2.7.2 Extent of ground investigation

- (1) In addition to EN1997-2 Clause 5.4.3, the depth of investigation for groundwater control shall be determined.

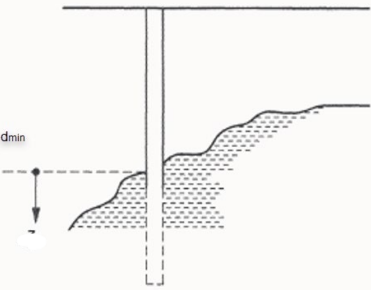
SC7 NOTE [#191]:
CR0147 added this in addition to the general text

SC7 NOTE [#192]:
CR0147 Systematic revision of all clauses on minimum extent of field investigation

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

NOTE The minimum depth d_{min} of the ground investigation is given in Table 12.2 unless the National Annex gives another value.

Table 12.2 — (NDP) Minimum depth of field investigation for groundwater control

Ground improvement Class	Minimum depth	Illustration
Cut-off barriers	$d_{min} = 2$ m (below the surface of homogenous continuous layer with very low conductivity)	

12.2.8 Geotechnical reliability

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.1.2 shall apply to measures for groundwater control.

12.3 Material

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.1 and prEN 1997-2:2022 shall apply to measures for groundwater control.

(2) EN 1538 should apply to diaphragm walls used as measure for groundwater control.

(3) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 5.3, ISO/TS 13434 may be applied for geomembrane, geosynthetic or plastic barriers.

(2) Materials other than specified those specified in (1) to (3) shall only be used, if they comply with a standard specified by the relevant authority or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by appropriate parties.

12.4 Groundwater

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 6 shall apply to measures for groundwater control.

12.5 Geotechnical analysis

12.5.1 General

(1) The Ground Model shall distinguish between aquifers and aquitards, where present.

(2) Appropriate measures for groundwater control shall be selected based on:

- the design service life;
- the design situation;
- their suitability for the ground conditions;
- their impact within the zone of influence;

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- environmental influences;
- possibility of inspection and maintenance;
- chemical content.

(3) Effects and risks of execution shall be considered in the design and selection of the method.

(4) Groundwater drawdown should be monitored to prevent settlements or decomposing of wooden piles when submerged conditions disappear.

12.5.2 Reduction of hydraulic conductivity

(1) The design of grout to reduce hydraulic conductivity should take in account at least the following:

- time related properties;
- potential spread of grout to the ground surface or an adjacent structure;
- potential jacking;
- salinity of groundwater;
- chemical ingredients and their effect on the environment.
-

(2) The grouting technique and sequence shall be reported.

(3) The suitability of grout or other injection material for the penetration into the ground shall be reported.

12.5.3 Dewatering and infiltration

(1) The design of dewatering or infiltration systems should take in account at least the following:

- groundwater chemistry;
- climate and rainfall;
- extent and other details of the excavation;
- risk of flooding;
- ground stability
- availability of back-up dewatering systems;
- availability of well and filter materials;
- environmental influences.

(2) The technique and sequence shall be reported.

12.5.4 Impermeable barriers

(1) The design of impermeable barriers should take in account at least the following:

- groundwater chemistry;
- climate and rainfall;
- extent and other details of the excavation;
- risk of flooding;
- ground stability;
- environmental influences;
- any transition zone below the impermeable barrier;
- installation technique;
- risk of leakage.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

(2) The technique and sequence shall be reported.

12.6 Ultimate limit states

(1) EN 1997-3, Clause 4-11 shall apply to the verification of ultimate limit states of geotechnical structures that rely on measures for groundwater control.

12.7 Serviceability limit states

12.7.1 General

(1) Serviceability criteria for geotechnical structures that rely on measures for groundwater control shall be determined according to EN 1997-1, 9.2 and 9.5.

(2) It shall be verified, throughout the zone of influence, that the measures for groundwater control fulfil the inequality given by Formula (12.1):

$$C_{d,SLS,min} \leq E_d \leq C_{d,SLS,max} \quad (12.1)$$

where:

E_d is the effect of actions caused by the groundwater, after application the measures for groundwater control;

$C_{d,SLS,min}$ is the minimum design value of the relevant serviceability criterion for the considered geotechnical structure within the zone of influence; and

$C_{d,SLS,max}$ is the maximum design value of the relevant serviceability criterion for the considered geotechnical structure within the zone of influence.

NOTE 1 The effect of actions caused by groundwater E_d , after application of their measures for groundwater control can be expressed as, for example:

- groundwater or surface water pressure;
- hydraulic conductivity;
- rate of flow of water.

NOTE 2 The limiting design value, $C_{d,SLS}$ of the relevant geotechnical structures serviceability criterion can be expressed as, for example:

- minimum or maximum groundwater or surface water pressure;
- minimum or maximum hydraulic conductivity;
- minimum or maximum rate of flow of water.

NOTE 3 In many design situations, only one of the two serviceability criteria ($C_{d,SLS,min}$ or $C_{d,SLS,max}$) is applied

(3) Verification of (2) should be done by either the Observational Method, in accordance with EN 1997-1, 4.7 or by testing in accordance with prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.6.

(4) Verification of geotechnical structure in GC1 may be performed using calculation in accordance with prEN 1997-1:2022 or using prescriptive rules, in accordance with prEN 1997-1:2022, 4.5.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

12.8 Implementation of design

12.8.1 General

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.6 shall apply to the application of the Observational Method during execution.
- (2) Where the ultimate and serviceability limit states of a geotechnical structure depend on the successful performance of a groundwater control system, one or more of the following measures should be taken:
 - inspection and maintenance of the system, which should be specified in the Maintenance Plan, see EN 1997-1, 5;
 - installing a drainage system that will perform according to specification without maintenance; and
 - installing a secondary ("backup") system.
- (3) Execution of grouting shall comply with EN 12715.
- (4) Execution of jet grouting shall comply with EN 12716.
- (5) Execution of barriers by diaphragm walls shall comply with EN 1538.
- (6) Execution of sheet pile walls shall comply with EN 12063.
- (7) Execution standards other than those specified in (3) to (6) shall only be used if they are specified by the relevant authority or, where not specified, are agreed for a specific project by the appropriate parties.

SC7 NOTE [#193]:
CR0164

12.8.2 Inspection

12.8.2.1 General

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.3 shall apply to measures for groundwater control.
- (2) Inspection of groundwater control system shall include, but not be limited, to the following items:
 - adequacy of systems to ensure control of groundwater pressures;
 - disposal of water from dewatering systems;
 - depression of groundwater table throughout entire excavation to prevent boiling or quick conditions, piping and disturbance of formation by construction equipment;
 - diversion and removal of rainfall or other surface water.

12.8.2.2 Reduction of hydraulic conductivity

- (1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.3, the Inspection Plan should specify measures to check:
 - wear of equipment, hoses and packers;
 - clogging of pumps and mixer;
 - leakage of grout to ground surface;
 - leakage of grout to other grout holes;
 - functionality of pressure devices.
 - disposal of water from dewatering systems;
 - depression of groundwater table throughout entire excavation to prevent boiling or quick conditions, piping and disturbance of formation by construction equipment;

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- diversion and removal of rainfall or other surface water.

NOTE For inspection issues relating to grouting (e.g. grouting sequences, time, pressure, flow and mass, see EN 12715.)

12.8.2.3 Dewatering and infiltration

(1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.3, the Inspection Plan should specify measures to check:

- efficient and effective operation of dewatering systems throughout the entire construction period;
- wear in pumps;
- clogging of pumps
- control of dewatering to avoid disturbance of adjoining structures or areas;
- effectiveness, operation and maintenance of water recharge systems, if installed;
- effectiveness of any sub-horizontal borehole drains;
- standby equipment to maintain groundwater controls in case of pumping failure/power.

(2) When pumps are installed, the pumped amounts and content of fine ground material shall be monitored and inspected.

(3) The functioning of all draiage systems should be tested.

NOTE Testing can be performed for example by rinsing or flushing after installation.

12.8.2.4 Impermeable barriers

(4) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.3, the Inspection Plan should specify measures to check:

- performance of installed barriers;
- ground stability during installation
- control to void disturbance of adjoining structures.

(1) The groundwater levels on both sides of the barrier shall be monitored and inspected.

12.8.3 Monitoring

12.8.3.1 General

(1) In addition to prEN 1997-1:2022, 10.4 the Monitoring Plan should include monitoring of groundwater conditions within the zone of influence.

NOTE 1 Legislation can necessitate additional requirements.

NOTE 2 Table 12.2 (NDP) give measures to check the groundwater conditions within the zone of influence depending on the Geotechnical Category, unless the National Annex give different guideline.

NOTE 3 Table 12.2 assumes that groundwater condition are reflected in the Geotechnical Category.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

Table 12.1 — (NDP) Measures for checking groundwater conditions within the zone of influence

Geotechnical Category	Measures / Measurements
GC3	All the items given below for GC2 and, in addition: - more detailed examination that includes additional measurements and observations.
GC2	All the items given below for GC1 and, in addition: - measurements of groundwater levels and groundwater pressures; - measurements of groundwater flow and chemistry, if they affect the method of construction or the performance of the structure.
GC1	All the items given below: - direct observations; - documented comparable experience; - any other relevant evidence.

(2) The following items should be monitored in relation to groundwater control:

- piezometric levels and groundwater pressure;
- effects of dewatering operation on groundwater table;
- effectiveness of measures take to control seepage inflow or egress;
- internal erosion processes and piping;
- chemical composition of groundwater;
- corrosion potential.

(3) The results of monitoring should define the necessity and steer the implementation of further groundwater control.

(4) Groundwater level monitoring should be conducted continuously or semi-continuously in adequate intervals.

(5) Groundwater level monitoring should be conducted prior, during and after groundwater control works and works affecting groundwater levels.

12.9 Testing

(1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 11 shall apply to measures for groundwater control.

NOTE For determination of groundwater and geohydraulic properties see prEN 1997-2:2022, 11.

(2) Testing of grout material properties shall be conducted.

(3) One or more of the following testing methods should be used for design and verification of rock grouting:

- hydrostatic pressure build-up testing in the bore hole;
- water leakage measurements from the rock mass into the bore hole;
- water loss measurements from the bore hole into the rock mass.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

12.10 Reporting

SC7 NOTE [#194]:
CR0134 The CR have a mixture of should/shall. The decision is that (1) is shall and the rest i should.

- (1) prEN 1997-1:2022, 12 shall apply to measures for groundwater control.
- (2) The execution specification should include, but is not limited to:
 - threshold values and limiting values for the groundwater control;
 - type and use of equipment;
 - material requirements;
 - timing in relation with excavation phases;
 - required checking and verification of system.
- (3) In addition to (2), the execution specification of grouting should include, but is not limited to:
 - required grout penetration depth or spread;
 - geometry of the grouting holes, including location, length, direction, overlap and frequency;
 - grouting pressures, flows and volumes;
 - depth of packer in relation with grouting pressure and failure due to grouting pressure;
 - sequence or sequences of grouting of the holes.
- (4) The execution specification for grouting should include on-site verification and stop-criteria, based on pressure, flow or mass regulation.
- (5) In addition to (2), the execution specification of dewatering and infiltration system should include, but is not limited to:
 - Installation technique;
 - geometry of the wells and pipes, including location, length, direction, overlap and frequency;
 - pumping capacity.
- (6) In addition to (2), the execution specification of impermeable barriers should include, but is not limited to:
 - Installation technique;
 - geometry of barriers.

Annex A (informative)

Slopes, cuttings, and embankments

A.1 Use of this Informative Annex

- (1) This Informative Annex provides complementary guidance to Clause 4 regarding slopes, cuttings, and embankments.

NOTE National choice on the application of this Informative Annex is given in the National Annex. If the National Annex contains no information on the application of this informative annex, it can be used.

A.2 Scope and field of application

- (1) This Informative Annex covers calculation methods for the stability of slopes, cuttings and embankments in soil, fill and rock.

A.3 Calculation models for analysing the stability of soil and fill

- (1) A calculation method for analysing the stability of soils and fills should only be used if it is appropriate for the Ground Model, potential failure surface, and loading conditions.

NOTE 1 [Table A.1](#) provides a non-exhaustive list of calculation models based on limiting equilibrium and limit analysis.

NOTE 2 Procedures for numerical models are given in prEN 1997-1:2022, 8.2.

- (2) Three-dimensional effects may be considered in design verification when using a two-dimensional calculation method, provided the adjustment is on the safe side and the method is validated.

- (3) When choosing a calculation model for analysing the stability, the following should be included in the Geotechnical Design Model, but is not limited to:

- weight density determined using the single source principle [see prEN 1990:2021, 6.1.1(4)];
- soil layering;
- occurrence and orientation of zones or layers of low strength;
- seepage and groundwater pressure distribution;
- drained or undrained behaviour or a combination;
- creep deformations due to shear;
- type of anticipated failure;
- possibility of progressive failure along the slip surface (strain compatibility);
- external actions, their duration and direction;
- use of stabilizing measures;
- adjacent or intersecting structures;
- strength anisotropy; and
- interface with underlying rock.

SC7 NOTE [#195]:
CR0190

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

Table A.1 — Calculation methods for analysing the stability of soil and fill

Method ^c		Type of method ^{a,b}	Special design conditions/limitations	Comments and assumptions	
1	Bishop (simplified and rigorous)	Slices, circular arc	Not recommended with external horizontal loads	Simplified ignores interslice shear forces when interslice forces are horizontal	
2	Generalized limit equilibrium	Slices, any shape of surface	Applicable with all slope geometries and soil profiles	---	
3	Janbu generalized (modified)	Slices, circular arc, non-circular, polyline		Location of interslice normal force is assumed by a line of thrust	
4	Morgenstern-Price				Direction of interslice forces by variable user function
5	Spencer				Constant interslice forces function
6	Sarma	Slices, polyline	Seismic loading, critical acceleration. Static conditions: horizontal load set to zero	Can include non-vertical slices and multi-wedge failure mechanisms	
7	Kinematical approach of limit analysis	Multiple body, blocks, circular, planar or logarithmic spiral	---	Based on the compatibility of velocity fields, no consideration to stress diffusion	
8	Block/wedge method	Multiple body, polyline	Pre-defined planar failure surface. Divided into three segments	Earth-pressure can be used as driving and resisting force. No moment equilibrium	
9	Multiple wedge method	Multiple body, blocks, wedges, plane surfaces	---	No moment equilibrium.	
10	Infinite slope	Single body, plane surface	Long shallow slopes		
11	Culmann, finite slope		Steep slopes, drained analysis		
12	Logarithmic spiral	Single body; logarithmic spiral	Homogeneous soil, drained analysis	Satisfies moment and force equilibrium	

^a Where ground or embankment material is relatively homogeneous and isotropic, circular failure surfaces can normally be assumed, except when high external loads are present.

^B Polyline includes interconnected plane surfaces.

^C See 1) Bishop (1965); 2) Fredlund and Krahn (1977); 3) Janbu (1954); 4) Morgenstern and Price (1965); 5) Spencer (1967); 6) Sarma (1979); 8)9) DIN 4084:2009-01; 11) Coulomb (1776), adapted by Cullman (1866); 12) Froelich (1953).

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

A.4 Calculation models for analysing the stability of rock mass

(1) A calculation method for analysing the stability of rock mass should only be used if it is appropriate for the Ground Model, potential failure surface, and loading conditions.

NOTE [Table A.2](#) provides a non-exhaustive list of calculation models for rock mass based on limiting equilibrium.

(2) When choosing a calculation method for analysing the stability of rock masses, the following should be included in the Geotechnical Design Model, but is not limited to:

- weight density;
- rock layering, weakness zones and discontinuities;
- Interfaces with soil and soil layers on top;
- geometrical properties of weakness zones and discontinuities;
- infill of weakness zones and discontinuities;
- seepage and groundwater pressure distribution;
- types of anticipated failure;
- external actions and their duration and direction;
- use of stabilizing measures; and
- adjacent or intersecting structures;

Table A.2 — Calculation models for analysing the stability of rock mass

No.	Type of failure	Method ^a	Special design conditions/limitations	Comments and assumptions
1	Circular failure Large slope deformations ^g	Bishop, Janbu, Morgenstern, Spencer ^d Limit equilibrium ^e	Blocky or weathered rock mass. ^b Tension crack with or without water	Method of slices, circular (see Table A4.1)
2	Plane failure	Limit equilibrium ^e	Tension crack with or without water	Plane surface, blocks
3	Wedge failure	Limit equilibrium ^e	Tension crack with or without water	Wedge
4	Block toppling	Limit equilibrium ^e	---	Blocks
5	Flexure toppling	Limit equilibrium ^e	---	Columns
6	Block-flexure toppling	Limit equilibrium ^e	---	Blocks and columns
7	Secondary toppling	Limit equilibrium ^e	---	---
8	Rock fall ^c	Limit equilibrium ^e , rigid body, Goodman Shy ^f	Block trajectories, bounce heights, velocities, energies, run out distances	Blocks
^a All methods for 1 to 7 can address circular and plane failure. ^b Only valid for failure not controlled by discontinuities. ^c Rock fall is the results of type 2 to 7, but 8 addresses the consequence of rock fall to underlying structure.				

SC7 NOTE [#196]:
CR0192

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

^d See Table A.1 for references

^e Limit equilibrium methods include Finite Element, Finite Difference and Discrete Element Methods. see Poisel and Preh (2004), Wyllie (2017)

^f See Goodman & Shi (1985)

^g Without formation of a sliding plane, i.e. without detachment of rock mass (e.g. slope creep, kink band slumping)

Annex B **(informative)**

Spread foundations

B.1 Use of this Informative Annex

- (1) This Informative Annex provides complementary guidance to Clause 5 regarding spread foundations.

NOTE National choice on the application of this Informative Annex is given in the National Annex. If the National Annex contains no information on the application of this informative annex, it can be used.

B.2 Scope and field of application

- (1) This Informative Annex covers:
- checklists;
 - calculation models for bearing resistance; and
 - calculation models for foundation settlement.

B.3 Checklists

- (1) The following features may affect the resistance of a bearing stratum:
- depth of the adequate bearing stratum;
 - inclination of the adequate bearing stratum;
 - depth of the groundwater level;
 - depth above which shrinkage and swelling of clay soils, due to seasonal weather changes, or to trees and shrubs, can cause appreciable movements;
 - depth above which frost damage, including heave due to groundwater freezing, can occur;
 - excavation below the level of the water table in the ground;
 - ground movements and reductions in the resistance of the bearing stratum by seepage or climatic effects or by construction procedures;
 - liquefaction caused by cyclic or dynamic loading;
 - excavations for services close to the foundation potentially causing bearing failure or foundation movement beyond a serviceability limit state;
 - high or low temperatures transmitted from the building, causing desiccation and settlement or groundwater freezing and heave;
 - scour;
 - variation of water content due to long periods of drought, and subsequent periods of rain, on the properties of volume-unstable soils in arid climatic areas;
 - the presence of soluble materials, e.g. limestone, claystone, gypsum, salt rocks; and
 - the presence of existing voids formed by geological processes or prior human activities.
- (2) The following features of rock may affect the design of spread foundations on rock
- deformability and strength of the rock mass and the permissible settlement of the supported structure;

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- presence of any weak layers, for example ~~solution~~ **dissolution** features or fault zones, beneath the foundation;
- presence of bedding joints and other discontinuities and their characteristics (for example filling, continuity, width, spacing);
- state of weathering, decomposition and fracturing of the rock; and
- disturbance of the natural state of the rock caused by construction activities, such as, for example, underground works or slope excavation, being near to the foundation.

SC7 NOTE [#197]:
CR0032 Editorial
changed clause 5

B.4 Calculation model for bearing resistance using soil parameters

- (1) The undrained bearing resistance factors in Formula (5.3) may be determined from Formula (B.1B.1):

$$\begin{aligned} N_{cu} &= \pi + 2 \\ N_{\gamma u} &= -2 \sin \beta \end{aligned} \quad (B.1)$$

where:

β is the slope of the ground surface, downwards from the edge of the foundation.

- (2) The following non-dimensional factors may be used in Formula (5.3):

- base factor b_{cu} ;
- depth factor d_{cu} ;
- ground inclination factor g_{cu} ;
- load inclination factor i_{cu} ; and
- shape factor s_{cu} .

- (3) The non-dimensional factors in (2) may be determined from Formula (B.2B.2):

$$\begin{aligned} b_{cu} &= 1 - \frac{2\alpha}{\pi + 2} & d_{cu} &= 1 + 0,33 \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{D}{B} \right) \\ g_{cu} &= 1 - \frac{2\beta}{\pi + 2} \geq 0 & i_{cu} &= \frac{1}{2} \left(1 + \sqrt{1 - \frac{T}{A'c_u}} \right), T \leq A'c_u \\ s_{cu} &= 1 + 0,2 \left(\frac{B'}{L'} \right) & & \text{for a rectangular foundation or 1,2 for circular foundation} \end{aligned} \quad (B.2)$$

where:

- α is the inclination of the foundation base (in radians);
- D is the embedment depth of the foundation;
- B is the breadth of the foundation;
- β is the inclination of the ground surface, downwards from the edge of the foundation (in radians);
- B' is the effective width of the foundation;
- L' is the effective length of the foundation;
- T is the force applied tangentially to the base of the foundation;
- A' is the foundation's effective area on plan;

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

c_u is the soil undrained shear strength,

NOTE d_{cu} should be taken as 1.0 when the strength of the soil above the embedment depth D is less than that at the foundation level.

(4) The drained bearing resistance factors in Formula (5.7) may be determined from Formula (B.3):

$$\begin{aligned} N_q &= e^{\pi \tan \varphi'} \tan^2 \left(45 + \frac{\varphi'}{2} \right) \\ N_c &= (N_q - 1) \cot \varphi' \\ N_\gamma &= 2(N_q + 1) \tan \varphi' \text{ for a rough base (i.e. } \delta \geq \varphi' / 2) \end{aligned} \quad (\text{B.3})$$

where:

φ' is the soil angle of internal shearing resistance;

δ is the angle of interface friction between the foundation and the ground.

(5) The following non-dimensional factors may be used in Formula (5.7):

- base factors b_c , b_q , and b_γ ;
- depth factors d_c , d_q , and d_γ ;
- ground inclination factors g_c , g_q , and g_γ ;
- load inclination factors i_c , i_q , and i_γ ; and
- shape factors s_c , s_q , and s_γ .

(6) The non-dimensional factors in Formula (5.7) may be calculated from Formula (B.4):

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

$$\begin{aligned}
b_c &= b_q - \left(\frac{1 - b_q}{N_c \tan \varphi'} \right); b_q = b_\gamma = (1 - \alpha \tan \varphi')^2 \\
d_c &= d_q - \left(\frac{1 - d_q}{N_c \tan \varphi'} \right); d_\gamma = 1 \\
d_q &= 1 + 2 \tan \varphi' (1 - \sin \varphi')^2 (D/B) \text{ for } D/B \leq 1.0 \\
d_q &= 1 + 2 \tan \varphi' (1 - \sin \varphi')^2 \tan^{-1}(D/B) \text{ for } D/B > 1.0 \\
g_c &= g_q - \left(\frac{1 - g_q}{N_c \tan \varphi'} \right) = \left(\frac{g_q N_q - 1}{N_q - 1} \right); g_q = g_\gamma = (1 - \tan \beta)^2 \\
i_c &= i_q - \left(\frac{1 - i_q}{N_c \tan \varphi'} \right) = \left(\frac{i_q N_q - 1}{N_q - 1} \right); i_q = \left(1 - \frac{T}{N} \right)^m; i_\gamma = \left(1 - \frac{T}{N} \right)^{m+1} \\
m &= m_B = \frac{2 + (B'/L')}{1 + (B'/L')} \text{ when } T \text{ acts in the direction of } B' \\
m &= m_L = \frac{2 + (L'/B')}{1 + (L'/B')} \text{ when } T \text{ acts in the direction of } L' \\
m &= m_\theta = m_L \cos^2 \vartheta + m_B \sin^2 \vartheta \text{ for other loading directions} \\
s_c &= \left(\frac{s_q N_q - 1}{N_q - 1} \right) \\
s_q &= 1 + \left(\frac{B'}{L'} \right) \sin \varphi' \text{ for a rectangular or circular } (B' = L') \text{ foundation} \\
s_\gamma &= 1 - 0.3 \left(\frac{B'}{L'} \right) \text{ for a rectangular or circular } (B' = L') \text{ foundation}
\end{aligned} \tag{B.4}$$

where, in addition to the symbols defined for Formula (B.2B.2):

φ' is the angle of effective friction;

N is the force applied normally to the base of the foundation;

θ is the angle on plan between the L axis and the direction of T .

NOTE d_c , d_q , and d_γ should be taken as 1.0 when the strength of the soil above the foundation depth D is less than that at foundation level.

(7) To account for the effect of groundwater level on groundwater pressure and effective weight density in Formula (5.7), when all the ground is fully saturated and there is no seepage, the following values for q' and γ' may be adopted:

- for groundwater level at ground surface:
 $q' = (\gamma - \gamma_w)D$ and $\gamma' = (\gamma - \gamma_w)$
- for groundwater level at a depth D_w below the ground surface but above the foundation level:
 $q' = \gamma D_w + (\gamma - \gamma_w)(D - D_w)$ and $\gamma' = (\gamma - \gamma_w)$
- for groundwater at the foundation level:
 $q' = \gamma D$ and $\gamma' = (\gamma - \gamma_w)$
- for groundwater at a depth exceeding 1.5 B below the foundation level:
 $q' = \gamma D$ and $\gamma' = \gamma$.

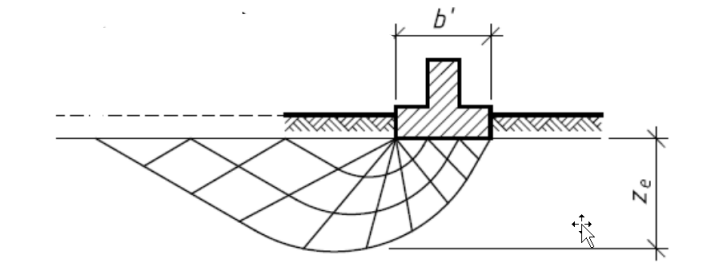
(7) The depth of the failure zone, z_e , may be determined depending on the effective friction angle φ' and the ratio of the horizontal and vertical load H/V .

NOTE 1 In Figure B.1 the depth of the failure zone is given

SC7 NOTE [#1984]:
CR0074 Update of annex to illustrate depth of failure zone.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

NOTE 2 In Figure B.2 a method is given for the determination of the depth of the failure zone. Linear interpolation between $H/V=0$ and $H/V=1$ is assumed.

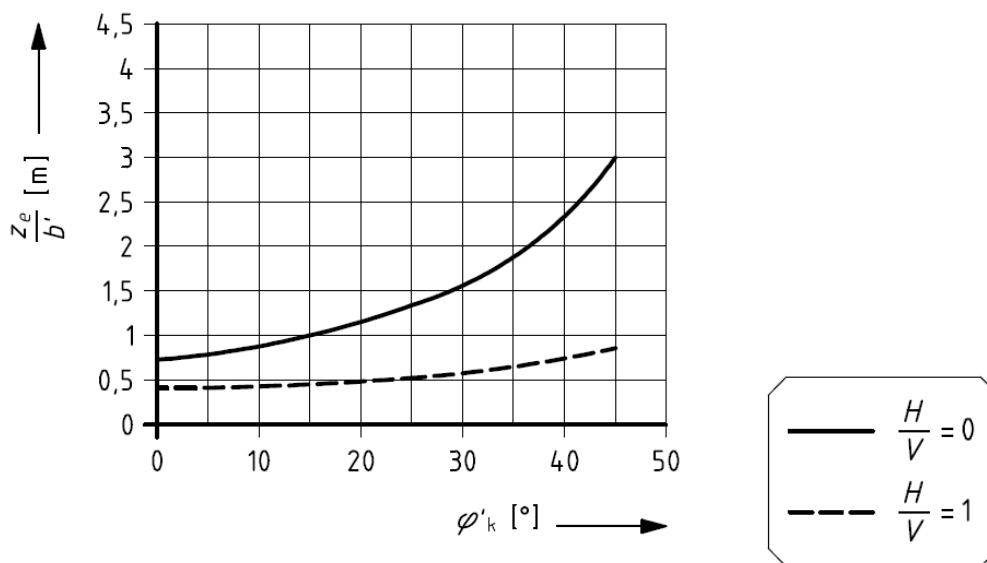


Key

b' Width of the smallest side of the effective foundation area

z_e The depth of the failure zone

Figure B.1 — Depth of failure zone



Key

b' Width of the smallest side of the effective foundation area

z_e The depth of the failure zone

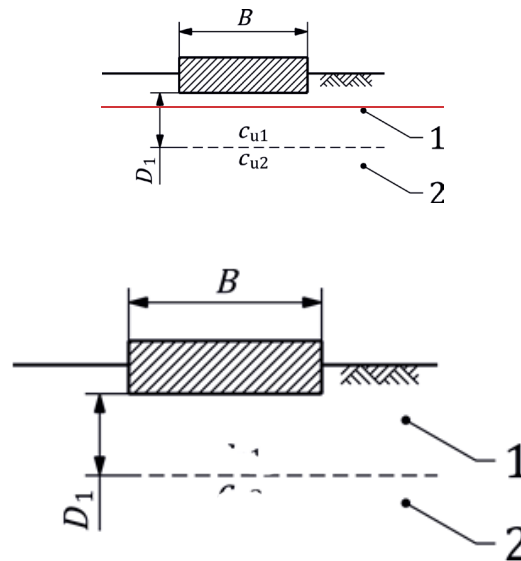
Figure B.2 — Determination of depth of failure zone

B.5 Calculation model for bearing resistance on ground underlain by a weaker layer

NOTE Figure B.3 illustrates foundation on a stronger layer over a weaker layer

SC7 NOTE [#199]:
CR0075 Updated to
include simplified method

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)



Key

- 1 Stronger layer
- 2 Weaker layer
- B Width of the foundation
- D₁ Thickness of the upper layer below the base of the foundation
- c_{u1} Shear strength in total stress analyses in upper (stronger) layer
- c_{u2} Shear strength in total stress analyses in lower (weaker) layer

Figure B.3 — Foundation on a stronger layer over a weaker layer

- (1) In total stress analysis, the bearing resistance R_{Nu} of a rectangular or round spread foundation founded on a stronger fine soil layer above a weaker fine soil layer, as shown in Figure B.3 ~~Figure B.4~~, may be determined from Formula (B.55.3) substituting c_u with $k_1 c_{u1}$, where k_1 may be determined from Formula (B.5):

$$R_{Nu} = A' (k_1 c_{u1} N_{cu} b_{cu} s_{cu} i_{cu} + q) \quad (B.5)$$

$$k_1 = \frac{c_{u2}}{c_{u1}} \left(1 + \frac{D}{B} \right) \left(1 + \frac{D_1}{L} \right) \leq 1.0$$

where:

- c_{u1} is the undrained strength of the upper (stronger) layer;
- c_{u2} is the undrained strength of the lower (weaker) layer;
- D is the embedment depth;
- D₁ is the thickness of the upper layer below the base of the foundation.

NOTE — This formula assumes that the stress from the foundation spreads at a rate of 1 horizontal to 2 vertical through the stronger layer.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (2) The bearing resistance R_N of a rectangular spread foundation founded on a stronger coarse soil layer above a weaker fine soil layer may be determined from Formula (B.6):

$$R_{Nu} = A \left(1 + \frac{0.2B}{L} \right) (\pi + 2) c_{u2} + A' \gamma'_1 D_1^2 \left(1 + \frac{2D}{D_1} \right) \left(\frac{K_{ps} \tan \phi'_1}{B} \right) + A' \gamma'_1 D$$

$$\lambda = \frac{q_2}{q_1} = \frac{(\pi + 2) c_{u2}}{0.5 \gamma'_1 B N_\gamma}$$
(B.6)

where:

- ϕ'_1 is the coefficient of friction for effective stress analyses for upper coarse soil layer;
- c_{u2} is the undrained strength of the lower fine soil layer;
- D_1 is the thickness of the upper layer;
- λ is the ratio of the bearing pressure in the lower layer (q_2) to that in the upper layer (q_1);
- q_2 is the bearing pressure in the lower layer;
- γ'_1 is the effective weight density of the upper layer;
- K_{ps} is a punching shear coefficient given in [Table B.1](#).

Table B.1 — Values of the punching shear coefficient K_{ps}

$\lambda = q_2/q_1$	Value of K_{ps} for ϕ'_1 equal to...		
	30°	35°	40°
0	0.8	1.2	2.1
0.2	1.8	2.7	4.3
0.4	2.8	4.4	6.9
1.0	5.4	7.9	12.4

- (3) As an alternative to (2) the bearing resistance R_N of a rectangular or round spread foundation regarding punching may be determined using Formula (5.3) or Formula (5.7) after projecting the effective area on top of the weaker fine soil layer, as illustrated in Figure B.4.

NOTE 1 The maximum angle of foundation spread in the stronger coarse layer from the foundation edges is 8°. see Figure B.4 unless the National Annex gives a different value.

NOTE 2 Formula (5.3) and Formula (5.7) are used to check for punching by projecting the effective area on top of the weak layer and by assuming that the weak layer extends indefinitely in depth. This is a conservative approach.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

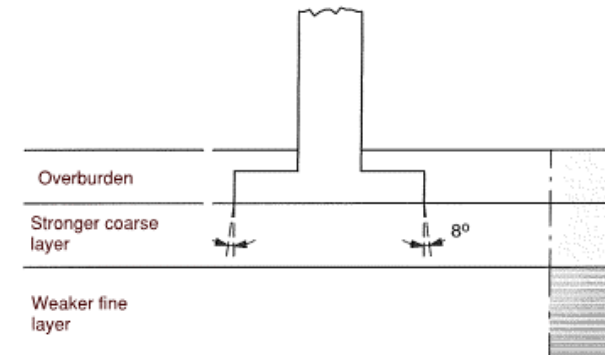


Figure B.4 — Projection of effective area on top of the weaker layer

(4) The limit states of temporary working platforms (reinforced or not) may be verified according to other methods than given in (1) and (2).

NOTE Guidance for the design of temporary working platforms can be found in:

- [EFFC-DFI Guide for Working Platforms \(2020\)](#)
- [Temporary Work forum TWf Guide \(2019\)](#)

B.6 Calculation model for bearing resistance from pressuremeter test results

(1) The bearing resistance R_N of a spread foundation to normal loads may be determined from the result of Ménard Pressuremeter Tests using Formula (B.7B.7):

$$R_N = A \sigma_{v0} + A' k_p p_{LM,e}^* \quad (\text{B.7})$$

where:

- A is the area of the foundation on plan;
- A' is the effective area of the foundation on plan;
- σ_{v0} is the total vertical stress at the level of the foundation base (after the execution of the foundation);
- k_p is a bearing resistance factor given by graphs according to ground type and foundation shape in [Table B.2](#);
- $p_{LM,e}^*$ is the geometric mean on a thickness of $1.5B$ below the foundation base, of the representative values of the net limit pressure, defined in Formula (B.8);
- $p_{LM(z)}$ is the representative value of the Ménard limit pressure at a depth z ;
- $p_{0(z)}$ is the total (initial) stress at a depth z , defined as $p_{0(z)} = K_0 (\sigma_{v(z)} - u_{(z)}) + u_{(z)}$;
- K_0 is the at-rest earth pressure coefficient;
- $\sigma_{v(z)}$ is the total vertical stress at the level of the Ménard Pressuremeter Test at a depth z ;
- $u_{(z)}$ is the groundwater pressure at the level of the Ménard Pressuremeter Test at a depth z .

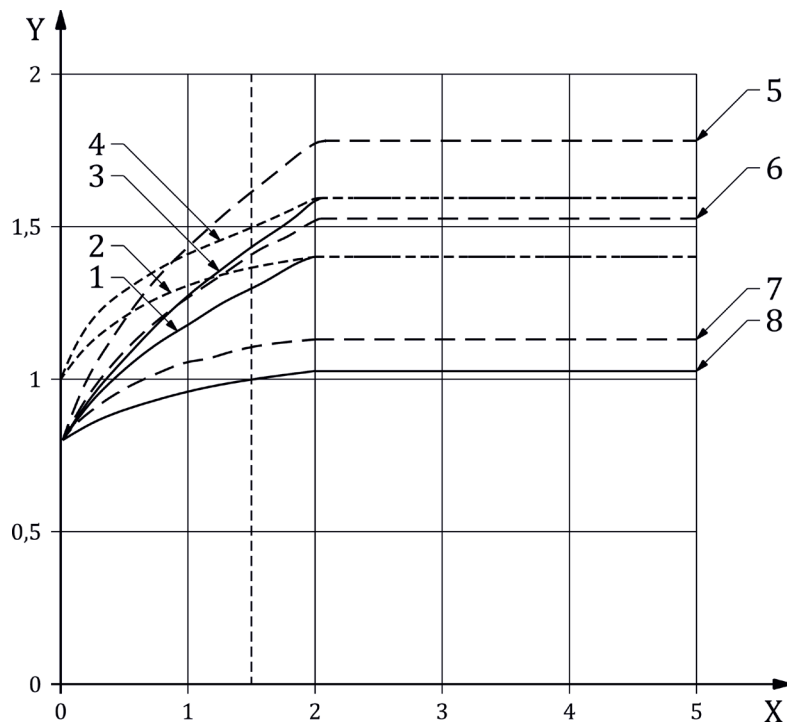
NOTE 1 The effect of the load inclination is considered by an additional parameter applied on k_p

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

NOTE 2 This method is described in NFP 94-261.

$$p_{LM,e}^* = \sqrt[n]{\prod_{i=1}^n p_{LM}^*} = \sqrt[n]{\prod_{i=1}^n (p_{LM(zi)} - p_{0(zi)})} \quad (B.8)$$

NOTE [Figure B.5](#) give the resistance factor k_p for different ground and foundation shapes.



Key

X	D_e/B	1	Q_1	3	Q_3	5	Q_5	7	Q_7
Y	k_p	2	Q_2	4	Q_4	6	Q_6	8	Q_8

Figure B.5 — Bearing resistance factor k_p versus equivalent embedment depth D_e divided by foundation width B for ground types and foundation shapes given in [Table B.2](#)

- (2) Weak ground above the foundation level should not be accounted for in the assessment of the equivalent embedment depth, D_e , defined as the thickness of ground above the foundation level having a similar limit pressure as the ground below the foundation.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

Table B.2 — Correlations for deriving the bearing resistance factor k_p for spread foundations

Ground type	Correlation curves from Figure B.5 to obtain the bearing resistance factor k_p	
	Strip foundation	Square pad
Clay and silt	Q1	Q2
Sand and gravel	Q3	Q4
Chalk	Q5	Q6
Marl and weathered rock	Q7	Q8

B.7 Calculation model for settlement evaluation based on adjusted elasticity method

- (1) The total settlement s of a spread foundation ~~on fine or coarse soil~~ may be determined from Formula (B.9):

$$s = \frac{pB(1 - \nu^2)I_s}{E_m} \quad (\text{B.9})$$

SC7 NOTE [#200]: CR0041
Delete soil since the
Formula is relevant also for
rock

where:

p is the bearing pressure linearly distributed on the base of the foundation;

B is the width of the foundation;

I_s is an influence factor;

E_m is the representative value of the ground elasticity modulus (see also (4) for rocks); and

ν is Poisson's ratio of the ground.

NOTE 1 The value of I_s depends on the stiffness and shape of the foundation area, the variation of stiffness with depth, the thickness of the compressible formation, the distribution of the bearing pressure and the point for which the settlement is determined.

NOTE 2 Values of I_s to calculate the average settlement of a spread foundation on a deep elastic soils are given in [Table B.3](#).

Table B.3 — Values of the influence factor I_s

Foundation stiffness	Value of the influence factor I_s for foundation shape...					
	Circle	Square	Rectangle with L/B equal to			
			2	5	10	100
Flexible	0,85	0,95	1,30	1,83	2,25	3,69
Rigid	0,79	0,82	1,20	1,70	2,10	3,47

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (2) If no reliable settlement results, measured on neighboring similar structures in similar conditions are available, the design drained modulus E_m of the deforming stratum for drained conditions may be estimated from the results of laboratory or in-situ tests.
- (3) The adjusted elasticity method should only be used if the stresses in the ground are such that no significant yielding occurs and if the stress-strain behaviour of the ground is considered to be linear.

NOTE Great caution is required when using the adjusted elasticity method in the case of non-homogeneous ground.

- (4) In case of a spread foundation on rock masses, the design value of E_m may be determined from Formula (B.10).

$$E_m = E_{rm} \quad (B.10)$$

where:

E_{rm} is the rock mass modulus ~~(see prEN 1997-2:2022, 9.1.4 (5))~~;

NOTE 1 E_{rm} can be determined from rock mass classification. In literature, there are other expressions for E_{rm} that can be used considering their applicability and limitations.

NOTE See prEN 1997-2:2022, table 9.1 for test methods to assist in determination of E_{rm} .

SC7 NOTE [#201]:
CR0042 Calculation
model settlement
Adjusted the notes

B.8 Calculation model for settlement evaluation based on stress-strain method

- (1) The total settlement of a spread foundation on fine or coarse soil may be evaluated using the stress-strain calculation method as follows:
- computing the stress distribution in the ground due to the loading from the foundation;
 - this may be determined on the basis of elasticity theory, generally assuming homogeneous isotropic soil and a linear distribution of bearing pressure;
 - computing the strain in the ground from the stresses using stiffness moduli values or other stress-strain relationships determined from laboratory tests (preferably calibrated against field tests), or field tests; and
 - integrating the vertical strains to find the settlements;
 - using the stress-strain method a sufficient number of points within the ground beneath the foundation should be selected and the stresses and strains computed at these points.

B.9 Calculation model for settlements without drainage

- (1) The short-term components of settlement of a foundation on fine soil, which occur without drainage, may be evaluated using either the stress-strain method or the adjusted elasticity method.
- (2) The values adopted for the stiffness parameters should in this case represent the undrained behaviour with $\nu = \nu_u = 0.5$

B.10 Calculation model for settlements caused by consolidation

- (1) To calculate the settlement of a spread foundation caused by consolidation, a confined one-dimensional deformation of the soil in an oedometer test may be assumed and the consolidation test curve used.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (2) Empirical corrections may be applied to the addition of settlements in the undrained and consolidation state to avoid overestimation of the total settlement.

B.11 Calculation model for time-settlement behaviour

- (1) With fine soils the rate of consolidation settlement before the end of the **primary** consolidation may be estimated by using consolidation parameters obtained from a laboratory compression test.
- (2) the rate of consolidation settlement should be obtained using permeability values obtained from in-situ tests.

SC7 NOTE [#202]: CR0053
Revised wording in relation to consolidation/creep

B.12 Calculation model for settlement evaluation using pressuremeter test results

- (1) The settlement of a spread foundation may be determined from the results of Ménard pressuremeter tests using Formula (B.11B.11):

$$s = (q - \sigma_{v0}) \left[\frac{2B_0}{9E_d} \left(\frac{\lambda_d B}{B_0} \right)^{\alpha_r} + \frac{\alpha_r \lambda_c B}{9E_c} \right] \quad (B.11)$$

$$\frac{1}{E_d} = \frac{0.25}{E_1} + \frac{0.3}{E_2} + \frac{0.25}{E_{3 \leftrightarrow 5}} + \frac{0.1}{E_{6 \leftrightarrow 8}} + \frac{0.1}{E_{9 \leftrightarrow 16}}$$

where:

B	is the width of the foundation;
B_0	is a reference width of 0,6 m;
E_c	is the value of E_M measured in a ground of thickness $B/2$ immediately below the foundation;
E_d	is the weighted harmonic mean of E_M measured in ground of thickness $8B$ below the foundation;
$E_{i \leftrightarrow j}$	is the harmonic mean value of E_M measured in layers $B/2$ thick, counted from 1 below the foundation down to 16 as a depth of $8B$;
q	is the design normal pressure applied on the foundation;
α_r	is a rheological factor depending on the nature of ground, as given in Table B.5 ;
λ_d, λ_c	are shape coefficients depending on the ratio L/B , as given in Table B.4 ;
σ_{v0}	is the total (initial) vertical stress at the level of the foundation base.

Table B.4 — Shape coefficients for settlement of spread foundations

L/B	Circle	Square	2	3	5	20
λ_d	1	1,12	1,53	1,78	2,14	2,65
λ_c	1	1,1	1,2	1,3	1,4	1,5

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Table B.5 — Correlations for deriving the rheological factor α_r for spread foundations

Type of ground	Description	E_M/p_{LM}	α_r
Peat			1,00
Clay	Over-consolidated	> 16	1,00
	Normally consolidated	9 – 16	0,67
	Remoulded	7 – 9	0,5'
Silt	Over-consolidated	> 14	0,67
	Normally consolidated	5 – 14	0,50
Sand	---	> 12	0,50
		5 – 12	0,33
Sand and gravel	---	> 10	0,33
		6 – 10	0,25
Rock	Highly weathered rock	---	0,67
	Disintegrated rock mass		0,33
	Highly fractured rock mass		0,50
	Normally fractured, very blocky rock mass		0,67

B.13 Calculation model for settlement evaluation using cone penetration test results

- (1) The settlement of a spread foundation on coarse soil under load pressure (q) may be determined from the results of cone penetration using Formula (B.12B.12):

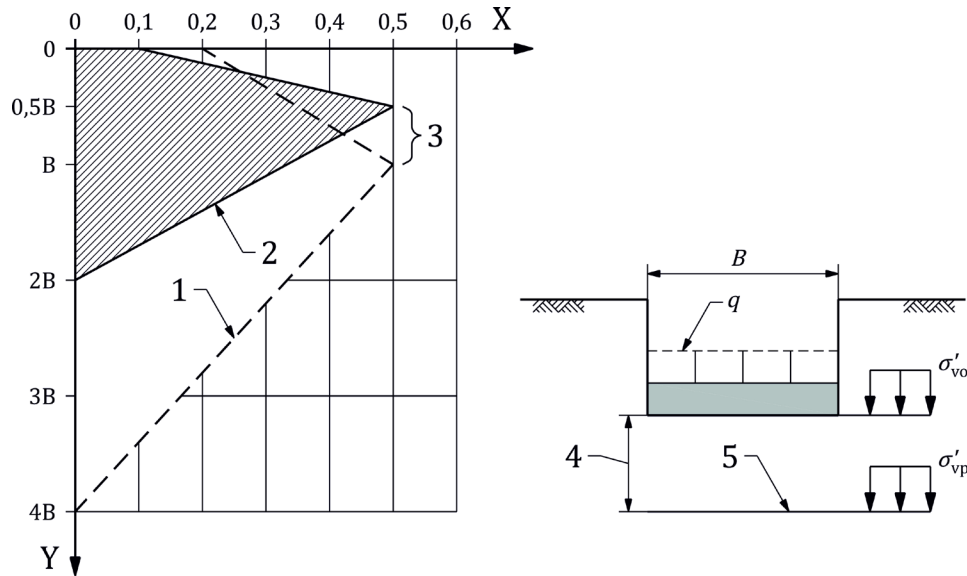
$$s = C_1 C_2 (q - \sigma'_{v0}) \int_0^{z_1} \frac{I_z}{C_3 E'} dz \quad (\text{B.12})$$

where:

- C_1 is $1 - 0,5 \times [\sigma'_{v0}/(q - \sigma'_{v0})]$;
- C_2 is $1,2 + 0,2 \times \lg t$;
- C_3 is the the correction factor for the shape of the spread foundation
1,25 for square foundations; and
1,75 for strip foundations with $L > 10B$;
- t is the time, in years
- σ'_{v0} is the initial effective vertical stress at the level of the foundation
- E' the value for Young's modulus of elasticity (E') derived from the cone penetration resistance (q_c), to be used in this method is: $E' = 2,0 q_c$.
- I_z is a strain influence factor (see [Figure B.6 Figure B.3-](#)) where the distribution of the strain influence factor (I_z) are given for axisymmetric (circular and square) spread foundations and for plane strain (strip spread foundations)

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

NOTE ~~Figure B.6~~ ~~Figure B.3~~ gives the influence factor for the calculation model published by Schmertmann (1970) and Schmertmann et al (1978)



Key

- x rigid footing vertical strain influence factor I_z
- y relative depth below footing
- 1 axi-symmetric ($L/B=1$)
- 2 plane strain ($L/B > 10$)
- 3 $B/2$ (axi-symmetric); B (plane strain)
- 4 depth to I_{zp}

Figure B.6 — Strain influence factor diagrams

B.14 Relative stiffness of a spread foundation and subgrade modulus

- (1) The relative stiffness K_s of a rectangular spread foundation may be determined assuming elastic behaviour for the foundation and the ground and Formula (B.13B.13):

$$K_s = 5.57 \left(\frac{E_f}{E_g} \right) \left(\frac{1 - \nu_g^2}{1 - \nu_f^2} \right) \left(\frac{B}{L} \right)^{0.5} \left(\frac{D_f}{L} \right)^3 \quad (\text{B.13})$$

where:

- E_f is the Young's modulus of the foundation material;
- E_g is the representative Young's modulus for the ground beneath the foundation (i.e. the value of Young's modulus at a depth equal to the radius of a circular footing or half the foundation width);
- ν_g is Poisson's ratio of the ground;
- ν_f is Poisson's ratio of the foundation material;
- B is the foundation width;

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

L is the foundation length; and

D_f is the foundation depth (thickness).

~~(3)~~(5) A foundation may be assumed to be rigid when K_s is greater than 10 and flexible when K_s is less than 0,05.

NOTE For K_s values between these values the relative deflection and the bending moments in the foundation are a function of K_s .

(2) When designing a spread foundation as a beam resting on a series of springs, the subgrade modulus k may be determined from Formula (B.14B.14):

$$k = \frac{0.65E'}{B(1 - \nu^2)} \quad (\text{B.14})$$

where:

E' is Young's modulus of the ground;

ν is Poisson's ratio of the ground; and

B is the foundation width.

B.15 Linear elastic spring stiffnesses of surface foundation

(1) Ground reaction may be represented by springs for all degrees of freedom.

NOTE 1 In general, the springs are non-linear and frequency dependent.

NOTE 2 A rigid foundation on deformable ground has 6 degrees of freedom, 3 translational (in x, y, z directions) and 3 rotational (r_x , r_y , r_z about the x, y and z axes).

(2) For certain foundation shapes (circle, strip, rectangle) and ground profiles (for example, homogeneous half-space and soil layer on rock), the stiffness coefficients may be obtained from available solutions based on linear elasticity.

(3) The linear elastic spring stiffnesses of a rectangular foundation on the surface of a homogeneous half-space may be calculated using Formulae (B.15) to (B.20).

$$K_{yy} = \frac{GL}{2 - \nu} \left[2 + 2,5 \left(\frac{B}{L} \right)^{0,85} \right] \quad (\text{B.15})$$

$$K_{xx} = \frac{GB}{2 - \nu} \left[1,2 + 3,3 \left(\frac{L}{B} \right)^{0,65} \right] \quad (\text{B.16})$$

$$K_{zz} = \frac{GL}{1 - \nu} \left[0,73 + 1,54 \left(\frac{B}{L} \right)^{0,75} \right] \quad (\text{B.17})$$

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

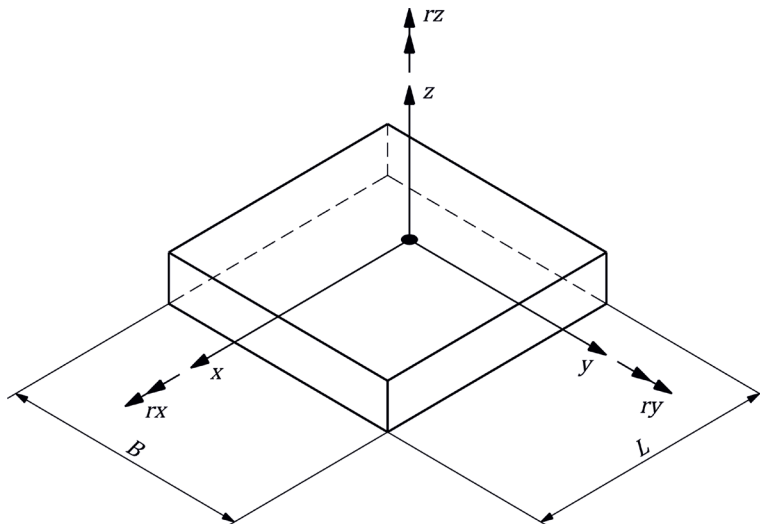
$$K_{rx} = \frac{GB^3}{8(1-\nu)} \left[0,4 + 3,2 \left(\frac{L}{B} \right) \right] \quad (\text{B.18})$$

$$K_{ry} = \frac{GB^3}{8(1-\nu)} \left[3,6 \left(\frac{L}{B} \right)^{2,4} \right] \quad (\text{B.19})$$

$$K_{rz} = \frac{GB^3}{8} \left[4,1 + 4,2 \left(\frac{L}{B} \right)^{2,45} \right] \quad (\text{B.20})$$

where:

- G is the ground shear modulus;
- B is the foundation width (smallest dimension);
- L is the foundation length (largest dimension);
- K_{xx} is the stiffness coefficient in the horizontal X direction;
- K_{yy} is the stiffness coefficient in the horizontal Y direction;
- K_{zz} is the stiffness coefficient in the vertical Z direction;
- K_{ry} is the rocking stiffness coefficient around the horizontal X direction;
- K_{rz} is the torsional stiffness coefficient around the vertical Z direction;
- ν is the ground Poisson's ratio.



Key

- B Width of the foundation

Figure B.7 — Definition of the degrees of freedom

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

B.16 Calculation model for bearing resistance on rock mass based on wedge equilibrium

(1) The bearing resistance of a spread foundation lying on the horizontal rock mass may be determined using the mechanism shown in Figure B.7, assuming the rock mass acts as a continuous medium.

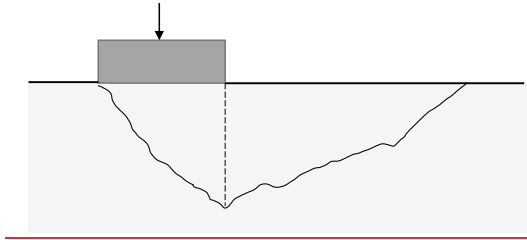


Figure B.8 — Bearing resistance for spread foundation on horizontal surface of rock mass

(2) Based on (1), using the Hoek-Brown failure envelope, the bearing resistance R_N normal to the base of the foundation may be determined from Formula (B.21):

$$R_N = A' \cdot C_{f1} \cdot s^a \cdot \sigma_{ci} \cdot \left[(m_b \cdot s^{(a-1)} + 1)^a + 1 \right] \quad \text{[B.21]}$$

where:

- C_{f1} is a shape corrective factor given in Table B.6;
- A' is the effective area of the foundation;
- σ_{ci} is the uniaxial compressive strength of intact rock;
- m_b, s, a are the Hoek-Brown envelope parameters for the rock mass.

5

Table B.6 — Shape corrective factor for spread foundations on rock

Foundation shape	Strip (L/B>6)	Rectangular (L/B=5)	Rectangular (L/B=2)	Square	Circular
C_{f1}	1.0	1.05	1.12	1.25	1.2

SC7 NOTE [#203]:
CR0043 Bearing resistance on rock mass
Add annex on wedge equilibrium

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

Annex C **(informative)**

Piled foundations

C.1 Use of this Informative Annex

(1) This Informative Annex provides complementary guidance to Clause 6 regarding piled foundations.

NOTE National choice on the application of this Informative Annex is given in the National Annex. If the National Annex contains no information on the application of this informative annex, it can be used.

C.2 Scope and field of application

(1) This Informative Annex covers:

- examples of pile types in different classes;
- method for the determination of the coefficient of variation;
- calculation model for pile bearing capacity based on ground parameters;
- calculation model for pile bearing capacity based on CPT profiles;
- calculation model for pile bearing capacity based on PMT profiles;
- calculation model for pile bearing capacity based on empirical tables;
- calculation model for downdrag (vertical ground movements);
- calculation model for a pile block subject to axial tension loads;
- calculation model for single pile settlement using load transfer functions;
- calculation model for single pile lateral displacement using load transfer functions;
- calculation for model for buckling and second order effects.

C.3 Examples of pile types

NOTE [Table C.1](#) ~~Table C.1~~ give examples of pile types classified according to [Table 6.1](#) ~~Table 6.1~~.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Table C.1 — Examples of pile types in different classes

Pile type	Class	Example pile types
Displacement piles	Full displacement	Driven cast-in-place concrete piles; Solid section precast concrete piles; Driven closed-ended tubular steel piles; Driven closed-ended tubular precast concrete piles; Driven open-ended tubular steel piles (plugged); Driven open-ended tubular precast concrete piles (plugged) Driven steel H-section piles (plugged); Driven micropiles; Driven timber piles; Cast-in-place concrete screw piles.
	Partial displacement	Driven open-ended tubular steel piles (unplugged); Driven steel H-section piles (unplugged); Driven and grouted steel H-section piles; Driven steel sheet piles; Cast-in-place concrete screw piles; Continuous (flight auger) helical displacement piles; Displacement auger piles; Drilled or bored pressure-grouted micropiles.
Replacement piles	Replacement	Bored cast-in-place piles installed using continuous flight auger; Cased continuous flight auger piles; Bored cast-in-place concrete piles with permanent casing; Bored cast-in-place concrete piles with temporary casing; Bored cast-in-place concrete piles with slurry or polymer support; Bored cast-in-place concrete piles excavated without support; Bored or drilled steel tubular piles; Bored ribbed piles; Drilled or bored micropiles; Caissons excavated by hand or by machine; Barrettes; Diaphragm walls; Grouted piles or battetts.
Piles not listed above		Steel helical piles; Compressed-air driven piles

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

C.4 Pile shaft resistance based on ground parameters.

- (1) For total stress analysis, the representative value of unit shaft friction, $q_{s,rep}$ in fine soils and fills may be derived from Formula (C.1C.1):

$$q_{s,rep} = \alpha c_{u,rep} \quad (C.1)$$

where:

$c_{u,rep}$ is the representative undrained shear strength of the ground;

α is an adhesion factor for piles in soil.

NOTE 1 The adhesion factor α is an empirical coefficient that depends on the strength of the soil, effective overburden pressure, pile type, and method of execution.

NOTE 2 The value of α typically ranges between 0.15 and 1.0 for low strength normally consolidated fine soils, and between 0.4 and 0.75 for high-strength over-consolidated fine soils.

- (2) The value of $q_{s,rep}$ in weak and medium strong rock masses may be derived from Formula (C.2C.2):

$$\frac{q_{s,rep}}{p_{ref}} = k_1 \left(\frac{q_{u,rep}}{p_{ref}} \right)^{k_2} \quad (C.2)$$

where:

$q_{u,rep}$ is the representative unconfined compressive strength of the rock mass;

p_{ref} is a reference pressure (= 100 kPa);

k_1, k_2 are empirical coefficients.

NOTE 1 The value of k_1 typically varies between 0.7 and 2.1 for cemented rocks and 1.0-1.29 for soft rocks.

NOTE 2 The value of k_2 typically varies between 0.57 and 0.61 but is commonly taken as 0.5.

- (3) Under effective stress conditions, the value of $q_{s,rep}$ in fine soils, fills, and rock mass may be derived from Formula (C.3):

$$\overline{q_{s,rep}} = K_s \overline{\sigma'_v} \tan \delta_{rep} = \beta \overline{\sigma'_v} \quad (C.3)$$

where:

σ'_v is the vertical effective stress at the depth being considered;

K_s is an earth pressure coefficient;

δ_{rep} is the representative angle of interface friction between the pile and the ground;

β is an empirical coefficient (= $K_s \tan \delta_{rep}$);

— denotes the average value along the pile shaft.

NOTE 1 The earth pressure coefficient depends on the strength of the soil, pile type, method of execution, and distance above the pile base.

NOTE 2 The value of K_s typically ranges between 0.5 and 0.9 for replacement piles and between 0.8 and 1.2 (or higher) for displacement piles.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

NOTE 3 The value of δ_{rep} is typically taken as ϕ_{rep} for cast-in-place concrete piles and between $0.67\phi_{rep}$ and $0.75\phi_{rep}$ for precast concrete and steel piles, where ϕ_{rep} is the representative value of the soil's angle of internal friction.

NOTE 4 For fine soils or fills, β is typically between 0.2 and 0.3. For coarse soils and fills, β increases with density index and is typically between 0.5 and 2.0.

C.5 Pile base resistance based on ground parameters

- (1) For total stress analysis, the representative value of unit base resistance $q_{b,rep}$ in fine and coarse soils, and fills may be derived from Formula (C.4):

$$q_{b,rep} = N_c c_{ub,rep} + \sigma_{vb} \quad (C.4)$$

where:

$c_{ub,rep}$ is the representative undrained shear strength of the ground at the pile base;

N_c is a bearing factor;

σ_{vb} is the total overburden pressure at the depth of the pile base.

NOTE The value of N_c typically ranges between 6 and 10, although $N_c = 9$ is commonly used.

- (2) When the self-weight of the pile is not included as a separate action, the term σ_{vb} in Formula (C.4) should be omitted.

- (3) The value of $q_{b,rep}$ in very weak and weak fine-grained rock masses may be derived from Formula (C.5):

$$\frac{q_{b,rep}}{p_{ref}} = k_3 \left(\frac{q_{u,rep}}{p_{ref}} \right)^{k_4} \quad (C.5)$$

where:

$q_{u,rep}$ is the representative unconfined compressive strength of the rock mass;

p_{ref} is a reference pressure (= 100 kPa);

k_3, k_4 are empirical coefficients.

NOTE 1 The value of k_3 typically about 15 for cemented rocks.

NOTE 2 The value of k_4 typically varies between 0.4 and 0.6 but is commonly taken as 0.5.

- (4) For effective stress analysis, the value of $q_{b,rep}$ may be derived from Formula (C.6):

$$q_{b,rep} = q'_{b,rep} + u_b = N_q \sigma'_{vb} + (\sigma'_{vb} + u_b) \quad (C.6)$$

where:

σ'_{vb} is the vertical effective stress at the depth of the pile base;

N_q is a bearing factor;

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

u_b is the pore water pressure at the depth of the pile base.

NOTE The bearing factor depends on the angle of internal friction of the ground, density index, and vertical effective stress at the pile base.

- (5) When the self-weight of the pile is not included as a separate action, the term $(\sigma'_{vb} + u_b)$ in Formula (C.6) should be omitted.

C.6 Axial pile resistance based on CPT profiles

- (1) The representative value of unit shaft $q_{s,rep}$ in coarse soils and fills may be derived from Formula (C.7C.7):

$$q_{s,rep} = c_s q_c \quad (C.7)$$

where:

q_c is the measured cone resistance (Mpa);

c_s is an empirical cone factor for shaft resistance.

NOTE 1 If $q_c \geq 12$ Mpa over a continuous depth interval ≥ 1 m, then q_c is limited to 15 Mpa over this interval. If $q_c \geq 12$ Mpa over an interval < 1 m, then it is limited to 15 Mpa.

NOTE 2 The empirical factor c_s depends on ground and pile types (see Table C.2 and Table C.3).

Table C.2 — Typical values of c_s and c_b for sands

Pile type	c_b	c_s
Driven precast concrete pile or closed ended steel pipe pile	0.70	0.010 ^a
Cast in place piles made by driving a steel tube with a closed end, with the steel tube being reclaimed during concreting	0.70	0.014 ^a
Driven open ended steel tube or H-pile	0.70	0.006 ^a
Cast-in-place with temporary casing on top of a screw pile-tip, with the casing being removed and the screw tip remaining in the ground	0.63	0.009 ^a
Continuous flight auger pile	0.56	0.006 ^a
Bored pile	0.35	0.006 ^a
^a Values given for fine to coarse sands. For very coarse sands, reduce the values by 25 % and for gravels by 50 %		

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Table C.3 — Typical values of c_s for piles in clays, silts, and peats

Soil type	Cone resistance q_c (Mpa)	c_s
Clay	≥ 2.5	0.03
	2.0-2.5	$0.02 (q_c - 1.0)^a$
	< 2.0	0.02
Silt	---	$\min(f_r, 0.025)^b$
Peat	---	0
^a q_c entered in Mpa ^b f_r = measured (uncorrected) friction ratio		

(2) The representative value of unit base resistance $q_{b,rep}$ in coarse soils and fills may be derived from Formula (C.8C.8):

$$q_{b,rep} = 0.5c_b k_{shape} \left(\frac{q_{c,I,mean} + q_{c,II,mean}}{2} + q_{c,III,mean} \right) < 15MPa \quad (C.8)$$

where:

$q_{c,X,mean}$ is the mean measured cone resistance in zone X (= I, II, or III), as defined in [Figure C.1Figure C.1](#);

c_b is an empirical cone factor for base resistance;

k_{shape} is a factor (see [Figure C.2Figure C.2](#)) that accounts for the relative size of the pile base $B_{b,eq}$ and shaft $B_{s,eq}$ and the thickness h of any base plate (see [Figure C.3Figure C.3](#)).

NOTE 1 The empirical factor c_b depends on ground and pile types (see [Table C.2Table C.2](#)).

NOTE 2 [Figure C.1Figure C.1](#) gives the definition for zones I, II, and III and [Figure C.2Figure C.2](#) a chart to determine k_{shape} .

NOTE 3 In [Figure C.3Figure C.3](#) a chart to determine h is given.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

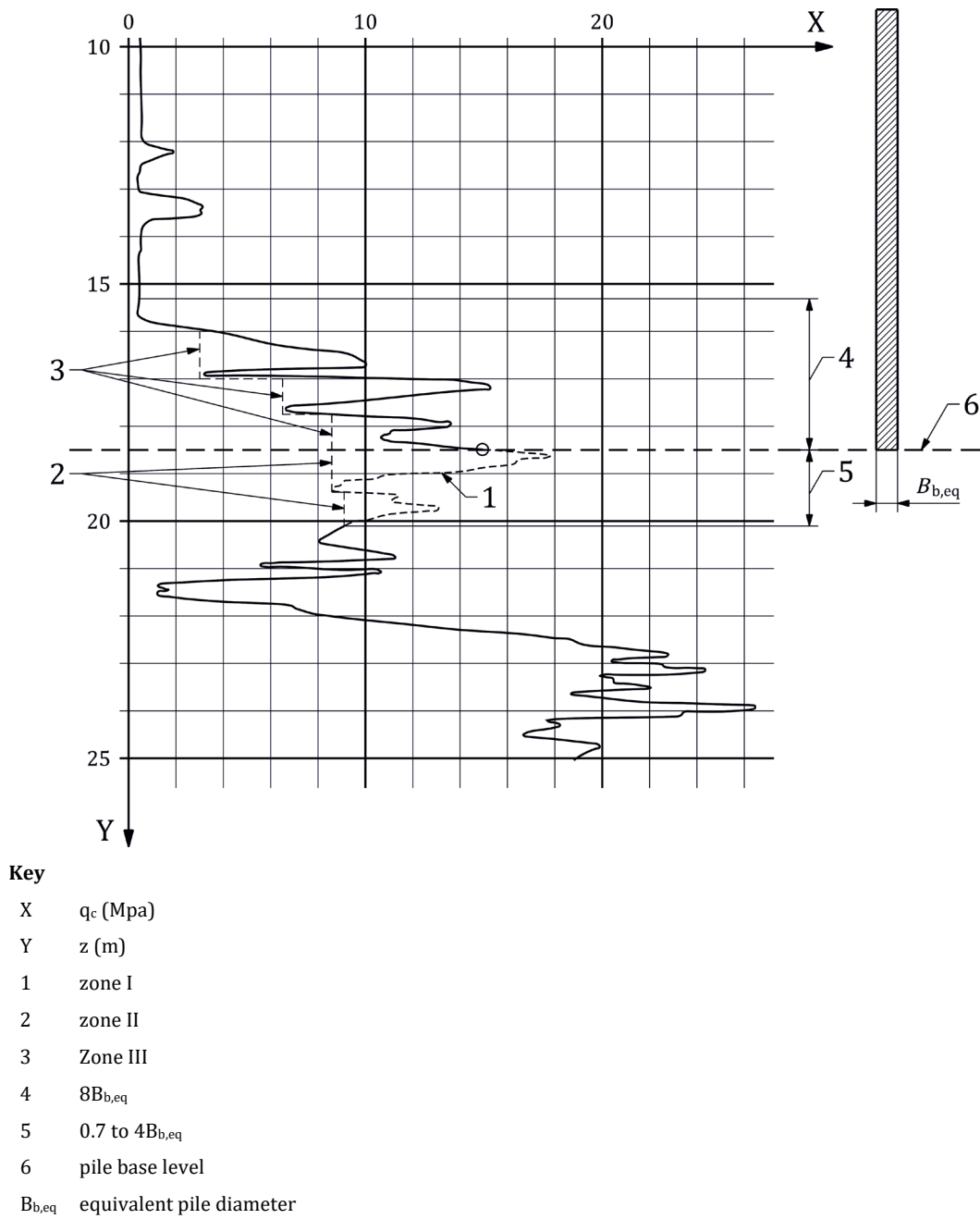
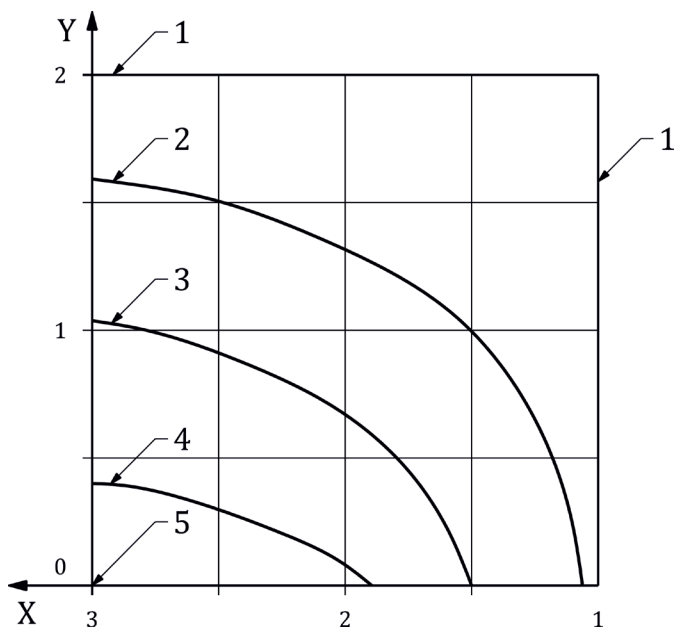


Figure C.1 — Definition of zones I, II, and III

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)



Key			
X	$B_{b,eq}^2/B_{s,eq}^2$	3	$k_{shape}=0.8$
Y	$h/B_{b,eq}$	4	$k_{shape}=0.7$
1	$k_{shape}=1.0$	5	$k_{shape}=0.6$
2	$k_{shape}=0.9$		

Figure C.2 — Chart to determine k_{shape}

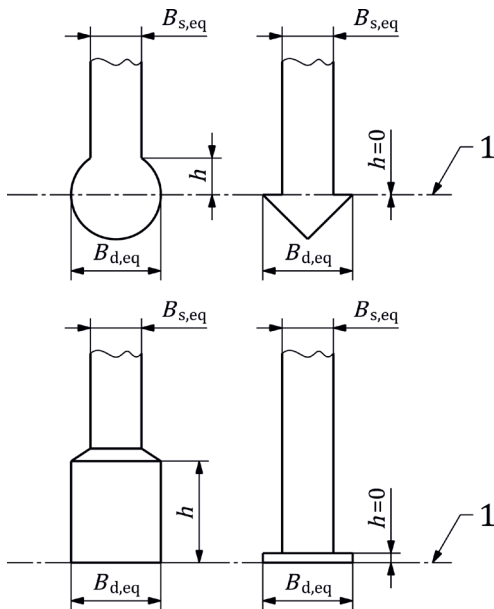


Figure C.3 — Chart to determine h

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (3) For piles installed by driving or vibration into over-consolidated soils, the value of q_c in Formulae (C.7) and (C.8) should be multiplied by $\sqrt{(1/OCR)}$, where OCR is the overconsolidation ratio of the soil.
- (4) For piles installed from an excavated depth that is deeper than that from which the cone penetration tests were executed, the value of q_c in in Formulae (C.7) and (C.8) should be reduced accordingly.

C.7 Axial pile resistance from PMT profiles

- (1) The representative value of unit shaft friction $q_{s,rep}$ may be derived from Formula (C.9):

$$q_{s,rep} = \min(k_{s,PMT}(a_{PMT}p_{LM}^* + b_{PMT})(1 - e^{-c_{PMT}p_l}); q_{s,max}) \quad (C.9)$$

where:

$k_{s,PMT}$ is a dimensionless parameter that depends on pile type and ground type;

p_{LM}^* is the PMT net limit pressure (Mpa) at a depth z ; and

a_{PMT} , b_{PMT} , c_{PMT} are parameters that depend on ground type.

NOTE 1 Values of $k_{s,PMT}$ are given in Table C.4 for selected pile types.

NOTE 2 Values of a_{PMT} , b_{PMT} , and c_{PMT} are given in Table C.5 for selected pile types.

NOTE 3 Values of $q_{s,max}$ are given in Table C.6 for selected pile types.

Table C.4 — Values of $k_{s,PMT}$ for selected pile types

Class	Installation technique	Ground type				
		Fine soil	Coarse soil	Chalk	Marl/marly limestone	Weathered rock masses
1	Mud bored piles/barrettes	1.25	1.4	1.8	1.5	1.6
	Bored (temporary casing)	1.25	1.4	1.7	1.4	—
2	Continuous flight auger bored	1.5	1.8	2.1	1.6	1.6
3	Cast in situ screwed	1.9	2.1	1.7	1.7	—
4	Driven precast or prestressed concrete	1.1	1.4	1	0.9	—
	Closed-ended driven steel	0.8	1.2	0.4	0.9	—
5	Open-ended driven steel	1.2	0.7	0.5	1	1
6	Driven H-shaped	1.1	1	0.4	1	0.9
7	Driven sheet piles	0.9	0.8	0.4	1.2	1.2

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Class	Installation technique	Ground type				
		Fine soil	Coarse soil	Chalk	Marl/marly limestone	Weathered rock masses
8	Injected pile/micro-pile III	2.7	2.9	2.4	2.4	2.4

Table C.5 — Values of a_{PMT} , b_{PMT} , and c_{PMT} for selected pile types

Parameter	Ground type				
	Fine soil	Coarse soil	Chalk	Marl/marly limestone	Weathered rock masses
a_{PMT}	0.003	0.010	0.007	0.008	0.010
b_{PMT}	0.04	0.06	0.07	0.08	0.08
c_{PMT}	3.5	1.2	1.3	3.0	3.0

Table C.6 — Values of $q_{s,max}$ (in kPa) for selected pile types

Class	Installation technique/ parameter	Ground type				
		Fine soil	Coarse soil	Chalk	Marl/marly limestone	Weathered rock masses
1	Mud bored piles/barrettes	90	90	200	170	200
	Bored (temporary casing)	90	90	170	170	-
2	Continuous flight auger bored	90	170	200	200	200
3	Cast in situ screwed	130	200	170	170	-
4	Driven precast or prestressed concrete	130	130	90	90	-
	Closed-ended driven steel	90	90	50	90	-
5	Open-ended driven steel	90	50	50	90	90
6	Driven H-shaped	90	130	50	90	90
7	Driven sheet piles	90	50	50	90	90
8	Injected pile/micro-pile	200	380	320	320	320

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

(2) The representative value of unit base resistance $q_{b,rep}$ may be derived from Formula (C.10):

$$q_{b,rep} = k_{b,PMT} \frac{1}{z_1 + 3z_2} \int_{-z_1}^{3z_2} p_{LM}^*(z) dz \quad (C.10)$$

where:

$k_{b,PMT}$ is a dimensionless parameter that depends on pile type and ground type;

$p_{LM}^*(z)$ is the netPMT limit pressure at a depth z ;

z_1 is a depth equal to $\min(z_2, h)$;

z_2 is a depth equal to $\min(D_b/2, 0.5 \text{ m})$;

D_b is the base diameter of the pile;

h is the embedment depth of the pile in the bearing geotechnical unit.

NOTE Values of $k_{b,PMT}$ are given in Table C.7 for selected pile types.

Table C.7 — Values of $k_{b,PMT}$ for selected pile types

Class	Installation technique	Ground type				
		Fine soil	Coarse soil	Chalk	Marl/marly limestone	Weathered rock masses
1	Bored	1.15	1.1	1.45	1.45	1.45
2	Continuous flight auger	1.3	1.65	1.6	1.6	2.0
3	Cast-in-place screwed	1.55	3.2	2.35	2.10	2.10
4	Closed-ended driven	1.35	3.1	2.30	2.30	2.30
5	Open-ended driven	1.0	1.9	1.4	1.4	1.2
6	Driven (H-shaped)	1.20	3.10	1.7	2.2	1.5
7	Driven (sheet)	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.2
8	Micropile ^a	1.15	1.1	1.45	1.45	1.45
^a For micropiles, base resistance is usually not taken into account						

C.8 Axial pile resistance based on empirical tables

(1) The representative value of unit shaft resistance $q_{s,rep}$ for bored piles in soils may be determined from Table C.8.

NOTE The values of $q_{s,rep}$ and $q_{b,rep}$ given in this sub-clause are based on an empirical database of results from predominantly static pile load tests. The lower bound of the ranges specified is a 10 % quantile whereas the upper bound is a 50 % quantile.

(2) The 10 % quantile values given in Table C.8 should be used, unless site-specific pile load testing confirms the use of the 50 % quantile values.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Table C.8 — Representative values of unit shaft resistance $q_{s,rep}$ for bored piles in soils

Fine soils		Coarse soils	
Undrained shear strength c_u (kPa)	$q_{s,rep}$ (kPa) ^{a, b}	Mean cone resistance q (Mpa)	$q_{s,rep}$ (kPa) ^{a, b}
60	30-40	7.5	55-80
150	50-65	15	105-140
250	65-85	25	130-170
^a The lower value represents the 10 % quantile and the upper value the 50 % quantile			
^b Intermediate values can be obtained by linear interpolation			

(3) The values given in [Table C.9](#) should be reduced by 25 % for bored piles with enlarged bases.**Table C.9 — Representative values of unit base resistance $q_{b,rep}$ for bored piles in soils**

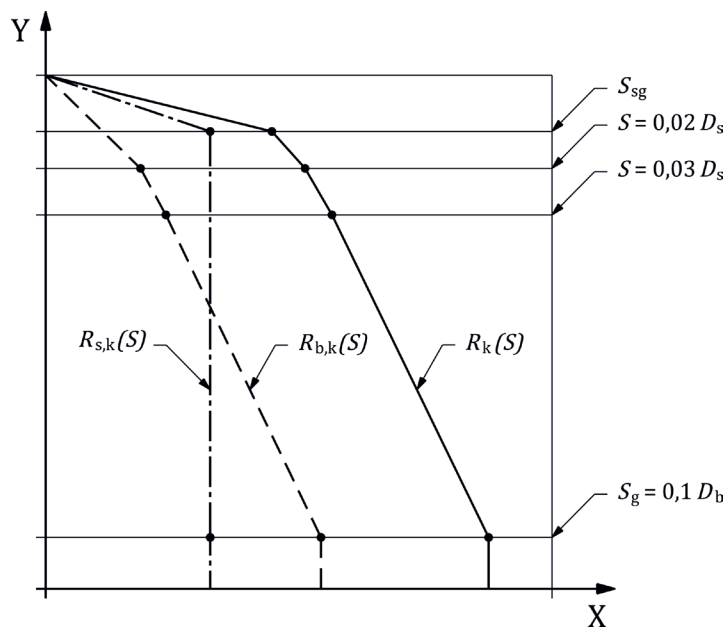
Fine soils				Coarse soils			
c_u (kPa)	$q_{b,rep}$ (kPa) ^{a, b} for s/D equal to ^c ...			q_c (Mpa)	$q_{b,rep}$ (kPa) ^{a, b} for s/D equal to ^c ...		
	2 %	3 %	10 %		2 %	3 %	10 %
100	350-450	450-550	800-1000	7.5	550-800	700-1050	1600-2300
150	600-750	700-900	1200-1500	15	1050-1400	1350-1800	3000-4000
250	950-1200	1200-1450	1600-2000	25	1750-2300	2250-2950	4000-5300
^a The lower value represents the 10 % quantile and the upper value the 50 % quantile.							
^b Intermediate values can be obtained by linear interpolation							
^c s = pile head settlement; D = pile diameter							

(4) The load-settlement curve for bored piles in soils may be determined from [Figure C.4](#), with the settlement s_{sg} given by Formula ([C.11](#)):

$$s_{sg} = k_{sg} R_{sk} + 5mm \leq 30mm \quad (C.11)$$

 R_{sk} is the shaft resistance calculated from [Table C.8](#); k_{sg} is a factor equal to 5 mm/MN.NOTE [Figure C.4](#) gives Load-displacement curves for bored piles

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)



Key

- X Pile capacity
- Y Pile head settlement s

Figure C.4 — Load-displacement curves for bored piles

C.9 Downdrag due to vertical ground movements

C.9.1 General

- (1) The drag force caused by downdrag should be classified as a permanent action.

NOTE 1 'Downdrag' is the term used to describe relative movement between settling ground and the pile shaft. A drag force occurs where the ground settlement exceeds the pile settlement.

NOTE 2 Pile settlement due to downdrag continues until the combination of imposed actions from the structure and the drag force come into equilibrium with the mobilised pile resistance.

- (2) Potential downdrag should be included in the verification of serviceability limit states.
- (3) Potential downdrag should be included in the verification of ultimate limit states when the drag force exceeds any variable compressive actions applied to the pile.

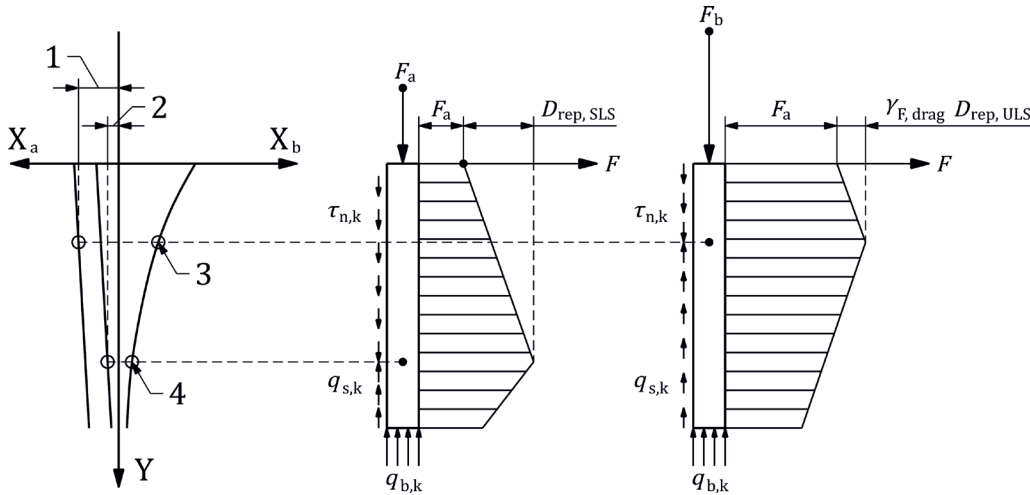
C.9.2 Rigorous interaction model for downdrag

- (1) The calculation model shown in [Figure C.5](#) may be used to calculate the drag force owing to potential downdrag.

NOTE 1 In this model, the neutral point marks the boundary between forces that act downwards and upwards acting along the pile shaft. The neutral point differs between ULS and SLS conditions.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

NOTE 2 ~~Figure C.5~~ Figure C.5 illustrated the force distribution for assessment of dragforce on a pile subjected to downdrag.



Key

X_a S_{pile}

X_b S_{ground}

Y s_{ground}depth

$$1 \quad s_{pile,SLS} = f \left(\sum_{i \geq 1} G_{k,i} + \sum_{j \geq 1} \psi_{2,j} Q_{k,j} \right)$$

$$2 \quad s_{pile,ULS} = f \left(\sum_{i \geq 1} \gamma_{G,i} G_{k,i} + \sum_{j \geq 1} \gamma_{Q,j} \psi_{0,j} Q_{k,j} \right)$$

3 neutral point (ULS)

4 neutral point (SLS)

F_a action at the pile head (SLS)

F_b action at the pile head (ULS)

Figure C.5 — Force distribution for assessment of drag force on a pile subject to downdrag

NOTE 3 The neutral point will be at a different level for SLS or ULS conditions, but in both cases, corresponds to the level at which the settlement of the pile s_{pile} and the surrounding ground s_{ground} are equal. For the ULS case, the neutral point will be at a higher level compared to that for the SLS case.

- (2) The settlement of the ground at any particular time s_{ground} should be estimated from anticipated changes in effective stress, ground stiffness, and depth of compressible ground.
- (3) The ground settlement ~~of~~ should include immediate deformation and primary consolidation, together with potential ~~secondary consolidation (creep)~~.
- (4) The settlement of the pile s_{pile} may be estimated using analytical models, empirical relationships, numerical analysis, or other suitable method that take account of the stress distribution.

SC7 NOTE [#204]: CR0072
Revised legend

SC7 NOTE [#205]: In
Figure the F_a in the right
hand figure shall be
changed to F_b , and gF_{drag}
 $D_{rep,ULS}$ shall be
replaced by " $D_{rep,ULS}$ "

SC7 NOTE [#206]: CR0053
Revised wording in relation
to consolidation and creep

SC7 NOTE [#207]: CR0072
deletion of "of" before
should

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (5) As an alternative to (2) and (4), the values of s_{ground} and s_{pile} may be determined by an interaction analysis to find the depth of the neutral point L_{dd} where $s_{\text{pile}} = s_{\text{ground}}$.
- (6) In addition to prEN 1990-1:2021, 8.4.3.4, the design value of the compressive action applied to the pile at the serviceability limit state should be determined from Formula ~~(C.12C.12)~~:

$$F_{\text{cd,SLS}} = \max \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \sum_{i \geq 1} G_{k,i} + Q_{k,1} + \sum_{j > 1} \psi_{2,j} Q_{k,j} \\ \sum_{i \geq 1} G_{k,i} + D_{\text{rep,SLS}} + \sum_{j \geq 1} \psi_{2,j} Q_{k,j} \end{array} \right. \quad (\text{C.12})$$

where:

- $G_{k,i}$ is the i -th characteristic permanent action;
- $Q_{k,1}$ is the leading characteristic variable action;
- $Q_{k,j}$ is the j -th accompanying characteristic variable action;
- $D_{\text{rep,SLS}}$ is the representative drag force at the serviceability limit state;
- $\psi_{2,j}$ is a combination value for accompanying variable actions.

NOTE Formula ~~(C.12C.12)~~ is a modification of the quasi-permanent combination of actions given in prEN 1990-1.

- (7) In addition to prEN 1990-1:2021, 8.4.3.2, the design value of the compressive action applied to the pile at the ultimate limit state should be determined from Formula ~~(C.13C.13)~~:

$$F_{\text{cd,ULS}} = \max \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \sum_{i \geq 1} \gamma_{G,i} G_{k,i} + \gamma_Q Q_{k,1} + \sum_{j > 1} \gamma_{Q,j} \psi_{0,j} Q_{k,j} \\ \sum_{i \geq 1} \gamma_{G,i} G_{k,i} + \gamma_{F,\text{drag}} D_{\text{rep,ULS}} + \sum_{j \geq 1} \gamma_{Q,j} \psi_{0,j} Q_{k,j} \end{array} \right. \quad (\text{C.13})$$

- $D_{\text{rep,ULS}}$ is the representative drag force over the depth of ground above the neutral plane under ultimate conditions;
- $\gamma_{G,i}, \gamma_{Q,j}$ are partial factors applied to permanent and variable actions, respectively;
- $\psi_{0,j}$ is a combination factor for accompanying variable actions;
- $\gamma_{F,\text{drag}}$ is a partial factor dependent on the assumptions regarding ground parameters and the particular method of analysis used to determine $D_{\text{rep,ULS}}$.

C.9.3 Simplified approach for calculating downdrag

- (1) For simple cases, approximate approaches may be used.
- (2) If the pile settlement s_{pile} at the ultimate limit state is greater than the settlement of the surrounding soil or fill s_{ground} , the neutral point may be assumed to be located at the ground surface.
- (3) In this case of (2) the drag force may be disregarded for the verification of the ultimate limit state.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

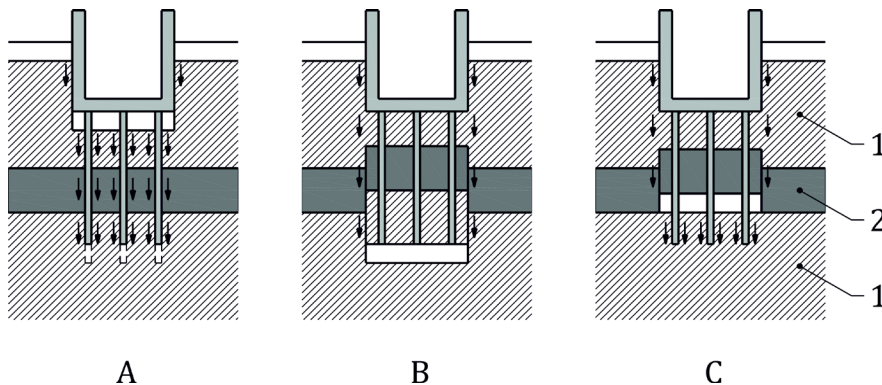
- (4) If the pile settlement s_{pile} at the ultimate limit state is much smaller than the settlement of the surrounding soil or fill s_{ground} , the neutral point may be assumed to be located at the base of the settling soil or fill layer.
- (5) For (4) the representative value of the drag force D_{rep} may be taken as an upper (superior) value determined for the full thickness of the settling soil or fill.
- (6) For SLS conditions, the neutral plane may be assumed to be located at the base of the settling fill or soil layer.
- (7) Representative values for the drag force D_{rep} should be determined for the full thickness of the settling soil or fill.

C.9.4 Representative downdrag

- (1) The representative value of downdrag within the settling ground may be determined from C.4, using upper (superior) values of ground strength properties.

C.10 Pile groups subject to axial tension

NOTE Possible mechanisms for groups of tension piles in layered soils are illustrated in [Figure C.6](#).



Key

- A Pull-out from ground
- B Lift-off a block of soil
- C Combined pull-out and lift-off

Figure C.6 — Possible mechanisms for groups of tension piles in layered soils

- (1) For the evaluation of the block failure, the representative weight of the soil block surrounding an individual pile $W_{\text{block,rep}}$ (see [Figure C.7](#)) may be determined from Formula (C.14):

$$W_{\text{block,rep}} = n_z \left[s_x s_y \left(L - \frac{1}{3} \sqrt{(s_x^2 + s_y^2)} \cot \varphi_{\text{rep}} \right) \right] \eta_z \gamma \quad (\text{C.14})$$

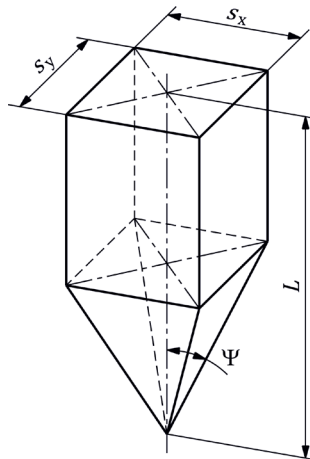
where:

- L is the embedded depth of the pile;

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

s_x, s_y are the grid spacings of the piles in the group;
 n_z is the number of piles in the group;
 α is the representative value of the internal friction angle of the soil block;
 λ_z is a coefficient commonly taken as 0.8;
 γ is the weight density of the soil block.

NOTE Figure C.7 illustrates block failure of single pile.



Key

s_x, s_y are the grid spacings of the piles in the group;
 α is the representative value of the internal friction angle of the soil block;

Figure C.7 — Block failure of a single pile under tension as part of a pile group

C.11 Calculation model for single pile settlement using load transfer functions

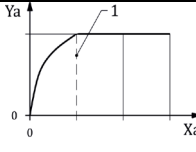
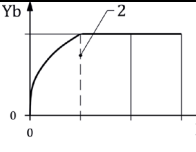
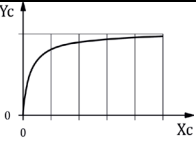
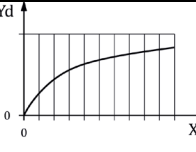
(1) Settlement of single piles may be determined using load transfer functions.

NOTE Examples of load transfer functions are given in [Table C.10](#) ~~Table C.10~~.

(2) Load transfer functions used for the assessment of pile settlement should be calibrated with comparable experience.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Table C.10 — Example load transfer functions

Curve	Cubic root		Hyperbolic	
	Shaft	Base	Shaft	Base
Shape				
	$Y_a = q_s$ $X_a = S_s$ $1 = S_{s,max}$	$Y_b = q_b$ $X_b = S_b$ $2 = S_{b,lim}$	$Y_c = q_s$ $X_c = S_s$	$Y_d = q_b$ $X_d = S_b$ 4
q/q _{ult}	$\sqrt[3]{\frac{S_s}{S_{s,max}}}$	$\sqrt[3]{\frac{S_b}{S_{b,max}}}$	$\frac{S_s}{M_s B + S_s}$	$\frac{S_b}{M_b B + S_b}$
Deformation parameter	$S_{s,max}$	$S_{b,max}$, depending on diameter	M_s	M_b
Initial slope	∞	∞	$q_{s,ult}/M_s B$	$q_{b,ult}/M_b B$

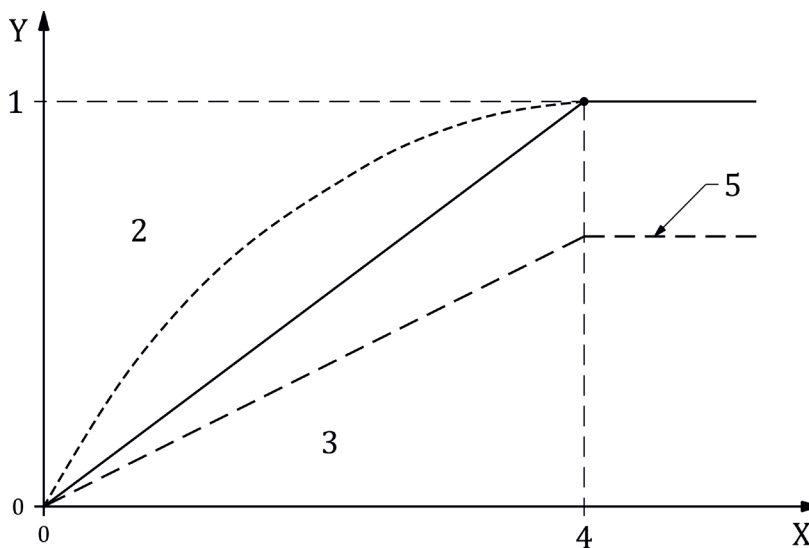
C.12 Calculation model for single pile lateral displacement using load transfer functions

C.12.1 General

- (1) The behaviour of transversally loaded piles may be considered by a bilinear model, representing the non-linear soil resistance as shown in Figure C.8.

NOTE [Figure C.8](#) illustration of the bilinear model for transversally loaded piles.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)



Key

X y , transversal deflection;

Y p , lateral pressure:

1 p_f , lateral pressure of the ground at failure

2 p_{fd} , design value of the lateral pressure of the ground at failure

3 y_f , transversal deflection of the pile at failure

4 Dashed line – soil resistance defined by Formula (C.15)

5 Dashed curve – actual soil resistance

Figure C.8 — Model of soil resistance as a function of the transversal deflection of a pile

(2) The lateral pressure may be determined by Formula (C.15)

$$p = \min\left(\frac{p_f}{y_f} \cdot y; p_f\right) \quad (\text{C.15})$$

where

p_f is the lateral pressure of the ground at failure;

p is the lateral pressure;

y_f is the transversal deflection off the pile.

(3) Specific non-linear soil models may be used for buckling.

NOTE A non-linear soil model is given in prEN 1990-1 and provides information about the soil resistance p at small transversal deflections y .

(4) For design situations where seismic loading potentially results in loss of shear strength in soils susceptible to liquefaction, p_f should be assumed to be equal to zero.

NOTE
soils. Examples of design situation in (4) is e.g. saturated sand of loose density and collapsible fine-grained

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**C.12.2 P-y curves from undrained soil properties**

- (1) The design value of the ultimate transversal ground resistance during short-term loading in undrained situations may be expressed by $p_{fd} = 9 \cdot c_{ud}$.
- (2) To account for long-term deformations resulting from creep of a highly viscous soil, $p_{fd} = 6 \cdot c_{ud}$. May be applied.

NOTE Examples of highly viscous soils is low strength clay or organic clay.

- (3) A weighted average of the undrained soil response may be applied in the case of combined long-term and short-term loads.
- (4) To account for limited soil resistance to close the ground surface p_{fd} may be determined using formula (C.16):

$$p_{f,d} = c_{ud} \cdot \left(2 + \frac{2}{3} \cdot \frac{z}{B} \right) + \sigma'_z \quad (\text{C.16})$$

where

- $p_{f,d}$ is the design lateral pressure of the ground at failure;
 c_{ud} is the design undrained shear strength of the ground;
 σ'_z is the effective vertical stress of the soil at the depth z ;
 B is the pile diameter
 z is the depth below the ground surface.

C.12.3 P-y curves from drained soil properties

- (C) For drained soil conditions the ultimate transversal ground resistance may be determined using formula C.17

$$p_{fd} = K_{qd} \cdot \sigma'_z + K_{cd} \cdot c'_d \quad (\text{C.17})$$

where

- $p_{f,d}$ is the design lateral pressure of the ground at failure;
 c'_d is the design effective cohesion of the ground;
 σ'_z is the effective vertical stress of the soil at the depth z ;
 K_{qd}, K_{cd} is coefficients for calculation the ultimate drained soil resistance.

NOTE In **Key**

X $z/D [-]$

Y1 K_{qd}

Y2 K_{cd}

Figure C.9**Key**

X $z/D [-]$

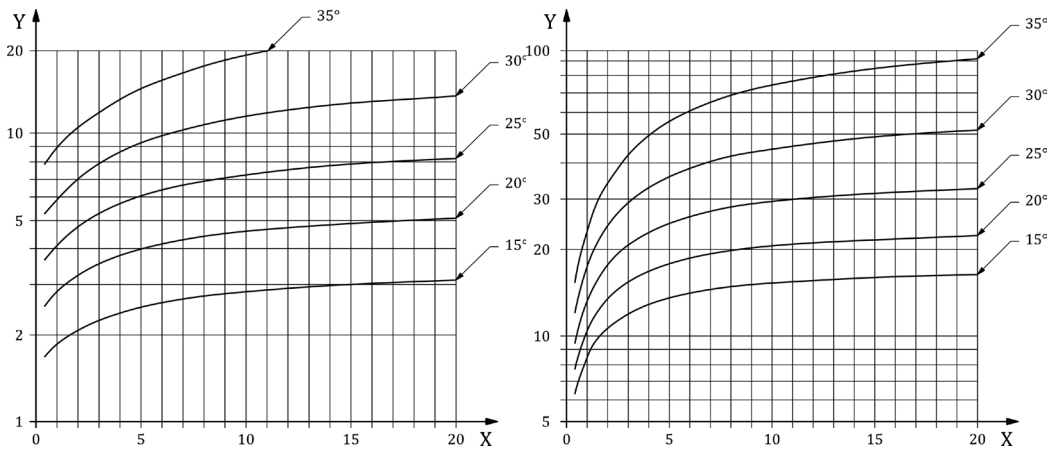
Y1 K_{qd}

Y2 K_{cd}

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

Figure C.9 gives the graphs for calculating the ultimate drained soil resistance according to Brinch Hansen (1961)

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)



Key
X $z/D [-]$
Y1 K_{qd}
Y2 K_{cd}

Figure C.9 — Coefficients K_{qd} and K_{cd} for calculating the ultimate drained soil resistance

C.12.4 P-y curves from drained soil properties

- (1) If a bilinear ground model according to formula (C.15) is used for the soil resistance, the necessary transversal displacement y_f , resulting from the flexural buckling of the pile to mobilize p_f , may be assumed according to [Table C.11](#)

Table C.11 — Values of transversal displacement y_f .

Soil conditions	y_f
Coarse soils	0,1 B
Fine soils, long-term loading	0,12 B
Fine soils, short-term loading	0,05 B

- (2) The buckling resistance, C.13, may also be determined for $y > y_f$ provided it can be verified that the soil does not undergo strain softening and that the necessary reduction is made to the overall transversal ground resistance.

NOTE A reduction to the ultimate ground resistance p_f when $y > y_f$ can be calculated assuming equivalent overall ground pressure along the buckling length.

C.12.5 P-y curves from other field tests

- (1) If a bilinear ground model as shown in [Figure C.8](#) may be used derived from cone penetration test or pressuremeter test measurements.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

C.13 Buckling and second order effects**C.13.1 General**

- (1) For piles subjected to compression, the structural resistance shall be verified by second order theory if the slenderness ratio is higher than the limits described in section C13.5.
- (2) The buckling resistance of a slender pile under compression and embedded in soil should be determined by a validated model, either analytic or numerical, according to second order theory considering the support of the soil.

NOTE 1 The mobilisation of the ground resistance is dependent on the transversal deflection of the pile (see Figure C.11). The ground resistance is limited by different failure mechanisms which are dependent on the subsoil conditions as well as on the foundation geometry.

NOTE 2 The differential equation in Formula (C.18) is a validated calculation model for buckling of a uniform pile in uniform soil:

$$EI \cdot \frac{d^4 y}{dx^4} + C \cdot y + F \cdot \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} = 0 \quad (\text{C.18})$$

where

x	is the distance along the pile axis;
y	is the transversal deflection of the pile;
EI	is the flexural stiffness product of the pile;
C	is the subgrade reaction modulus;
F	is the axial force applied to the pile

- (3) The structural resistance (ULS) and the deformation of piles (SLS) shall be verified in accordance with the structural design codes for concrete structures (prEN 1992 ~~all parts~~; 2021), steel structures (prEN 1993 ~~all parts~~), composite steel and concrete structures (prEN 1994 ~~all parts~~) and timber structures (prEN 1995 ~~all parts~~).
- (4) For closely placed piles, where the ~~centre-to-centre~~ centre-to-centre distance is less than 3D, a reduction in the transversal resistance shall be considered.

C.13.2 Buckling resistance by numerical methods

- (1) The numerical method shall consider the second order moment caused by the transversal deformation during the axial loading of the pile.

NOTE 1 Numerical methods can be used for heterogeneous ground conditions and for piles with non-uniform cross section along the pile length.

NOTE 2 Numerical methods are usually based on Formula (C.18 ~~C.19~~) for which the eigenvalues corresponds to the buckling forces.

- (2) An initial deformation of the pile according to C13.2 should be applied, using values that are proportional to the buckling eigenmodes.

SC7 NOTE [#208]: CR0068
Revision based on proposal from AdHoc group, that started due to the first CR that highlighted the inconsistency. Multiple changes within C.13 made due to this CR. The proposed limits in C.13.5 will be confirmed during enquiry.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

C.13.3 Buckling resistance by analytical methods

C.13.3.1 Critical buckling load

(1) ~~NOTE 2~~ For a fully embedded straight pile the design value of the critical buckling load $N_{cr,d}$ is determined according to Formula (C.19~~C.25~~)

$$N_{cr,d} = 2 \cdot \sqrt{\cancel{E}E_d I \cdot \frac{p_{fd} \cdot B}{y_f}} \quad (C.19)$$

where

$\cancel{E}E_d I$ is the flexural stiffness of the pile, design value according to the structural Eurocodes;

\cancel{N}_{cr} is the critical elastic force;

y_f is the relative deformation between the pile and the supporting soil where p_f is obtained;

B is the shaft diameter or width of the pile in contact with the ground; ~~cross-sectional area of the pile;~~

p_{fd} is the design value of the ultimate transversal ground resistance [force/unit area] reached with the deflection $y = y_f$ at $z^* = L_{bd}/2$, see Figure C.8 and Figure C.11;

L_{bd} is the buckling length, design value, see 13.3.3

(2)

SC7 NOTE [#209]: Editor change: Deleted may be reached, since the definition can not include a permission.

C.13.3.1C.13.3.2 Buckling resistance for non-straight pile

(1) The design value of buckling resistance N_{bd} for a fully embedded pile may be determined using Formula (C.20~~C.19~~):

$$N_{bd} = \frac{y_f \cdot E_d I \cdot \left(\frac{\pi}{L_{bd}}\right)^2 + p_{fd} \cdot B \cdot \left(\frac{L_{bd}}{\pi}\right)^2}{y_f + e_{0d}} \quad (C.20)$$

Where in addition to Formula C.19:

y_f is the relative deformation between the pile and the supporting soil where p_f is obtained

$\cancel{E_d I}$ is the flexural stiffness of the pile, design value according to the structural Eurocodes

$\cancel{L_{bd}}$ is the buckling length, design value

$\cancel{p_{fd}}$ is the design value of the ultimate transversal ground resistance [force/unit area] which may be reached with the deflection $y = y_f$ at $z^* = \cancel{L_{bd}}/2$, see Figure C.8 and Figure C.11

\cancel{B} is the shaft diameter or width of the pile in contact with the ground

e_{0d} is the maximum transversal deformation of the initial curvature over the buckling length, design value, see C13.3.4

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

~~C.13.3.2~~C.13.3.3 Buckling length

- (1) The design value of the buckling length L_{bd} for a fully embedded pile should be determined using Formula (C.21C.20):

$$L_{bd} = \pi \cdot \sqrt[4]{\frac{E_d I \cdot \gamma_f}{p_{fd} \cdot B}} \quad (C.21)$$

where symbols are defined in Formula (C.20C.19)

NOTE 1 For layered soils and soils with variable undrained strength over the buckling length L_{bd} , a combined average value of p_f and γ_f , can be used.

NOTE 2 For a pile with a length $L < L_{bd}$ and where the pile top and base are pinned but free to rotate, $L_{bd} = L$ can be assumed.

~~NOTE 3 In case the thickness of the soft layer is less than L_{bd} , $L_{bd} \equiv$ the thickness of the soft layer can be assumed.~~

~~C.13.3.3~~C.13.3.4 Initial curvature

- (1) An initial curvature of the pile shall be applied, considering production imperfections, installation effects and angular distortion of joints.
- (2) With a given initial curvature, the parameter e_{0d} may be determined using Formula (C.22C.21):

$$e_{0d} = \frac{(L_{bd})^2}{8 \cdot R_{0d}} \quad (C.22)$$

where

~~e_{0d} is the maximum transversal deformation of the initial curvature over the buckling length, design value;~~

R_{0d} is the curvature, design value;

- (3) If no information about geometrical imperfections for a pile embedded in soil is known, the design curvature with R_{0d} within the buckling length may be assumed.

~~NOTE 1 Guidance on assumption regarding design buckling lengths according to is given in table C13.1 unless the National Annex give different values.~~

NOTE 2 Smaller values of R_{0d} are likely for piles with $B < 150$ mm and for driven piles encountering boulders or heavily inclined bedrock.

SC7 NOTE [#210]: Editor change: Reference to NA in note.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Table C.13.1 —(NDP) Design values of pile curvature.

Pile type	R_{0d} no joints	R_{0d} one joint ^a
bored steel and composite steel-concrete tube piles	300 m	150 m
driven steel and composite steel-concrete piles	200 m	100 m
precast concrete piles	200 m	100 m
cast insitu concrete piles	100 m	-
timber piles	100 m	
^a within the buckling length		

(3)(4) The following addition to e_{0d} should be made to steel piles to account for manufacturing residual stresses in the pile, depending on the cross-sectional type:

- ~~Type a~~_{0, a}: $0,0003 \cdot Lbd$
- ~~Type b~~: $0,0013 \cdot Lbd$
- ~~Type c~~: $0,0025 \cdot Lbd$
- ~~Type d~~: $0,0045 \cdot Lbd$

NOTE Classification of cross-sectional types for buckling is found in Table 6.2.3 in FprEN 1993-1-1:2022.

C.13.4 Corresponding second order moment

- (1) Cross-sectional checks shall be performed according to the structural Eurocodes taking into account the corresponding second order moment during axial loading.
- (2) For a pile of length equal or greater than L_{bd} according to Formula (C.21C.20), the corresponding second order moment during axial loading may be accounted for by using Formula (C.23C.22) and Formula (C.24):

$$M_{2Ed} = N_{Ed} \cdot \frac{e_{0d} + y}{2} \quad (C.23)$$

$$y = \frac{N_{Ed} \cdot e_{0d}}{2 \cdot \left(\int_B \left(p_{fd} / y_f \right) E_d I \right) - N_{Ed}} \quad (C.24)$$

where:

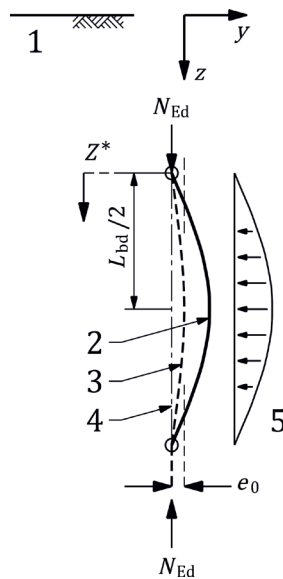
N_{Ed} is the applied axial load, $N_{Ed} \leq N_{bd}$

M_{2Ed} is the corresponding moment with second order effects

y is the transverse deflection caused by the axial force ($y \leq y_f$), see Figure C.10.

NOTE Figure C.10 illustrates the transverse deflection of a pile caused by a compressive force.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)



Key

- y transversal displacement
- z depth
- 1 surface
- 2 buckling mode N_{Ed} N_{bd}
- 3 Axis of imperfect pile for N_{Ed}
- 4 [straight axis](#)
- 5 [Ground resistance p](#)

Figure C.10 — Transverse deflection of a pile caused by a compressive force.

C.13.5 Slenderness of piles

C.13.5.1 General

- (1) The slenderness ratio λ of a fully embedded pile should be calculated by Formula (C.25C.24):

$$\lambda = \frac{L_{bd}}{\sqrt{2} \cdot i} = \frac{L_{bd}}{\sqrt{2} \cdot I/A} \quad (C.25)$$

where

- i is the radius of gyration;
- L_{bd} is the buckling length calculated according to Formula (C.21C.20);
- A is the cross-sectional area of the pile;
- I [Is the moment of inertia of the cross section of the pile.](#)

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)**C.13.5.2 Concrete piles**

- (1) Second order effects ~~should be calculated~~ may be neglected for precast or cast insitu concrete piles if the slenderness ratio λ of the pile is ~~greater~~ smaller than the limiting value λ_{lim} given in prEN 1992-1-1:2021, ~~5.8.3.1~~ Annex 0.6.
- (2) At least half of the cross-sectional area of an unreinforced pile should be subjected to compression.

C.13.5.3 Steel piles

- (1) Second order effects ~~may be neglected~~ should be calculated for steel piles if $N_{\text{Ed}}/N_{\text{cr}} \leq 0.1$ according to EN 1993-5, the slenderness ratio λ is large, or the axial force N_{Ed} is large compared to the ideal critical elastic force N_{cr} .

~~NOTE 1 — A large slenderness ratio is $\lambda \geq 0.2$ and a large axial force is $N_{\text{Ed}}/N_{\text{cr}} \geq 0.04$ according to prEN 1993-1-1:2022, 6.3.1.2(4). For piles fully embedded in the ground a large axial force is $N_{\text{Ed}}/N_{\text{cr}} \geq 0.10$ according to EN 1993-5:2007, 5.3.3(3).~~

~~NOTE 2 — For a fully embedded straight pile the critical buckling load is determined according to Formula (C.25)~~

$$N_{\text{cr}} = 2 \cdot \sqrt{EI \cdot \frac{p_f \cdot B}{y_f}} \quad (\text{C.25})$$

~~where~~

~~EI is the flexural stiffness of the pile, design value according to the structural Eurocodes;~~

~~N_{cr} is the critical elastic force;~~

~~y_f is the relative deformation between the pile and the supporting soil where p_f is obtained;~~

~~B is the cross-sectional area of the pile;~~

~~p_f is the value of the ultimate transversal ground resistance.~~

C.13.5.4 Composite steel-concrete piles

- (1) Second order effects ~~should be calculated~~ may be neglected for composite steel-concrete piles if $N_{\text{Ed}}/N_{\text{cr}} \leq 0.10$.

NOTE N_{cr} is calculated using Formula (C.19C.25) with the effective flexural stiffness (EI)_{eff} according to EN 1994-1-1:2004, 6.7.3.3.

C.13.5.5 Timber piles

- (1) Second order effects for timber piles should be calculated if the relative slenderness ratio λ_{rel} of the pile is greater than 0.3 as specified in prEN 1995-1-1:2004, 6.3.2.
- (2) The relative slenderness may be determined by Formula (C.26C.26)

$$\lambda_{\text{rel}} = \frac{\lambda}{\pi} \cdot \sqrt{\frac{f_{\text{c},0,k}}{E_{0,05}}} \quad (\text{C.26})$$

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

where

λ_{rel}	is the relative slenderness ratio;
λ	is slenderness ratio;
$f_{c,0,k}$	is the characteristic compressive strength along the grain;
$E_{0,05}$	is the fifth percentile value of the modulus of elasticity parallel to the grain.

C.13.6 Partial factors

- (1) Superior or inferior representative values should be adopted for the ground stiffness and ground strength depending on which is critical.

NOTE High values are sometimes critical when transversal loads, e.g. from settling soil, are present.

- (2) Partial factors on the ultimate transversal ground resistance p_f derived from ground strength parameters shall be in accordance to set M2 in prEN 1997-1:2022, [Annex A Table 4.8](#).
- (3) A partial factor of $\gamma_{pf} = 1,4 \cdot K_M$ should be applied to a measured value of ultimate transversal ground resistance, p_f if not already included when p_f is expressed in terms of c_{ud} . See C.12(1) and (2).

C.14 Determination of axial pile resistance under cyclic effects loading

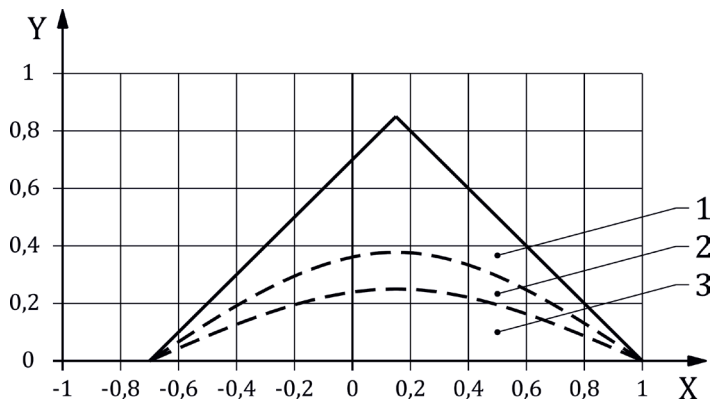
~~C.14.1~~ Pile stability diagrams

- (1) The concept of stability diagram may be used to determine whether the axial cyclic loads applied at the pile head can induce any degradation effects to reduce the axial pile resistance. some cyclic effects.

NOTE Figure C.11 gives an example of a stability diagram.

SC7 NOTE [#211]:
CR0047 Pile resistance
under cyclic loading
Revised annex

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)



Key

X	$G_{ave,rep}/R_c$
Y	$\Delta Q_{rep}/R_c$
R_c	Axial compressive resistance;
$G_{ave,rep}$	Representative value of the average load applied on the pile;
ΔQ_{rep}	Representative value of the half amplitude variable load;
<u>A1</u>	Stable domain: no cyclic effects. <u>No reduction of pile resistance.</u>
<u>B2</u>	Metastable domain: Limited cyclic effects inducing low reduction of the pile capacity <u>bearing capacity</u> with limited displacements
<u>C3</u>	Unstable domain: significant cyclic effects inducing strong reduction of the pile capacity until failure <u>bearing capacity</u>

Figure C.11 — Principle of cyclic stability diagram for axially loaded piles.

- (2) Stability diagram should be developed considering specific ground conditions, nature of loading (frequency, duration, number of cycles) and pile types.

NOTE Examples of stability diagrams can be found in the literature.

- (3) When a representative cyclic stability diagram leads to identify a metastable domain or an unstable domain for specific ground conditions and pile types, more detailed verifications should be conducted to assess the impact of the cyclic loads for both the SLS (cumulative pile head displacements) and ULS (degradation of ultimate resistance).

NOTE Detailed cyclic pile design procedures have been developed by the offshore industry (EN ISO 19901-4).

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

Annex D (informative)

Retaining structures

D.1 Use of this Informative Annex

- (1) This Informative Annex provides complementary guidance to that given in Clause 7, retaining structures.

NOTE National choice on the application of this Informative Annex is given in the National Annex. If the National Annex contains no information on the application of this informative annex, it can be used.

D.2 Scope and field of application

- (1) This Informative Annex covers:
- limit values of earth pressures;
 - at rest values of earth pressures;
 - compaction effects;
 - additional earth pressures induced by thermal effects for integral bridges;
 - general principles and application of calculation models: limit equilibrium, beam on springs, numerical models;
 - vertical equilibrium of embedded walls;
 - basal heave; and
 - interaction between anchors and retaining structures.

D.3 Calculation model to determine limit values of earth pressures on vertical walls

- (1) In addition to 7.5.4, the values of the active earth pressure coefficients K_{ay} , K_{aq} , and K_{ac} may be determined according to (3), (5), (8), and (9) of this sub-clause.
- (2) In addition to 7.5.5, the values of the passive earth pressure coefficients K_{py} , K_{pq} , and K_{pc} may be determined according to (4), (6), (8), and (9) of this sub-clause.
- (3) Selected values of K_{ay} and K_{py} may be determined from [Figure D.2](#) and [Figure D.3](#).

NOTE Values are also given in tabular form by Kérisel and Absi (1990).

- (4) The value of K_{aqn} may be determined from Formula ([D.1D.1](#)):

$$K_{aqn} = K_{aq} \cos \delta \quad (D.1)$$

where:

- K_{aq} is the inclined active earth pressure coefficient;
- K_{aqn} is the component of K_{aq} normal to the wall face.

- (5) The value of K_{pqn} may be determined from Formula ([D.2D.2](#)):

SC7 NOTE [#212]
CR019595
use of k to in the
Annex

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

$$K_{pqn} = K_{kpq} \cos \delta \quad (D.2)$$

where:

K_{kpq} is the inclined passive earth pressure coefficient; and

K_{pqn} is the component of K_{kpq} normal to the wall face

(6) The values of K_{kaq} and K_{kpq} may be determined from Formulae (D.3D.3)-(D.8D.8):

$$K_{kaq} = \left(\frac{\cos \delta - \sin \varphi \cos \omega_\delta}{\cos \alpha + \sin \varphi \cos \omega_\alpha} \right) e^{-2\varepsilon_a \tan \phi} \quad (D.3)$$

$$K_{kpq} = \left(\frac{\cos \delta + \sin \varphi \cos \omega_\delta}{\cos \alpha - \sin \varphi \cos \omega_\alpha} \right) e^{2\varepsilon_p \tan \phi} \quad (D.4)$$

$$\sin \omega_\delta = \frac{\sin \delta}{\sin \varphi} \quad (D.5)$$

$$\sin \omega_\alpha = \frac{\sin \alpha}{\sin \varphi} \quad (D.6)$$

$$\varepsilon_a = \frac{(\omega_{\alpha a} + \alpha a)}{2} + \frac{(\omega_\delta - \delta)}{2} + \beta - \lambda \quad (D.7)$$

$$\varepsilon_p = \frac{(-\omega_{\alpha a} + \alpha a)}{2} - \frac{(\omega_\delta + \delta)}{2} + \beta - \lambda \quad (D.8)$$

where:

φ is the angle of internal friction of the soil;

δ is the angle of inclination of the earth pressure;

α is the angle of inclination of the surcharge;

β is the inclination of the ground surface;

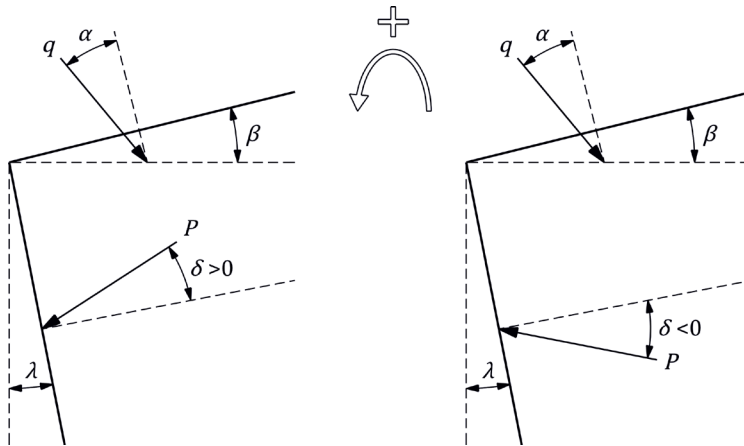
λ is the inclination of the wall.

NOTE 1 Positive orientations of these angles are indicated in [Figure D.1](#) ~~Figure D-1~~.

NOTE 2 When $\delta = \alpha = \beta = \lambda = 0$, $K_{aq} = K_{ay} = \tan^2(\pi/4 - \varphi/2)$ and $K_{pq} = K_{py} = \tan^2(\pi/4 + \varphi/2)$.

NOTE 3 When $\alpha = \beta = \lambda = 0$, K_{aq} is approximately equal to K_{ay} and K_{pq} to K_{py} .

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)



Key

X definition for X

Y definition for Y

α is the angle of inclination of the surcharge;

β is the inclination of the ground surface;

δ is the angle of inclination of the earth pressure;

λ is the inclination of the wall.

Figure D.1 — Orientation for angles α , β , δ , and λ (left: active earth pressure; right: passive)

(7) When $\varphi > 0$, the values of K_{ac} and K_{pc} may be determined from Formulae (D.9D.9)-(D.12D.12):

$$K_{ac} = \frac{1 - \left(\frac{\cos \delta - \sin \varphi \cos \omega_\delta}{1 + \sin \varphi} \right) e^{-2\varepsilon_a \tan \varphi} \cos \delta}{\tan \varphi} \quad (D.9)$$

$$K_{pc} = \frac{\left(\frac{\cos \delta + \sin \varphi \cos \omega_\delta}{1 - \sin \varphi} \right) e^{-2\varepsilon_p \tan \varphi} \cos \delta - 1}{\tan \varphi} \quad (D.10)$$

$$\varepsilon_a = \frac{(\omega_\delta - \delta)}{2} + \beta - \lambda \quad (D.11)$$

$$\varepsilon_p = \frac{(\omega_\delta + \delta)}{2} - \beta + \lambda \quad (D.12)$$

where ω_δ and ω_α are given in Formula (D.3D.3)-(D.8D.8) and the other symbols are as defined in (6).

NOTE These expressions are based on the assumption that $a/c = (\tan \delta)/(\tan \varphi)$, where a is the adhesion between the ground and wall.

(8) When $\varphi = 0$ and $\lambda = \beta = 0$, the values of K_{ac} ($= k_{ac,u}$) and K_{pc} ($= k_{pc,u}$) may be determined from Formula (D.13D.13):

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

$$K_{ac,u} = K_{pc,u} = 1 + \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{a}{c}\right) + \cos\left(\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{a}{c}\right)\right) \quad (D.13)$$

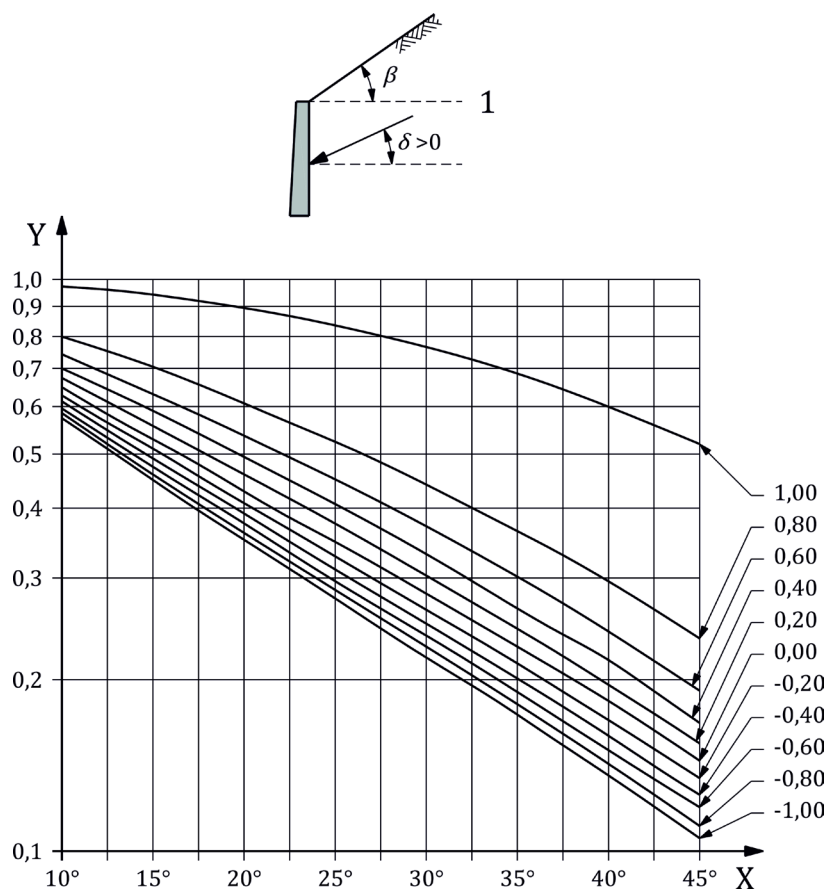
where

a is the adhesion between the ground and wall

c is the cohesion

NOTE 1 Figure D.2 give the coefficients of effective active earth pressure coefficients with for inclined retained surfaces.

NOTE 2 Figure D.3 give the coefficients of effective passive earth pressure coefficients with for inclined retained surfaces.



Key

X angle of friction

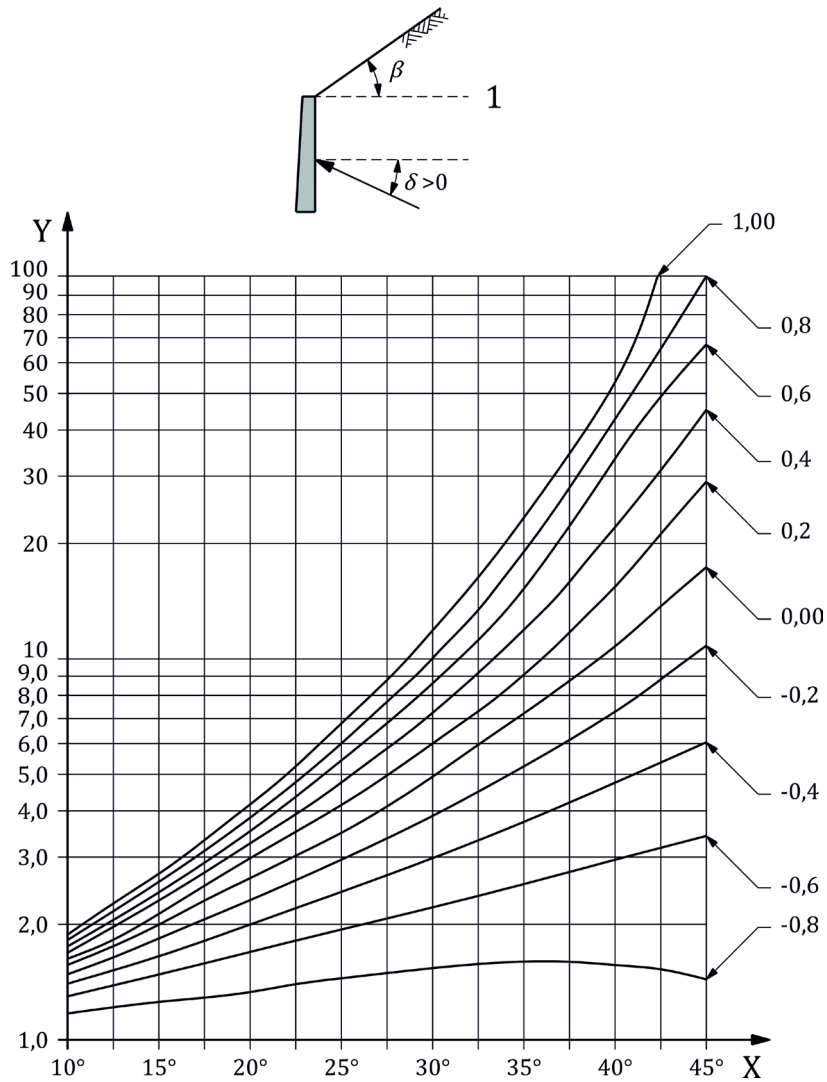
Contours give values of β/ϕ

X ϕ , angle of friction

Y K_{ah} effective active earth pressure (horizontal component)

Figure D.2 — Coefficients of effective active earth pressure K_{ah} (horizontal component) with inclined retained surface ($\delta/\phi = 0,66$)

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)



Key

Contours give values of β/φ

X φ , angle of friction

Y K_p effective passive earth pressure (horizontal component)

Figure D.3 — Coefficients of ~~effective~~ passive earth pressure K_{pzh} (horizontal component) with inclined retained surface ($\delta/\varphi = 0,66$)

D.4 Calculation model to determine at-rest values of earth pressure

- (1) In addition to 7.5.6, the at-rest earth pressure coefficient K_0 in soils may be determined only for unloading stress paths from Formula (D.14D.14):

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

$$K_0 = (1 - \sin\varphi)\sqrt{R_0} \times (1 + \sin\beta) \leq K_{py} \quad (\text{D.14})$$

where:

- φ is the soil's internal angle of shearing resistance;
- R_0 is the over-consolidation ratio at depth z_0 (equal to $\sigma'_{v,\max} / \sigma'_v$);
- $\sigma'_{v,\max}$ is the maximum effective overburden pressure at depth z_0 ;
- σ'_v is the current effective overburden pressure at depth z_0 ; and
- β is the inclination of the ground surface above the horizontal;
- K_{py} is the passive earth pressure coefficient.

(2) Formula (~~D.14D.14~~) should not be used for very high values of R_0 or in circumstances involving geological reloading.

NOTE Formula (~~D.14D.14~~) can lead to unrealistic values of K_0 close to the ground surface, where the vertical stress is low.

(3) The direction of the resulting force should be assumed to be parallel to the ground surface.

(4) A distinction may be made between:

- K_0 , the earth pressure coefficient in the initial stage before the works begin;
- K_i , the earth pressure coefficient in the initial stage after completion of the retaining wall but before the start of excavation; and
- K_d , the ratio between variations in horizontal and vertical stresses during excavation assuming at-rest conditions, that is without horizontal displacement of the retaining wall

NOTE 1 Assuming linear elastic behaviour and considering reloading stress paths, where ν is Poisson's ratio of the soil, K_d can be determined from Formula (~~D.15D.15~~)

$$K_d = \nu / (1 - \nu) \quad (\text{D.15})$$

NOTE 2 In practice, due to the poor knowledge about reliable values for K_i and K_d , it is typically assumed that $K_0 = K_i = K_d$.

NOTE 3 For overconsolidated cohesive soils, in which excavation may lead to a significant stress relief, $K_i < K_0$.

D.5 Earth pressures due to compaction

(1) The effective compaction earth pressure normal to the wall face (p'_c) at a depth (z) below ground surface may be determined from Formulae (~~D.16D.16~~)-(~~D.18D.18~~):

NOTE Measurements indicate that additional pressures depend on the applied compaction energy, the soil moisture content, the thickness of the compacted layers and the travel pattern of the compaction machinery. Horizontal pressure normal to the wall in a layer can be reduced when the next layer is placed and compacted. When backfilling is complete, the additional pressure normally acts only on the upper part of the wall.

(1)

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

$$p'_c = \begin{cases} K_{py}\bar{\gamma}_c z & \text{for } z \leq z_{c,\min} \\ p'_{c,\max} & \text{for } z_{c,\min} \leq z \leq z_{c,\max} \\ K_0\bar{\gamma}_c z & \text{for } z \geq z_{c,\max} \end{cases} \quad (\text{D.16})$$

$$z_{c,\min} = \frac{p'_{c,\max}}{\bar{\gamma}_c K_{py}} \quad (\text{D.17})$$

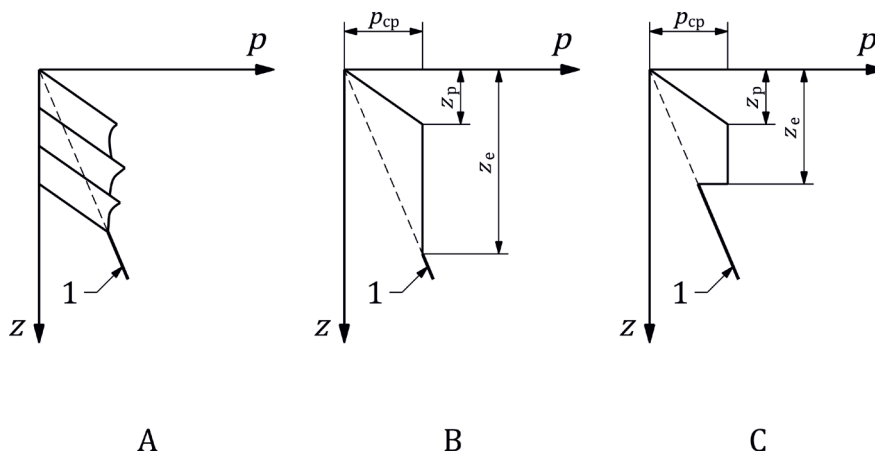
$$z_{c,\max} = \frac{p'_{c,\max}}{\bar{\gamma}_c K_0} \quad (\text{D.18})$$

where:

- $p'_{c,\max}$ is the maximum horizontal earth pressure due to compaction;
- $\bar{\gamma}_c$ is the average weight density of the ground over depth $z_{c,\max}$;
- $K_{py,0}$ is the passive earth pressure coefficient (with wall friction equal to zero);
- K_0 is the at-rest earth pressure coefficient;
- $z_{c,\min}$ is the minimum depth at which p'_c applies;
- $z_{c,\max}$ is the maximum depth at which p'_c applies.

(2) For non-yielding walls, compaction pressure may be represented by the bi-linear profile shown in [Figure D.4](#) [Figure D.4](#) (b).

NOTE Compaction pressures from soil placement in layers, more realistically produces a distribution similar to that shown in [Figure D.4](#) [Figure D.4](#) (a).



Key

- A compaction earth pressure
- B simplified profile for non-yielding
- C yielding wall
- 1 K_0 line

Figure D.4 — Distribution of compaction earth pressure (a); simplified profile for non-yielding wall (b) and yielding wall (c)

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (3) The value of the maximum compaction earth pressure $p'_{c,max}$ may be taken from [Table D.1](#) ~~Table D.1~~.
- (4) For yielding walls, the simplified depth profile shown in [Figure D.4](#) ~~Figure D.4~~ c may be adopted.
- (5) In case the wall displacement is associated with earth pressures between active and at-rest conditions, interpolated values may be used.

Table D.1 — Values of the maximum compaction earth pressure $p'_{c,max}$ (kPa)

Wall	Intensive compaction Width b of backfilled space		Light compaction (vibratory compactor mass 20 g)
	b 1.0 m	b 2. m	
Non-yielding	40	25	15
Yielding	25 ($z = 2.0$ m)		15 ($z = 2.0$ m)
NOTE	Use interpolation for intermediate values of b		

D.6 Earth pressures caused by cyclic thermal movement for integral bridges

- (1) The earth pressure on a structural element subjected to cyclic thermal movements should be calculated based on the thermal movement range as well as the direction (expansion or contraction) and actual amount of the relative movements.
- (2) Earth pressures caused by cyclic thermal movements may be assessed by soil-structure interaction methods calibrated against comparable experience, laboratory modelling and/or case history data experience.
- (3) Maximum and minimum values of the earth pressure applicable to structural design should be considered coincident with the values of the effects (temperature, creep, shrinkage) causing the expansion or contraction, respectively.
- (4) The value of the enhanced pressure coefficient K^* for a given value of the maximum expansion should be determined based on a recognized method.

NOTE The enhanced pressure is bounded by the earth pressure mobilised by the maximum thermal expansion (lower limit) and the full passive earth pressure (upper limit).

D.7 Basal heave

- (1) Mechanical heave due to excavation is generally associated with settlements outside and should be considered as part of overall stability mechanisms.
- (5) Specific models may be used to deal with the following situations:

- conventional models for overall stability calculation;

NOTE 1 These models do not take account of specific geometry (narrow and deep excavation for instance).

- concentration of vertical hydraulic gradients along the embedded part of the retaining wall;

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

NOTE 2 These models can locally initiate an instability process for which rigid block mechanisms cannot be considered as realistic enough.

- mechanical extrusion of soft clay that occurs simultaneously with excavation at depth.

NOTE 3 These models cannot be realistically compensated by external shear resistance, as conventional rigid block mechanisms would assume.

(6) Shear resistance may be considered.

NOTE [Figure D.5](#) illustrates verification against basal heave.

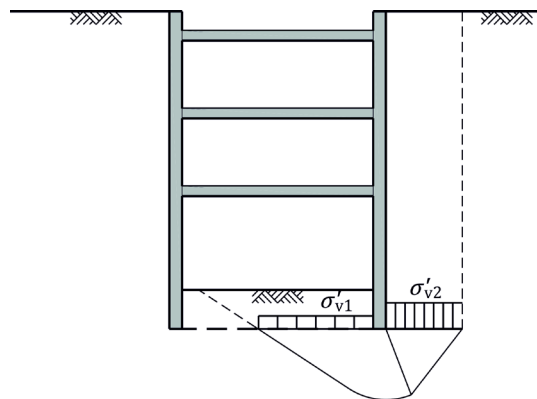


Figure D.5 — Verification against basal heave

(7) Simplified models may be used for fine or coarse soils in which the external and internal shear resistance above the toe level of the retaining wall is neglected and the same mechanisms as for bearing capacity of shallow foundations are considered.

[\(5\)\(3\)](#) In such conditions, the limit value of the effective vertical stress that can be applied at toe level outside the excavation σ'_{v1} may be determined from Formula [\(D.19\)](#)

$$\sigma'_{v1} = \frac{\gamma B}{2} N_{\gamma} + \sigma'_{v2} N_q + c N_c \quad (D.19)$$

where:

- N_{γ} , N_q , and N_c are bearing capacity factors (see Clause 5);
- γ is the unit weight of soil under the wall;
- B is the width to consider outside the excavation;
- c is the cohesion;
- σ'_{v2} is the effective vertical stress at toe level inside the excavation.

(6) Mechanical heave during excavation in fine soils may be analysed assuming undrained conditions and total stress analysis, using $N_{\gamma} = 0$.

(7) Mechanical heave in coarse soils may be analysed assuming hydraulic gradients are concentrated within a narrow area very close to the wall, allowing the width B to be neglected.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- (8) Verification of resistance to mechanical heave caused by hydraulic gradients in coarse soils should be based on an effective stress analysis, considering effective cohesion c' , as well as effective stresses σ'_{v1} and σ'_{v2} .
- (9) The values of σ'_{v1} and σ'_{v2} in Formula (D.19) should consider weight densities $(\gamma' + i_1\gamma_w)$ and $(\gamma' - i_2\gamma_w)$, where i_1 is the average gradient along the retained side of the wall and i_2 the average gradient along the wall on the excavated side.
- (10) In addition to (9), hydraulic gradients and unit weights also shall be evaluated and considered for the calculation of the retaining wall itself.
- (11) Verification of resistance to mechanical heave during excavation in fine soils should be based on a total stress analysis based on Bjerrum and Eide approach in Formula (D.20)

$$\gamma H_e + q_s \leq N_c c_u =$$

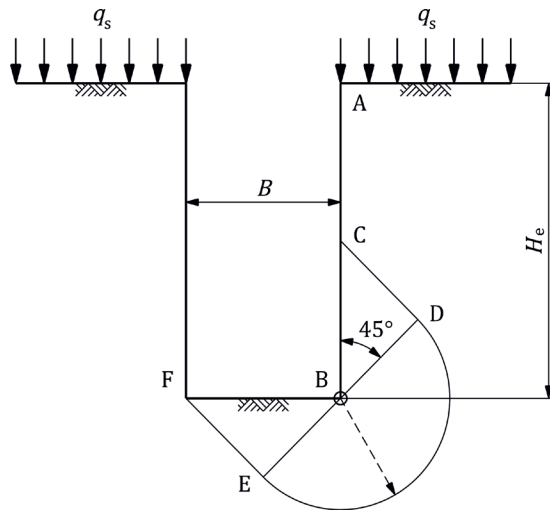
$$\text{with } N_c = 5 * \left(1 + 0.2 \frac{H_e}{B}\right) * \left(1 + 0.2 \frac{B}{L}\right) \text{ if } \frac{H_e}{B} \leq 2.5, \quad N_c = 7.5 \left(1 + 0.2 * \frac{B}{L}\right) \quad (\text{D.20})$$

where:

- H_e is the depth of the excavation;
- q_s Is the surface load;
- c_u is the undrained shear strength;
- N_c is a shape factor depending on the length and the width of the excavation.

NOTE 1 For more details, see, Bjerrum and Eide, (1956).

NOTE 2 [Figure D.6](#) illustrate basal heave in fine soils.



Key

- H_e Depth of excavation
- B Width of excavation
- q_s Surface load

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

A, B, C, D, E, F, Volume of the ground subjected to the basal heave mechanism

Figure D.6 — Basal heave in fine soils (Bjerrum and Eide, 1956)

D.8 Limit equilibrium models

(1) Limit equilibrium models may be used both for:

- for gravity walls;
- for retaining walls to estimate the minimum embedded length and support reactions that are necessary to prevent rotational resistance (see 7.6.4.1).

NOTE 1 Limit equilibrium models consist of analysing horizontal stability of embedded retaining walls by assuming that limiting values of earth pressures are reached on both sides of the wall.

NOTE 2 Earth pressure envelopes, which can be used for walls with multiple supports, can be found in the literature. For only partially compliant walls a weighted average of active pressure and earth pressure at rest is commonly assumed.

NOTE 3 Limit equilibrium models are simplified models that do not provide information relative to displacements; they are generally used for the design of flexible embedded walls and stiff single propped walls. These models ignore construction sequences, and structural stiffness or prestressing effects.

(2) When limit equilibrium models are used to justify plastic hinges in metallic structures accordingly with EN 1993-5, limit displacements associated with limit earth pressures may be estimated based on conventional order of magnitude, traditionally expressed as a proportion λ_a of the wall height on the retained side, and λ_p of the embedded depth on the excavated side.

NOTE The values of λ_a and λ_p are 0.1-0.3 % and 1-5 %, respectively, unless different values are given in the National Annex.

D.9 Beam-on-spring models

(1) Beam-on-springs models may be used to check the following limit states, in accordance with 7.6 and 7.7:

- serviceability limit states involving horizontal displacements, within the limits given in D.7;
- structural limit states;
- rotational resistance (see 7.6.4.1).

(2) Unless additional effects are introduced into the calculation, limit equilibrium and beam-on-springs models should not be used to determine: slope instability, interaction between the retaining structure and rear anchors, or interaction between front and rear quay walls.

NOTE Wall displacements are usually calculated relative to the ground surface, ignoring any displacement of the ground surface.

(3) Intermediate values of earth horizontal pressures may be determined by use of the subgrade reaction coefficient, $k = \Delta\sigma / \Delta y$, where $\Delta\sigma$ is the variation of earth pressure associated with a variation of horizontal wall displacement Δy .

NOTE 1 This is a simplification that assimilates the ground to independent springs.

NOTE 2 Due to its empirical nature, values of the coefficient of subgrade reaction should always be determined from comparable experience in similar conditions. Guidance is provided in D.8.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

NOTE 3 Spring stiffness values are very software specific.

- (4) When redistribution of earth pressure due to arching effects caused by the compliance of the earth retaining structure is likely to occur, limit and intermediate values of earth pressure on the retained side should be determined from methods that take account of such redistribution.

NOTE 1 Such methods include empirical (see D.6) and continuum numerical models.

NOTE 2 Relative movements within the retained ground can cause redistribution, for example when rigidities of different support layers significantly differ from each other or when high spans exist between adjacent rigid supports.

NOTE 3 Beam-on-springs models are able to consider increased earth pressures behind rigid supports when they are prestressed.

- (5) Empirical relationships based on past experience may be used to derive soil settlements behind the wall from its horizontal displacement.

NOTE Ratios between maximum vertical and maximum horizontal displacements usually lie between 0.5 and 1.

D.10 Calculation model to determine intermediate values of earth pressure

- (1) The value of the subgrade reaction coefficient k may be estimated from the approximate Formula (D.21):

$$k = \frac{E_s}{d} \quad (\text{D.21})$$

where:

E_s is the secant soil's modulus of elasticity; and

d is the interaction length.

- (2) When determining the interaction length d , the following should be considered:

- the interaction length cannot be larger than the total embedment length D of the wall;
- in practice, it generally is considered that $d < 2/3 D$;
- during intermediate excavation stages, for which passive earth pressure is only mobilized along a limited part of the embedded height, an order of magnitude, consistent with the theory of beams resting on elastic supports and confirmed by a large series of monitoring results, is $d = 1.5 l_0$, where $l_0 = (4EI / k)^{1/4}$, and EI is the bending stiffness of the wall per linear metre;
- in specific circumstances where the embedded length is determined by hydraulic considerations rather than by the mechanical mobilization of passive earth pressure due to excavation, the interaction length is no longer depending on the bending stiffness, as high differential water pressures affect the total height.

NOTE 1 Example of hydraulic considerations are pumping phases without excavation, tidal effects on quay walls, high water head and increased embedded length in order to reach an impervious layer.

NOTE 2 In current situations for which the interaction height is dependent on the bending stiffness, an estimate determined from the relationships above is $k = 0.4 E_s^{4/3} / (EI)^{1/3}$.

NOTE 3 The soil modulus E_s to consider is intermediate between the initial loading modulus and the unload-reload modulus.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (3) As an alternative to (1) and (2), other methods may be used for structures that mobilize passive pressure in backfill.

NOTE For example, bridge abutments.

- (4) Backfill soil reaction forces on bridge abutments should consider the increase in passive earth pressure with wall movement.

NOTE For temperature induced seasonal wall movements, the predominant pattern is a combination of horizontal translation and rotation about the wall base.

- (5) The horizontal component of the mobilised passive earth pressure coefficient $K_{ph,mob}$ along the wall height may be determined from Formula (D.22):

$$K_{ph,mob}(z) = K_0 + (K_{ph} - K_0) \frac{v(z)/z}{a + v(z)/z} \quad (D.22)$$

where:

K_0 is the coefficient of earth pressure at rest;

K_{ph} is the horizontal component of the coefficient of passive earth pressure;

z is the depth;

$v(z)$ horizontal displacement at depth z (positive towards the backfill); for a rigid wall rotating about its base, $v(z) = s_h(1 - z/h)$;

s_h horizontal displacement at the wall top;

h is the height of the retaining wall;

a is a backfill-dependent coefficient.

~~(6)~~(4) In the absence of detailed specifications, the value $a = 0.02$ may be used.

D.11 Numerical continuum models

- (1) The most critical geotechnical failure mechanism or combination of failure mechanisms may be determined by numerical continuum models using shear strength reduction approach.

NOTE Examples of combination of failure mechanisms are overall or bottom instability, rotational failure, foundation failure.

- (2) Information relative to settlements should be considered carefully when simplified linear elastic models are used, since such models cannot take account of different soil behaviours during a primary loading and an excavation.

NOTE 1 In the case of retaining structures, only non-linear models provide relevant information with respect to both horizontal and vertical displacements within the ground mass.

NOTE 2 Current soil models rarely take account of the anisotropic behaviour of alluvial soils, which is likely to influence the relationship between horizontal and vertical displacements around a retaining structure.

- (3) In undrained conditions, when calculation is performed in terms of effective stresses, attention should be paid to the decrease of groundwater pressures induced by the dilatancy generated with an inappropriate constitutive law.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

D.12 Vertical wall stability

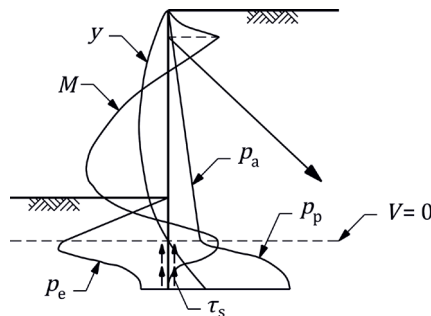
- (1) According to 7.6.4.2, the skin friction needed to ensure vertical equilibrium of an embedded wall, and the vertical components of active and passive earth pressures needed to ensure its horizontal equilibrium should be consistent with each other.
- (2) Consistency between skin friction (in bearing capacity calculations) and vertical components of earth pressure (used to justify horizontal equilibrium) should be checked above the depth at which the shear force applied to the embedded part of the wall is equal to 0 (see [Figure D.7](#)).

NOTE 1 This level can be considered as a rotation axis above which it is essential that earth pressures are not underestimated on the retained side and are overestimated on the excavated side; beneath this level, such eventualities become on the safe side.

NOTE 2 Mobilising skin friction to equilibrate vertical forces changes the inclination of earth pressures δ , that tends to increase the active earth pressure earth side if structural forces are exerted downwards, or decrease the passive earth pressure on the excavated side if structural forces are exerted upwards (e.g. inclined struts resting on the excavated surface).

NOTE 3 Despite using a negative value of the inclination δ to derive earth pressure on the retained side, the vertical component can be significantly lower than the friction that could be mobilised without stress relief and, for this reason, it is often neglected in bearing capacity calculations.

NOTE 4 [Figure D.7](#) illustrates the depth at which shear force applied to embedded wall is zero.



Key

- X definition for X
- Y is the horizontal displacement of the retaining structure;
- M is the bending moment;
- V is the shear force;
- p_a is the active earth pressure applied to the wall;
- p_p is the passive earth pressure applied to the wall
- τ_s is the shaft friction mobilized to equilibrate the vertical anchor force

Figure D.7 — Depth at which shear force applied to embedded wall is zero

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)**D.13 Determination of the anchor length to prevent interaction between anchors and retaining structures**

- (1) Potential interaction between a retaining structure and any deadman anchors used to stabilize it may be ignored when the passive wedge mobilized by the anchor does not intersect with the active wedge acting on the structure.
- (2) The model illustrated in [Figure D.8](#) may be used to ensure that grouted anchors do not interfere with a retaining structure:
- the anchor's reaction is assumed to be balanced by the shear resistance that is mobilised along the conventional failure surface shown in [Figure D.8](#), so not to increase earth pressures directly acting on the wall;
 - equilibrium of forces acting on the ground between the retaining wall and the anchors provide the maximum anchor force that can be equilibrated without increasing earth pressures on the wall;
 - interaction is neglected when the ratio between this maximum anchor force, and the applied anchor force based on previous calculations of the retaining wall, is higher than 1.5.

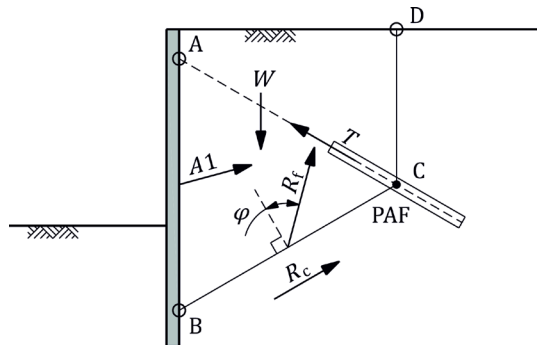
NOTE 1 If this condition in [Figure D.8](#) is not met, the shear resistance that the soil mobilizes along the conventional failure surface is insufficient to dissipate the force applied by the anchor. Consequently, the retaining structure has to provide more reaction to ensure overall equilibrium of the soil mass that needs to be considered in the calculation model, or the free length of the anchor has to be increased until it is justified that interaction can be neglected.

NOTE 2 The stabilizing reaction A1 to introduce in the calculation is equal and opposite to the resulting effective earth pressure considered for the design of the retaining structure itself.

NOTE 3 The consequence is that the equilibrium of forces applied to the volume ABCD provides a value of the anchor force, F, that is the maximum one that the anchor can apply within the soil mass without increasing the resulting earth pressure, A1, that has been considered in the design of the retaining structure.

NOTE 4 [Figure D.8](#) illustrates a model used to determine anchor length to prevent interaction with retaining structure.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)



Key

- ABCD is the volume of soil comprised between the rear face of the retaining wall, AB, the conventional failure surface, BC, and the vertical surface intercepting the point C where the resulting anchor force is applied, CD;
- W is the effective weight of the volume ABCD;
- F is the destabilising force applied by the anchor on the volume ABCD;
- A2 is the destabilising earth pressure applied on CD;
- A1 is the stabilizing reaction applied by the retaining structure;
- R is the frictional component of the shear resistance of the soil on the failure surface BC;
- C is the additional shear resistance due to the cohesion.

Figure D.8 — Determination of anchor length to prevent interaction with retaining structure

- (3) For grouted anchors, the resulting force exerted in the ground may be assumed to act in the middle of the fixed anchor length.

NOTE This assumption is relevant in standard ground conditions for which friction may be considered as uniformly distributed along the anchored length.

- (4) If micropiles or other anchoring elements without a free length are used, an equivalent free length shall be determined before applying (2) and (3).
- (5) The equivalent free length shall be consistent with the fixed anchor length along which friction is considered when verifying the bearing capacity of the micropiles according to 6.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

Annex E **(informative)**

Anchors

E.1 Use of this Informative Annex

- (1) This Informative Annex provides complementary guidance to that given in Clause 8 regarding anchors.

NOTE National choice on the application of this Informative Annex is given in the National Annex. If the National Annex contains no information on the application of this informative annex, it can be used.

E.2 Scope and field of application

- (1) This Informative Annex covers layout of anchors

E.3 Example for anchor design models

- (1) The free anchor length should be determined during the design of the anchored structure.

NOTE Examples of design models for anchored structures are given in Annexes A and D.

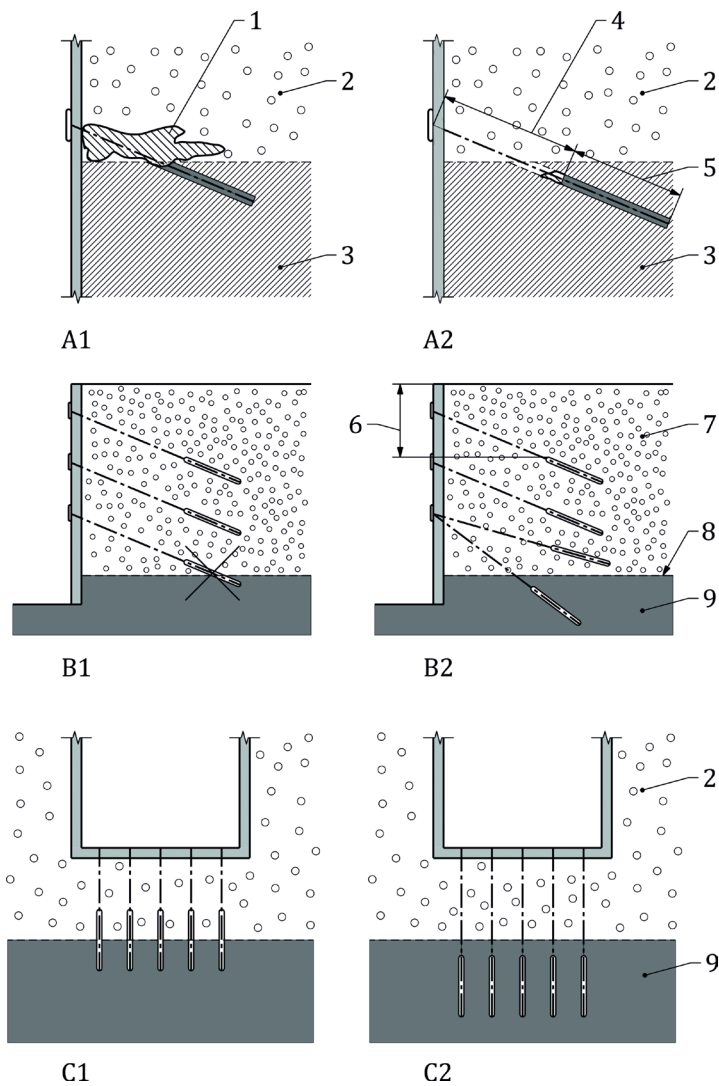
E.4 Layout of anchors

- (1) The layout of anchors should consider the proximity of the load-bearing stratum and the execution.

NOTE 1 Examples of the configuration of anchors are given in [Figure E.1](#), [Figure E.2](#), and [Figure E.3](#).

NOTE 2 In [Figure E.3\(a\)](#), all the grout bodies are outside the active earth pressure wedge. There is no additional earth pressure to the retaining wall. If the grout bodies are very close to the support (see [Figure E.3\(b\)](#)), additional earth pressure act.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

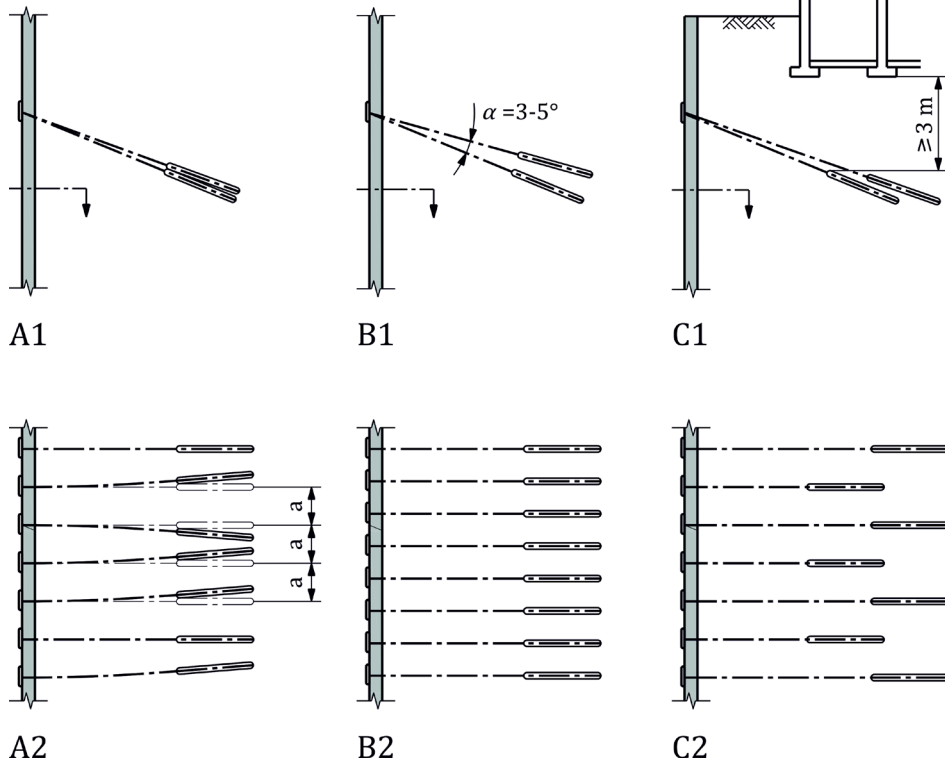


Key

- | | | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|---|-----------------|
| 1 | grout input into borehole and gravel | 6 | > 4 m |
| 2 | gravel | 7 | sand |
| 3 | silt | 8 | transition zone |
| 4 | $L_{free} > 5$ m | 9 | clay |
| 5 | L_{fixed} | | |

Figure E.1 — Examples of good (right side) and bad (left side) anchor configurations in stratified ground

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)



Key

A1	PLAN: wrong	B1	PLAN: right	C1	PLAN: right
A2	SECTION: wrong	B2	SECTION: right	C2	SECTION: right

Figure E.2 — Examples of good and bad spreading and staggering of anchors

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

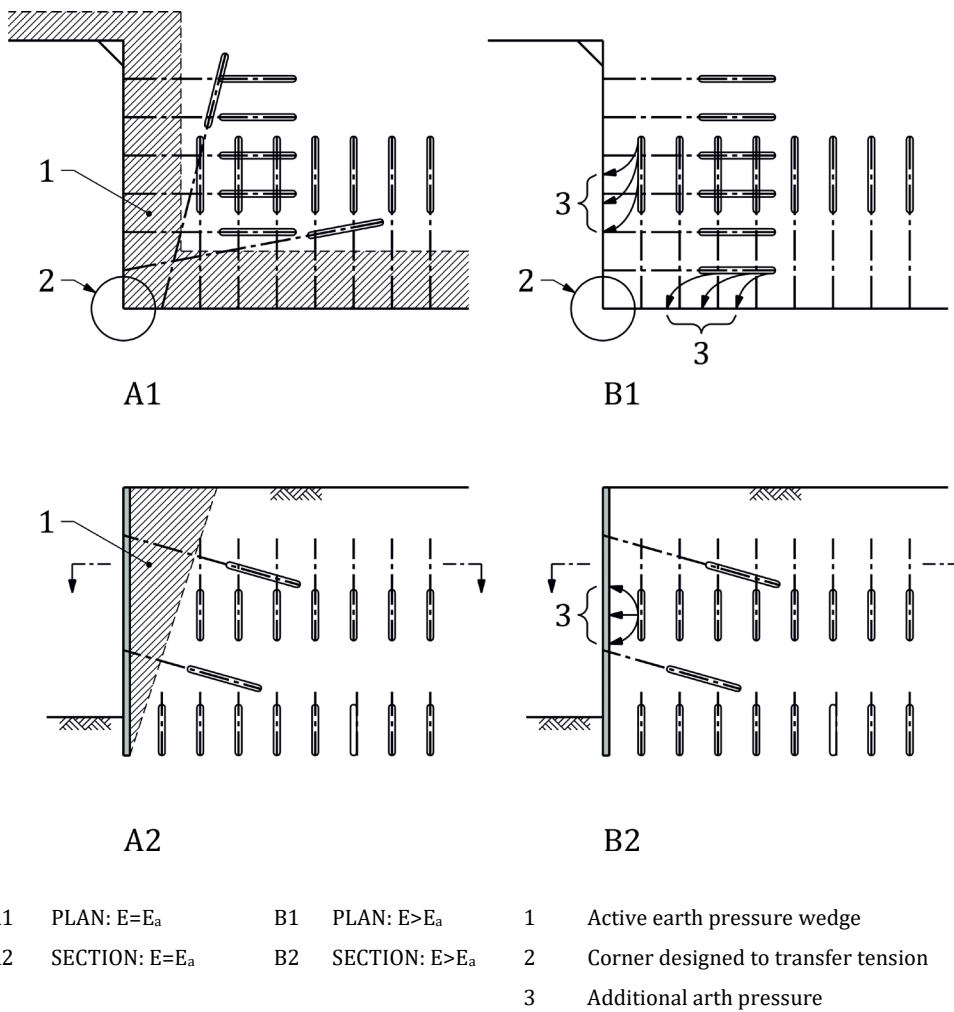


Figure E.3 — Examples of anchoring a protruding wall corner

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

Annex F (informative)

Reinforced fill structures

F.1 Use of this Informative Annex

- (1) This Informative Annex provides complementary guidance to that given in Clause 9 for reinforced fill structures.

NOTE National choice on the application of this Informative Annex is given in the National Annex. If the National Annex contains no information on the application of this informative annex, it can be used.

F.2 Scope and field of application

- (1) This Annex covers calculation models for reinforced fill structures.

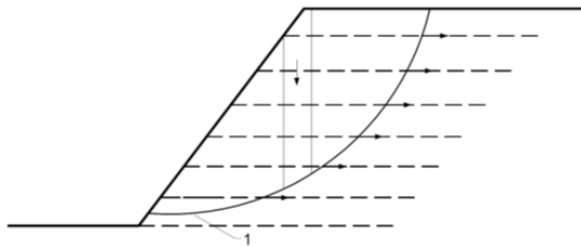
F.3 Calculation models for reinforced fill structures

F.3.1 Method of slices for slip surface analysis

- (1) Slip surface analysis using the method of slices may be used for verifying internal and compound stability.

NOTE 1 ~~Figure F.1~~ illustrates implementation of forces from reinforcing element into the method of slices.

NOTE 2 Detailed calculation procedures for this method are given in Clause 4 and Annex A.



Key

- 1 potential failure surface

Figure F.1 — Forces from reinforcing element – implementation into method of slices

SC7 NOTE [#213]
CR0146

This is a clean version of the Annex. See CR for details.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

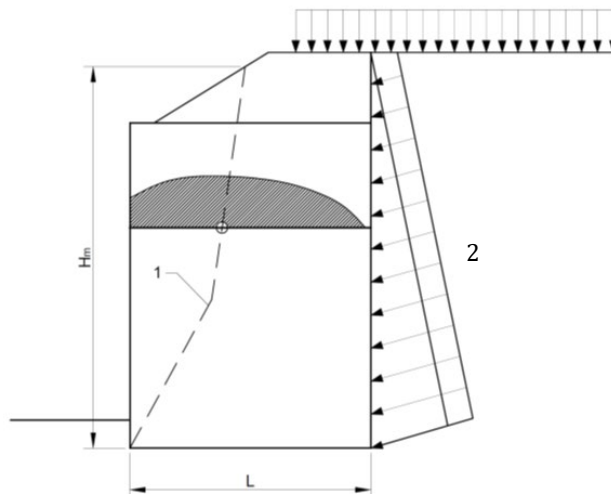
- (3) Then reinforcement elements intersect the assumed failure surface, the analyses should take account of horizontal interslice forces.
- (4) The force applied in slip surface analysis to account for reinforcement elements should not exceed the resistance of the reinforcement element
- (5) The analyses should take into account the distribution along the reinforcement element.

F.3.2 Coherent gravity method

- (1) The coherent gravity method may be used for direct calculation of the load in each layer of soil reinforcements for internal stability check.

NOTE 1 [Figure F.2](#) illustrates the coherent gravity method.

NOTE 2 Detailed calculation procedures for this method can be found in NF P 94 270 and BS 8006-1.



Key

- H_m mechanical height
- L width of the reinforced fill block
- 1 Theoretical location of maximum reinforcement tension load
- 2 Lateral earth pressure

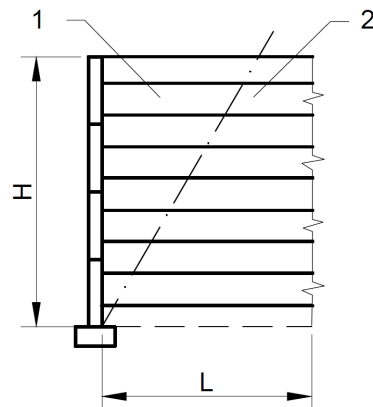
Figure F.2 — Coherent gravity method

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- (2) The coherent gravity method may be used for non-extensible reinforcement that develops its tensile design strength at a strain $< 1 \%$.
- The design resistance of each layer of reinforcement shall not be less than the design effects of actions caused by the sum of: the self-weight of reinforced fill volume and the earth pressure the retained ground;
 - any permanent or variable external actions and related earth pressures.

F.3.3 Tie-back wedge method

- (1) The tie-back wedge method may be used for direct calculation of the load in each layer of soil reinforcements in an internal stability check.



Key

- 1 Active zone
- 2 Resistant zone
- H Height of construction
- L Width of reinforced fill block

Figure F.3 — Tie-back wedge method

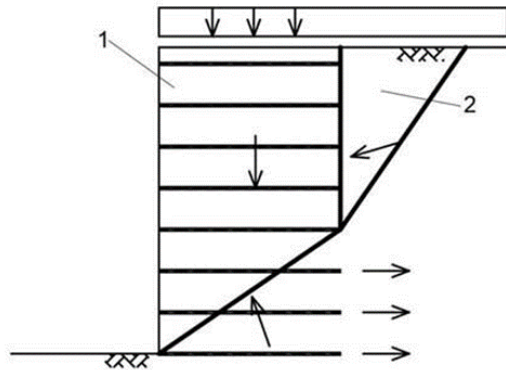
- (2) The tie-back wedge method may be used for extensible reinforcement that develops its tensile design strength at a strain $> 1 \%$

F.3.4 Multi-part wedge method

- (1) The multi-part wedge method may be used for internal and compound stability check.

NOTE [Figure F.4](#) illustrates the two-part wedge method.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)



Key

- 1 Wedge 1
- 2 Wedge 2

Figure F.4 — Two-part wedge method

- (3) If the potential failure mechanism is assumed to be a two-part wedge, the lower part Wedge should pass through the reinforced soil structure and the upper part Wedge through the retained (unreinforced material) behind it (see [Figure F.4](#)Figure F.4).
- (4) The stability of any combination of wedges should be checked accounting for beneficial effect from the reinforcing elements in each layer cut by the failure plane of any wedge

F.4 Calculation models for basal reinforcement of embankment on weak soil

F.4.1 Resistance to transverse sliding

- (1) The lateral sliding stability of the embankment should be determined by examining any preferential slip surfaces that pass above the basal reinforcement layers.
- (2) The lateral sliding stability of the embankment should be determined by examining the slip surfaces that pass below the basal reinforcement layer incorporating the effect of the reinforcement layer.

NOTE Detailed calculation procedures for this method can be found in BS 8006-1 and EBGE0.

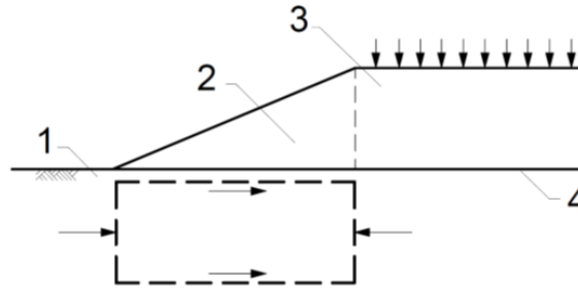
F.4.2 Resistance to foundation extrusion

- (1) Where the thickness of low strength fine soil beneath the foundation of the embankment is relatively small compared to the embankment width, the adverse effects of foundation extrusion should be determined.

NOTE 1 [Figure F.5](#)Figure F.5 illustrates a calculation model to determine resistance to extrusion.

NOTE 2 Detailed calculation procedures can be found in BS 8006-1 and EBGE0.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)



Key

- 1 Soil foundation
- 2 Embankment
- 3 Fill
- 4 Reinforcement

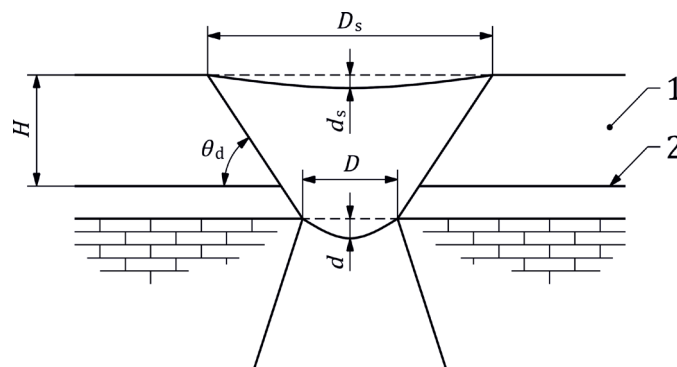
Figure F.5 — Calculation model to determine resistance to extrusion

F.5 Calculation models for embankments over voids

- (1) In areas prone to the development of voids or deep depressions soil reinforcement may be used to avoid sudden collapse.

NOTE 1 [Figure F.6](#) illustrates a scheme for basal reinforcement of voids.

NOTE 2 Further details can be found in BS 8006-1, EBGeo and NF G38065.



Key

- 1 Embankment
- 2 Reinforcement
- ds Depression at surface
- H height of the material over the geosynthetic layer
- D Void diameter at reinforcement

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

D_s Void diameter at ground surface

Figure F.6 — Scheme for basal reinforcement over voids

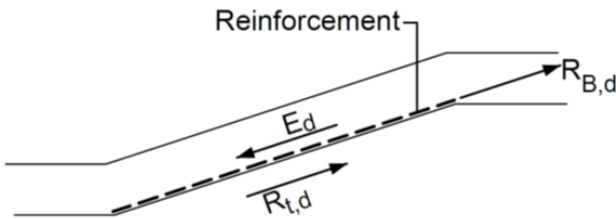
- (2) The design void diameter should be assumed based on comparable experience.
- (3) The maximum differential settlement of the ground surface above a void should be as specified by the relevant authority or, where not specified, as agreed for a specific project by the relevant parties.

F.6 Veneer reinforcement

- (1) The stability of a soil veneer above a potential sliding plane should be determined by assuming a tension crack at the top of the slope and a resistant passive wedge at the toe.

NOTE 1 Figure F.8 illustrates a scheme for veneer reinforcement. Veneer systems can be made up of multiple synthetic and mineral layers with different frictional characteristics.

NOTE 2 Further details can be found in EBGE0, Rimoldi (2018), and NF G38067.



Key

E_d	design value of the actions
$R_{t,d}$	design value of the friction resistance
$R_{B,d}$	design resistance of the reinforcement

Figure F.7 — Scheme for veneer reinforcement

- (2) The contribution of friction down the slope should take the value of the lowest frictional interaction between the multiple layers that form the veneer system.

NOTE Veneer systems can be made up of multiple synthetic and mineral layers with different frictional characteristics.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

F.7 Typical grades of steel used for soil reinforcement elements

SC7 NOTE [#214]: CR0009
Revised based on
conclusion from AdHoc
group steel within TC250.

F.7.1 General

- (1) This clause provides complementary guidance to 9.3.4 for typical grades of steel used for tension elements in reinforced fill structures and applies to tension elements for reinforced structures only.

F.7.2 Grades of steel used for tension elements

- (1) Tension elements may be made using any of the steel grades given in Table F.9.1.
- (2) Other grades of steel may be used, provided they comply with the provisions of 9.3.4.

Table F.9.1 — Typical grades of steels used for tension elements

Type of Steel	Relevant Standard	Steel Name	Yield strength ^a		Tensile Strength ^b		Strength distribution across section
			symbol	N/mm ²	symbol	N/mm ²	
Hot-rolled strips	EN 10025-2	S235	f_y	235	f_u	360-510	uniform
		S355	f_y	355	f_u	470-630	
		S460	f_y	460	f_u	550-720	
Reinforcing steel	EN 10080	B400B ^c	$f_{0.2k}$	400	f_{tk}	432	non-uniform (unless otherwise demonstrated by testing)
		B450B ^c	$f_{0.2k}$	450	f_{tk}	486	
		B500B ^c	$f_{0.2k}$	500	f_{tk}	542	
		B550B ^c	$f_{0.2k}$	550	f_{tk}	594	
		B600B ^c	$f_{0.2k}$	600	f_{tk}	648	
^a Values stated are minimum where $f_{0.2k} = R_{p0.2}$ (specified proof strength at 0.2 % strain) and $f_{tk} = R_m$ (specified tensile strength) in accordance with EN 10080.							
^b The grades shown are common, commercially available, grades. Consult with manufacturers for available diameters.							
^c Minimum ductility Class B according to Table 5.5 of prEN 1992-1-1:2021.							

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

Annex G (informative)

Ground improvement

G.1 Use of this Informative Annex

- (1) This Informative Annex provides complementary guidance to that given in Clause 11 for ground improvement.

NOTE National choice on the application of this Informative Annex is given in the National Annex. If the National Annex contains no information on the application of this informative annex, it can be used.

SC7 NOTE [#215]sed according to CR0200. or details

G.2 Scope and field of application

- (1) This Informative Annex:

- gives examples of diffused ground improvement techniques in [Table G.1](#)~~Table G.1~~;
- gives examples of discrete ground improvement techniques in [Table G.2](#)~~Table G.2~~;
- indicates which European execution standards (if any) apply to each technique.

G.3 Examples of ground improvement techniques

NOTE [Table G.1](#)~~Table G.1~~ and [Table G.2](#)~~Table G.2~~ give typical families and classes used for design.

Table G.1 — Examples of diffused ground improvement techniques

Method	Technique	Family and Class	Description	Execution Standard
Grouting Methods	Permeation grouting	AII	Replacement of interstitial water or gas of a porous medium with a grout, also known as “impregnation” grouting. Suitable for a wide range of soils to considerable depths.	EN 12715
	Jet grouting	AII	Hydraulic disaggregation of soils using high velocity jets.	EN 12716
	Compaction grouting	AI	Displacement grouting method which is the injection of a medium/low slump mortar into the soil to compact/densify it by expansion alone. Suitable for a wide range of soils to considerable depths.	EN 12715
Compactive Compaction Methods	Deep vibration	AI	Densification of generally granular soil by the insertion of a vibrating poker. Significant depths of suitable soils can be treated and marine operation is possible.	EN 14731
	Dynamic compaction	AI	Densification of soil by the impact of heavy weights from significant heights. Significant depths of suitable soils can be treated and marine operation is possible.	None
	Impact roller compaction	AI	Compaction ive effort provided by a non-circular roller, usually three or four sided. Only shallow depths of suitable soils can be treated.	None

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Method	Technique	Family and Class	Description	Execution Standard
	Rapid impact compaction	AI	Compactive Compaction effort provided by weight dropping with a rapid control mechanism usually mounted on a vertical arm. Shallow/medium depths of suitable soils can be treated.	None
	Micro-blasting	AI	Compactive Compaction effort provided by detonating small charges of explosive at depths below ground level. The weight and arrangement of explosive charge is tailored to the depth and type of soil present. It can be used over water and can treat considerable depths.	None
	Compaction grouting	AII	Injection of grout into a host medium or ground in such a manner as to deform, compress, or displace the ground.	None
Soil Replacement	Soil replacement	I	Displacement of grouting method which is the injection of a medium/low slump mortar into the soil to compact/densify it by expansion alone. Suitable for a wide range of soils to considerable depths. replacement of unsuitable soil with engineered materials with or without georeinforcement. Depth limited by excavation stability.	None
Thermal Methods	Ground freezing	AII	Freezing of interstitial water within soils to create hardened bodies of significant strength and very low hydraulic conductivity. More suitable for granular soils but can be used in cohesive soils with care due to potential soil expansion.	None
	Ground heating	AI AII	The use of thermal methods to generally remove water from fine grained soils with a resultant increase in strength. Ultimately with very high temperatures, soil can be fused in a rock like structure.	None
Consolidation Methods	Surcharge	AI	Use of additional load in advance of construction, generally on soft clays, to force consolidation and reduce long term residual settlements	None
	Vertical drains & surcharge	AI	Use of sand or prefabricated geotextile drains in combination with surcharge to reduce drainage paths within soft cohesive soils to force accelerated consolidation and accelerated groundwater pressure dissipation during construction in order to reduce overall programme and to reduce residual long-term settlements. Land and marine based rigs available to considerable depths.	EN 15237
	Dewatering	AI	Lowering of the ground water table or depressurisation of the groundwater pressure within soils to increase effective strength, force consolidation and reduce long term residual settlements.	None
	Vacuum consolidation	AI	Use of a vacuum instead of surcharge in advance of construction, generally on soft cohesive soils, to force accelerated consolidation and accelerated groundwater pressure dissipation during construction in order to reduce	EN 15237

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

Method	Technique	Family and Class	Description	Execution Standard
			overall programme and to reduce residual long-term settlements.	
Mixing Methods	Dry methods	AI AII	Mechanical disaggregation of soils while introducing a dry binder pneumatically and commonly cement. Most usually executed highly compressible fine grained soil. Land and marine based rigs available to considerable depths.	EN 14679
	Wet methods	AII	Mechanical disaggregation of soils while introducing a fluid binder. Generally more powerful system than the dry system and can be executed in various type of soils. Land and marine based rigs available to considerable depths.	EN 14679
	Jet grouting	AII	Hydraulic disaggregation of soils using high velocity jets of fluid binder combined or not with either water or water and air. Suitable for most soils and available for land or marine use to considerable depths.	EN 12716

Table G.2 — Examples of discrete ground improvement techniques

Method	Technique	Family and Class	Description	Execution Standard
Mixing Methods	Dry methods	BI BII	Mechanical disaggregation of soils while introducing a dry binder pneumatically and commonly cement. Most usually executed highly compressible fine grained soil. Land and marine based rigs available to considerable depths.	EN 14679
	Wet methods	BII	Mechanical disaggregation of soils while introducing a fluid binder. Generally more powerful system than the dry system and can be executed in various type of soils. Land and marine based rigs available to considerable depths.	EN 14679
	Jet grouting	BII	Hydraulic disaggregation of soils using high velocity jets of fluid binder combined or not with either water or water and air. Suitable for most soils and available for land or marine use to considerable depths.	EN 12716
Granular Inclusions	Stone columns/ Vibro-replacement	BI BII	Compacted stone columns are created in the ground to form a composite ground with the surrounding soil. Most often used in soft cohesive soils but in granular soils as well to improve strength and stiffness of the overall system and accelerate drainage with possible densification of the surrounding soil depending on the soil type. Land and marine based rigs available to considerable depths.	EN 14731
	Sand columns/ Sand compaction piles	BI	Compacted sand columns are created in the ground to form a composite ground with the surrounding soil. Most often used in soft cohesive soils but in granular soils as well to improve strength and stiffness of the overall system and accelerate drainage with possible densification of the surrounding soil	EN 14731

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Method	Technique	Family and Class	Description	Execution Standard
			depending on the soil type. Land and marine based rigs available to considerable depths.	
	Dynamic replacement	BI	The use of dynamic compaction to drive bulbs of granular material into soft soils thereby both improving the soil by the dynamic compaction and the introduction of competent granular piers. Most often used in soft cohesive soils to improve strength and stiffness of the overall system and accelerate drainage. Land and marine based rigs available.	None
	Geosynthetics encased columns	BI	Stone or sand columns, encased in a geotextile casing, formed in very soft soils where the lateral restraint is too small to prevent very significant column bulging. The geotextile casing provides support to the columns and prevents excessive bulging under load. Land and marine based rigs available to significant depths.	None
Steel/Wood Inclusions	Vibrated	BII	Rigid columns of steel or wood are vibrated into the ground, with possible densification effort to the existing ground depending on the soil type, to form a composite ground with various type of soil and providing support to the structure above through load distribution between the soil and inclusions. Land and marine based rigs available to considerable depths.	None
	Bored	BII	Rigid columns of steel or wood are bored into the ground, sometimes with associated compactive-compaction effort, to form a composite ground with various type of soil and providing support to the structure above through load distribution between the soil and inclusions. Land and marine based rigs available to considerable depths.	None
	Driven	BII	Rigid columns of steel or wood are driven into the ground, causing some densification, to form a composite ground with various type of soil and providing support to the structure above through load distribution between the soil and inclusions. Land and marine based rigs available to considerable depths.	None
Concrete/Grout Inclusions	Vibrated concrete columns	BII	An improvement method whereby columns of concrete or mortar are backfilled in the ground during withdrawal of a vibrating pipe or poker to form a composite ground with various type of soil, providing support to the structure above through load distribution between the soil and inclusions possible densification effort to the existing ground depending on the soil type.	None
	Bored	BII	An improvement method whereby columns of concrete or mortar are backfilled in the ground during withdrawal of a boring auger to form a composite ground with various type of soil, providing support to the structure above through load distribution between the soil and inclusions sometimes with	None

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

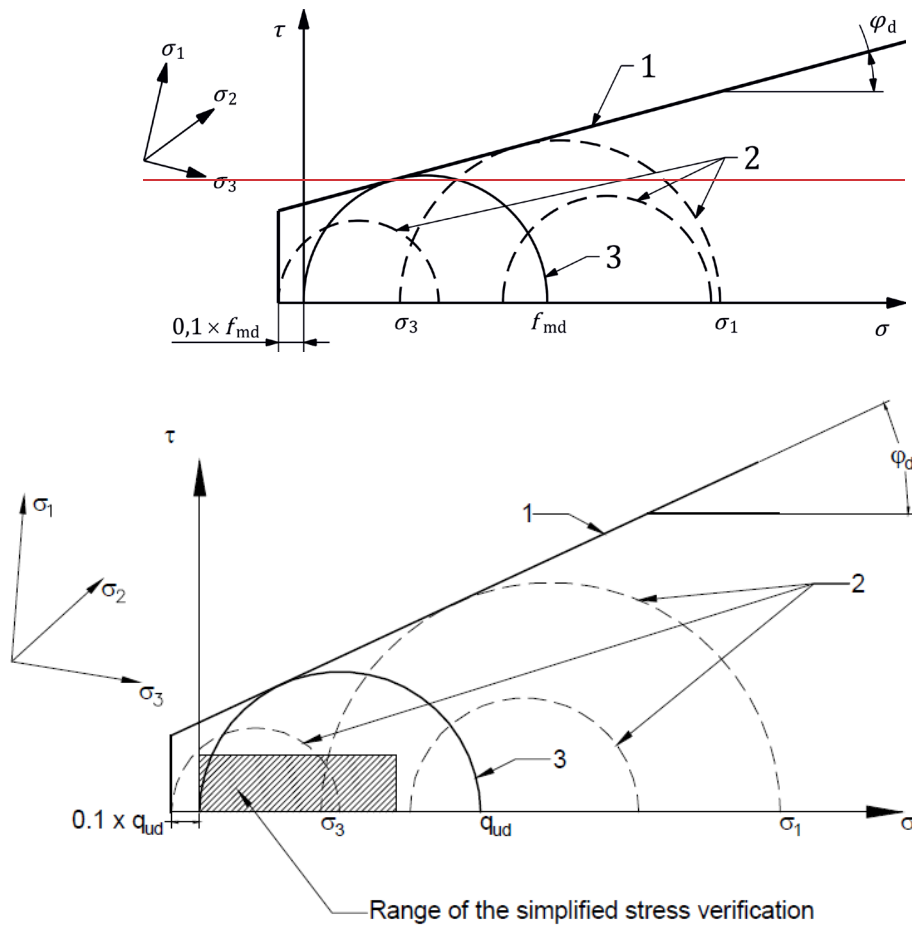
Method	Technique	Family and Class	Description	Execution Standard
			associated compactive compaction effort to the existing ground.	
	Driven	BII	An improvement method whereby columns of concrete or mortar are backfilled in the ground during withdrawal of a driven pipe to form a composite ground with various type of soil, providing support to the structure above through load distribution between the soil and inclusions and possible densification effort to the existing ground depending on the soil type.	None
	Grouted stone columns	BII	An improvement method whereby compacted and grouted stone columns are created in ground to form a composite ground with the surrounding soil. Providing support to the structure above through load distribution between the soil and inclusions and possible densification effort to the existing ground depending on the soil type. Land and marine based rigs available to considerable depths.	None
	Compaction grouting	BII	Injection of grout into a host medium or ground in such a manner as to deform, compress, or displace the ground.	None

G.4 Use of stress envelope to determine acceptable limit states

- (1) When the design is based on the explicit calculation of the principal stresses it shall be verified that the design values ~~pf of~~ the principal stresses do not exceed the states of stress defined in ~~Figure G.1~~ Figure G.1.
- (2) In addition to (1) the principal tensile stress shall not exceed 10 % of ~~$q_{ud} f_{m,d}$~~ .
- (3) For Class BII rigid inclusions subjected to ~~eccentricities~~ eccentric loading, resulting stresses within the cross section shall be verified to be within the stress envelope given in Figure G.1.
- (4) When the design is not based on the explicit calculation of principal stresses, the design value of the normal stresses and of the shear stresses shall not exceed $0.7 q_{ud} f_{m,d}$ and $0.2 q_{ud} f_{m,d}$ respectively.

NOTE Figure G.1 illustrates the allowable stresses in ~~rigid~~ ground improvement material with unconfined compressive strength.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)



Key

- 1 Envelope for allowed states of stress
- 2 Examples for states of stress σ_1, σ_3 , allowed
- 3 State of stress in a uniaxial compression test: $\sigma_3 = 0, \sigma_1 = q_{ud} f_{m,d}$

Figure G.1 — Allowable stresses in rigid ground improvement material with unconfined compressive strength

$$\varphi_d (\text{strengthened soil}) = \varphi'_d (\text{unimproved soil})$$

$$\tan \varphi_d = \tan \varphi_k \quad \gamma_\varphi$$

G.5 Calculation models for reinforced load transfer platform over rigid inclusions

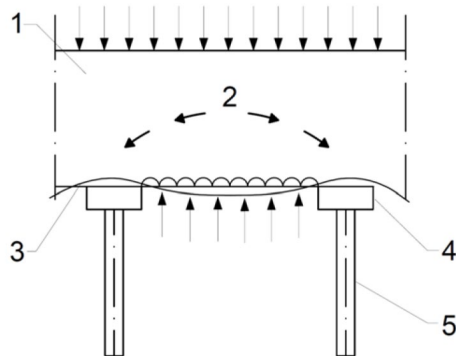
(1) The load transfer platform and the possible reinforcing elements should be designed to transfer the load from the structure or the embankment to the improved ground.

NOTE 1 Figure G.2 gives a schematic concept of a load transfer platform over rigid inclusions.

NOTE 2 Examples of calculation methods are the following:

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- [Hewlett and Randolph method \(detailed information about the Hewlett and Randolph method can be found in BS 8006\)](#)
- [Two-stage model with separate calculation of arching and membrane effect method \(details of the calculation procedure can be found in EBGE0\)](#)
- [Concentric Arches method \(Details of the calculation procedure can be found in CUR 226\)](#)
- [ASIRI method \(see ASIRI recommendations\)](#)



Key

- 1 Load transfer platform
- 2 Arching effect
- 3 Reinforcing element (if applicable)
- 4 Cap (if applicable)
- 5 Rigid inclusion

Figure G.2 — Schematic concept of a load transfer platform over rigid inclusions

G.6 Indicative range for the strength development of ground improved material over time

(1) The load transfer platform and the possible reinforcing elements should be designed to transfer the load from the structure or the embankment to the improved ground.

NOTE An indicative range for η_t as a function of the time is given in Figure G.3.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

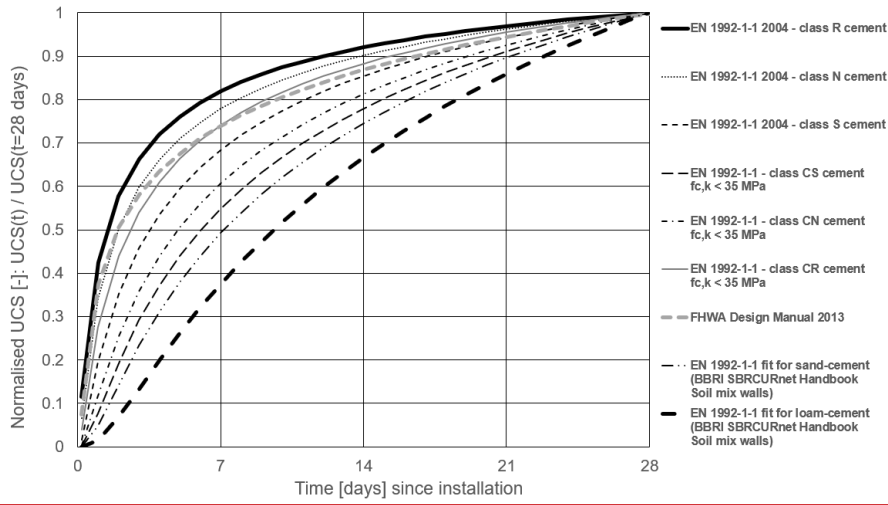


Figure G.3 — Range of strength development of rigid ground improvement material over time

Annex H (informative)

Thermoactive geostructures design

H.1 Introduction

- (1) Thermoactive geostructures can be used both as geotechnical structures (e.g. deep foundations, retaining walls or tunnel lining elements) and as heat exchangers.
- (2) Thermoactive geostructures can satisfy, fully or partially, both the heating and cooling demand of buildings and other structures.
- (3) Heat exchangers are connected to a ground source heat pump.
- (4) A heat exchanger consists of a series of tubes, which are normally:
 - fixed on the reinforcing steel cages of the foundation, diaphragm walls, or tunnel lining elements and embedded in the concrete or grout;
 - directly fixed to steel profiles.

H.2 Design Principles

- (1) The design of thermoactive geostructures includes thermal, geotechnical, and structural aspects.
- (2) Heat transfer between the ground and the thermoactive geostructure is assessed based on the energy needs (i.e the energy demand for heating and cooling) and includes calculation of the:
 - temperature of the ground;
 - temperature of the geostructure;
 - thermal power exchanged between the ground and the geostructure;
 - inlet and outlet temperature of the heat exchanger.
- (3) Assessment of the interaction between the ground and the thermoactive geostructure, owing to potential alternate heating and cooling phases, involves:
 - thermally-induced displacements of the geostructure;
 - additional structural forces in the geostructure owing to its movement being constrained by the surrounding ground and the supported structure;
 - variations in the bearing resistance of piles or the earth pressures against retaining structures.
- (4) Measures are normally taken to prevent freezing of the ground around the thermoactive geostructure.
- (5) Inherent leakages from heat exchanger tubes can result in a loss of thermal efficiency.

H.3 Ground investigation

- (1) The following ground parameters are used in the design of thermoactive geostructures:

SC7 NOTE [#216]
CR0130

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

- thermal conductivity;
- volumetric heat capacity;
- coefficient of thermal expansion, typically in the longitudinal direction.

(2) The following groundwater parameters are used in the design of thermoactive geostructures:

- groundwater flow velocity;
- flow direction;
- interaction between groundwater and existing structures.

NOTE Many criteria based on the groundwater velocity exist to estimate the potential heat transfer.

(3) In-situ and laboratory tests to obtain appropriate ground and groundwater parameters are given in EN 1997-2, Clause 12.

H.4 Thermal design

(1) The thermal design of thermoactive geostructures normally considers conduction but can also consider advection.

(2) Thermal interactions between a thermoactive geostructure and its environment include interaction with:

- the atmosphere, especially seasonal temperature variations;
- the surrounding air when one side of the geostructure is not in contact with the ground (for example, the diaphragm walls of a metro station);
- adjacent thermally-activated structures and utilities (e.g. district heating pipes, high-voltage power lines, etc.).

H.5 Geotechnical and structural design

(1) Geotechnical structures are potentially subject to a range of thermally-induced effects, including those listed in Table H.1.

Table H.1 — Typical thermally-induced effects on geotechnical structures

<u>Type of geotechnical structure</u>	<u>Typical thermally-induced effects</u>
<u>Piles and barrettes</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <u>additional vertical head displacement;</u> - <u>additional normal force;</u> - <u>mobilised axial resistance (Potential mobilised tensile resistance for piles working in tension)</u>
<u>Diaphragm walls</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <u>additional vertical and horizontal displacement of the retaining wall;</u> - <u>additional normal force, shear forces and bending moments;</u> - <u>mobilised passive pressure and axial resistance;</u> - <u>additional forces in connected elements (struts, anchors, slabs, etc.)</u>

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

<u>Tunnel segments</u>	<u>- additional rim force during heating and cooling phases;</u> <u>- additional bending moments.</u>
------------------------	--

NOTE Thermally induced effects differ according to the mode of heat transfer (heating or cooling).

(2) The mechanical effects induced by the temperature variations into the thermoactive geostructures are normally calculated by one of two alternative procedures:

- procedure 1, in which temperature variations from the thermal design are considered directly in the mechanical design;
- procedure 2, in which temperature variations and their mechanical effects are assessed by performing a coupled thermo-mechanical calculation, in which the energy needs of the building are explicitly considered.

(3) Temperature actions can be combined using combination factors given in EN 1990.

(4) Calculation models used to assess the mechanical effects of temperature variations also take into account soil-structure interaction.

H.6 Execution

(1) Specific procedures are needed to fix heat exchanger tubes onto steel cages or profiles or to embed the tubes within the energy geostructures.

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)

Bibliography

References given in recommendations (i.e. “should” clauses)

The following documents are referred to in the text in such a way that some or all of their content constitutes highly recommended choices or course of action of this document. Subject to national regulation and/or any relevant contractual provisions, alternative documents could be used/adopted where technically justified. For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

EN 206, *Concrete — Specification, performance, production and conformity*

EN 771-3, *Specification for masonry units — Part 3: Aggregate concrete masonry units (Dense and lightweight aggregates)*

EN 1536, *Execution of special geotechnical work — Bored piles*

EN 1538, *Execution of special geotechnical work — Diaphragm walls*

EN 1563, *Founding — Spheroidal graphite cast irons*

prEN 1992-1-1:2021, *Eurocode 2: Design of concrete structures — Part 1-1: General rules — Rules for buildings, bridges and civil engineering structures*

EN 1995-1-1:2004, *Eurocode 5: Design of timber structures — Part 1-1: General — Common rules and rules for buildings*

EN 10218-2, *Steel wire and wire products — General — Part 2: Wire dimensions and tolerances*

EN 10223-3, *Steel wire and wire products for fencing and netting — Part 3: Hexagonal steel wire mesh products for civil engineering purposes*

EN 10245-1, *Steel wire and wire products — Organic coatings on steel wire — Part 1: General rules*

EN 12063, *Execution of special geotechnical work — Sheet-pile walls*

EN 12390-2, *Testing hardened concrete — Part 2: Making and curing specimens for strength tests*

EN 12504-1, *Testing concrete in structures — Part 1: Cored specimens — Taking, examining and testing in compression*

EN 12699, *Execution of special geotechnical works — Displacement piles*

EN 12715, *Execution of special geotechnical work — Grouting*

EN 12716, *Execution of special geotechnical work — Jet grouting*

EN 13251, *Geotextiles and geotextile-related products — Characteristics required for use in earthworks, foundations and retaining structures*

EN 13670, *Execution of concrete structures*

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

- EN 14081-1, *Timber structures — Strength graded structural timber with rectangular cross section — Part 1: General requirements*
- EN 14199, *Execution of special geotechnical works — Micropiles*
- EN 14487 (all parts), *Sprayed concrete*
- EN 14488 (all parts), *Testing sprayed concrete*
- EN 14490:2010, *Execution of special geotechnical works — Soil nailing*
- EN 14679, *Execution of special geotechnical works — Deep mixing*
- EN 15237, *Execution of special geotechnical works — Vertical drainage*
- EN 15258, *Precast concrete products — Retaining wall elements*
- EN 16907-5, *Earthworks — Part 5: Quality control*
- EN ISO 12957 (all parts), *Geosynthetics — Determination of friction characteristics*
- EN ISO 12958-1, *Geotextiles and geotextile-related products — Determination of water flow capacity in their plane — Part 1: Index test (ISO 12958-1)*
- EN ISO 12958-2, *Geotextiles and geotextile-related products — Determination of water flow capacity in their plane — Part 2: Performance test (ISO 12958-2)*
- EN ISO 13793, *Thermal performance of buildings — Thermal design of foundations to avoid frost heave (ISO 13793)*
- EN ISO 14689, *Geotechnical investigation and testing — Identification, description and classification of rock (ISO 14689)*
- EN ISO 22282-4, *Geotechnical investigation and testing — Geohydraulic testing — Part 4: Pumping tests (ISO 22282-4)*
- EN ISO 22477 (all parts), *Geotechnical investigation and testing — Testing of geotechnical structures*

References given in permissions (i.e. “may” clauses)

The following documents are referred to in the text in such a way that some or all of their content expresses a course of action permissible within the limits of the Eurocodes. For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

EBGEO, Recommendations for design and analysis of earth structures using geosynthetic reinforcements, (English Translation) Deutsche Gesellschaft für Geotechnik, Ernst & Sohn, München, Germany, 2011.

EN 12716:2018, *Execution of special geotechnical work — Jet grouting*

ISO/TS 13434, *Geosynthetics — Guidelines for the assessment of durability*

prEN 1997-3:2022 (E)**References given in possibilities (i.e. “can” clauses) and notes**

The following documents are cited informatively in the document, for example in “can” clauses and in notes.

prEN 1991-2:2022, *Eurocode 1 – Action on structures – Part 2 Traffic loads on bridges and other civil engineering works*

EN 1994-1-1:2004, *Eurocode 4: Design of composite steel and concrete structures — Part 1-1: General rules and rules for buildings*

prEN 1998 (all parts), *Eurocode – Design of structures for earthquake resistance*

ISO 6707-1, *Buildings and civil engineering works — Vocabulary — Part 1: General terms*

EN 12794, *Precast concrete products. Foundation piles*

EN 13369, *Common rules for precast concrete products*

EN 14731, *Execution of special geotechnical works — Ground treatment by deep vibration*

EN 16907 (all parts), *Earthworks*

EN ISO 10321, *Geosynthetics — Tensile test for joints/seams by wide-width strip method (ISO 10321)*

EN ISO 19901-4, *Petroleum and natural gas industries — Specific requirements for offshore structures — Part 4: Geotechnical and foundation design considerations (ISO 19901-4)*

EN ISO 22477-1:2018, *Geotechnical investigation and testing — Testing of geotechnical structures — Part 1: Testing of piles: static compression load testing (ISO 22477-1:2018, Corrected version 2019-03)*

EN ISO 22477-4:2018, *Geotechnical investigation and testing — Testing of geotechnical structures — Part 4: Testing of piles: dynamic load testing (ISO 22477-4:2018)*

EN ISO 22477-5:2018, *Geotechnical investigation and testing — Testing of geotechnical structures — Part 5: Testing of grouted anchors (ISO 22477-5:2018)*

EN ISO 22477-10:2016, *Geotechnical investigation and testing — Testing of geotechnical structures — Part 10: Testing of piles: rapid load testing (ISO 22477-10:2016)*

ISO/TR 20432, *Guidelines for the determination of the long-term strength of geosynthetics for soil reinforcement*

Bishop, A. W., The use of the slip circle in the analysis of slopes. *Geotechnique*, Vol 5, (1965) Proc. Europ. conf. on stability of earth slopes., Stockholm, Vol. I, pp 1-14 (1954).

Bjerrum and Eide, (1956), *Stability of strutted excavations in clay*, *Géotechnique*, Vol. 6, No. 1. pp. 32-47.

Brinch Hansen, J., (1961): *The Ultimate Resistance of Rigid Piles Against Transversal Forces*, Geoteknisk Institut, Copenhagen, Bulletin No. 12

BS 8006-1, *Code of practice for strengthened/reinforced soils and other fills*.

prEN 1997-3:202x F.E. with agreed CRs (v2022:5)

Coulomb, C.A., *Essai sur une application des regles des maximis et minimis a quelques problemes de statique relatifs, a la architecture*. Mem. Acad. Roy. Div. Sav., Vol. 7, pp 343–387 (1776).

Cullman, *Die graphische statik*. Zürich: Verlag van Meyer & Zeller (1866).

CUR226 (2016). Van Eekelen, S.J.M. & Brugman, M.H.A., Editors. *Design Guideline Basal Reinforced Piled Embankments (CUR226)*. CRC press, Delft, the Netherlands (English translation). ISBN 9789053676240.

Goodman, R.E. and Shi, G. (1985). *Block theory and its application to rock engineering*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ, Prentice-Hall.

DIN 4084:2009-01, *Baugrund – Geländebruchberechnungen*. Berlin: Beuth Verlag;

Fredlund D.G., Krahn J., *Comparison of slope stability methods of analysis*, Canadian Geotechnical J. Vol. 29, no 3 (1977).

Froelich, O.H., *The factor of safety with respect to sliding of soil along the arc of a logarithmic spiral*. Proc. of the 3rd ICSMFE Conference, Vol. 2, Switzerland (1953).

Janbu, N., *Application of composite slip surfaces for stability analysis*. Proc. Europ. conf. on stability of earth Slopes., 1954 Stockholm, Vol. 3, pp 43-49 (1955).

Kérisel, J., Absi, E., *Active and passive earth pressure tables*, 3rd Edition, A.A.Balkema, Rotterdam, 1990.

Morgenstern, N. R., Price, V. W., *The analysis for the stability of general slip surfaces*. Geotechnique, Vol 15, pp 79-93 (1965).

NF P 94 270 *Calcul géotechnique - Ouvrages de soutènement - Remblais renforcés et massifs en sol cloué*.

Poisel, Rainer, and Preh, Alexander (2004), *Rock slope initial failure mechanisms and their mechanical models*, Felsbau 22, no 2

Rimoldi, P. (2018). *Semi-probabilistic approach to the stability of veneer reinforcement*. Proc. 11th International Conference on Geosynthetics, Seoul, Korea.

Sarma S.K., *Stability analysis of embankments and slopes*, Journal of the geotechnical engineering division. ASCE, Vol. 105, no GT12 (1979).

Spencer, E., *A method of analysis of the stability of embankments assuming parallel inter-slice forces*, Geotechnique, Vol. 17, pp 11-26 (1967).

Wyllie, Duncan C. (2017), *Rock Slope Engineering, Civil Applications*, Fifth Edition, CRC Press, 620pp.